

目 录

第一章 现在时(PRESENT TIME)

1. 问答 (Interview Questions and Answers)	1
2. 现在时动词 (Present Verbs)	2
3. 一般现在时的形式 (Forms of the Simple Present)	2
4. 现在进行时的形式 (Forms of the Present Progressive)	3
5. 现在时动词: 疑问句 (Present Verbs: Questions)	3
6. 现在时动词: 疑问句 (Present Verbs: Questions)	4
7. 一般现在时 (Simple Present)	4
8. 一般现在时与现在进行时 (Simple Present and Present Progressive)	5
9. 一般现在时 (Simple Present)	5
10. 一般现在时与现在进行时 (Simple Present and Present Progressive)	6
11. 频度副词 (Frequency Adverbs)	7
12. 频度副词 (Frequency Adverbs)	7
13. 频度副词 (Frequency Adverbs)	8
14. 频度副词 (Frequency Adverbs)	8
15. 频度副词 (Frequency Adverbs)	9
16. 一般现在时: -s/-es 结尾 (Simple Present: Final-s/-es)	10
17. 一般现在时: -s/-es 结尾 (Simple Present: Final-s/-es)	11
18. -s/-es 结尾的发音 (Pronunciation: Final-s/-es)	11
19. -s/-es 结尾的发音 (Pronunciation: Final-s/-es)	12
20. -s/-es 结尾的拼写 (Spelling: Final-s/-es)	12
21. 非行为动词 (Non-action Verbs)	12
22. 一般现在时与现在进行时 (Simple Present and Present Progressive)	13
23. 一般现在时与现在进行时 (Simple Present and Present Progressive)	14
24. 错误分析 (Error Analysis)	15
25. 现在时动词: 疑问句和简略回答 (Present Verbs: Questions and Short Answers)	15
26. 复习: 现在时动词 (Review: Present Verbs)	16

第二章 过去时(PAST TIME)

1. 一般过去时 (Simple Past)	18
2. 一般过去时: 规则动词与不规则动词 (Simple Past: Regular and Irregular Verb)	19
3. 一般过去时形式 (Simple Past Forms)	19
4. 现在时和过去时的否定句 (Present and Past Negatives)	20
5. 一般过去时: 疑问句 (Simple Past: Questions)	21
6. 一般过去时: 疑问句 (Simple Past: Questions)	21
7. 一般过去时: 规则动词与不规则动词 (Simple Past: Regular and Irregular Verbs)	22
8. 规则动词: -ed 结尾的发音 (Regular Verbs: Pronunciation of -ed Endings)	23
9. 规则动词: -ed 结尾的发音 (Regular Verbs: Pronunciation of -ed Endings)	23
10. -ed 结尾的发音和拼写 (Spelling and Pronunciation of -ed Endings)	23
11. 规则动词: -ed 结尾的发音 (Regular Verbs: Pronunciation of -ed Endings)	24

12. -ing 和-ed 形式的拼写 (Spelling of -ing and -ed Forms)	24
13. -ing 形式的拼写 (Spelling of -ing)	25
14. -ing 和-ed 形式的拼写 (Spelling of -ing and -ed)	25
15. -ing 形式的拼写 (Spelling of -ing)	26
16. 不规则动词的拼写 (Spelling of Irregular Verbs)	27
17. 不规则动词 (Irregular Verbs)	28
18. 不规则动词 (Irregular Verbs)	29
19. 复习: 过去时的疑问句和否定句 (Review: Past Questions and Negatives)	30
20. 一般现在时与一般过去时: 疑问句 (Simple Present and Past: Questions)	31
21. 复习: 一般现在时、现在进行时和一般过去时的形式 (Review: Simple Present, Present Progressive, Simple Past Forms)	32
22. 一般现在时与一般过去时 (Simple Present and Simple Past)	32
23. 过去进行时 (Past Progressive)	34
24. 过去进行时 (Past Progressive)	34
25. 过去进行时与一般过去时的比较 (Past Progressive vs. Simple Past)	35
26. 表示过去: 使用时间从句 (Past Time Using Time Clauses)	36
27. 过去时动词 (Past Verbs)	37
28. 表示过去习惯: used to (Past Habit with used to)	39
29. 错误分析 (Error Analysis)	40
30. 过去时动词 (Past Verbs)	41

第三章 将来时(FUTURE TIME)

1. 现在、过去和将来 (Present, Past, and Future)	43
2. will 和 be going to (will and be going to)	44
3. be going to	44
4. will	44
5. 带 will 和 be going to 的疑问句 (Questions with will and be going to)	45
6. will	46
7. will probably	46
8. will probably	47
9. 将来的确定性 (Sureness about the Future)	47
10. 将来的确定性 (Sureness about the Future)	48
11. will	49
12. be going to 与 will 的比较 (be going to vs. will)	49
13. be going to will 的比较 (be going to vs. will)	50
14. 过去和将来时间从句 (Past and Future Time Clauses)	52
15. 将来时间从句 (Future Time Clauses)	52
16. if 从句 (if-clauses)	53
17. 时间从句和 if 从句 (Time Clauses and if-clauses)	54
18. 复习: 过去和将来 (Review: Past and Future)	54
19. 用 be going to 和现在进行时表示将来时间 (Using be going to and the Present Progressive to Express Future Time)	56
20. 用现在进行时表示将来时间 (Using the Present Progressive to Express Future Time)	56
21. 用一般现在时表示将来时间 (Using the Simple Present to Express Future Time)	58
22. be about to 的用法 (Using be about to)	59
23. 平行动词 (Parallel Verbs)	59
24. 错误分析 (Error Analysis)	60

第四章 现在完成时与过去完成时

(THE PRESENT PERFECT AND THE PAST PERFECT)

1. 现在完成时的形式 (Forms of the Present Perfect)	64
2. 现在完成时 (The Present Perfect)	65
3. 复习: 不规则动词 (Review: Irregular Verbs)	66
4. 现在完成时 (The Present Perfect)	67
5. 现在完成时与一般过去时的比较 (The Present Perfect vs. the Simple Past)	68
6. 复习: 不规则动词 (Review: Irregular Verbs)	68
7. 现在完成时与一般过去时的比较 (The Present Perfect vs. the Simple Past)	70
8. 复习: 不规则动词 (Review: Irregular Verbs)	71
9. since 与 for 的比较 (Since vs. for)	73
10. 带 since 和 for 的现在完成时 (Present Perfect with since and for)	74
11. 现在完成时和一般过去时的时间表达 (Present Perfect and Simple Past with Time Words)	74
12. since 从句 (since-clauses)	75
13. 现在完成进行时 (The Present Perfect Progressive)	75
14. 现在完成进行时 (The Present Perfect Progressive)	76
15. already, still, yet, anymore 的用法 (already, still, yet, anymore)	77
16. already, still, yet, anymore 的用法 (already, still, yet, anymore)	78
17. 动词时态复习 (Verb Tense Review)	79
18. 现在完成时与过去完成时的比较 (The Present Perfect vs. the Past Perfect)	80
19. 过去进行时与过去完成时的比较 (The Past Progressive vs. the Past Perfect)	81
20. 过去完成时 (The Past Perfect)	82
21. 动词时态复习 (Verb Tense Review)	83
22. 错误分析 (Error Analysis)	84

第五章 疑问句(ASKING QUESTIONS)

1. 预习: 疑问句 (Preview: Asking Questions)	85
2. 一般疑问句 (Yes/No Questions)	86
3. 一般疑问句和简略回答 (Yes/No Questions and Short Answers)	87
4. 一般疑问句和简略回答 (Yes/No Questions and Short Answers)	88
5. 一般疑问句和简略回答 (Yes/No Questions and Short Answers)	89
6. 一般疑问句和特殊疑问句 (Yes/No and Information Questions)	89
7. 特殊疑问句 (Information Questions)	90
8. 特殊疑问句 (Information Questions)	91
9. why 引导的特殊疑问句 (Information Questions with why)	92
10. who, whom 和 what (who, whom, and what)	93
11. who, whom 和 what (who, whom, and what)	94
12. 询问一个单词的含义 (Asking for the Meaning of a Word)	95
13. what+do 的某一形式 (what+a Form of do)	95
14. what kind of	96

15. which 与 what 的比较 (which vs. what)	97
16. who 与 whose 的比较 (who vs. whose)	98
17. who 与 whose 的比较 (who vs. whose)	99
18. how 的用法 (Using how)	99
19. how far, how long 和 how often 的用法 (Using how far, how long, and how often)	100
20. 阶段复习 (Cumulative Review)	101
21. 阶段复习 (Cumulative Review)	102
22. 反意疑问句 (Tag Questions)	103
23. 反意疑问句 (Tag Questions)	104
24. 错误分析 (Error Analysis)	105
25. 复习: 疑问句 (Review: Questions)	106

第六章 名词和代词(NOUNS AND PRONOUNS)

1. 预习: 名词复数 (Preview: Plural Nouns)	108
2. -s/-es 的发音 (Pronunciation of -s/-es)	108
3. -s/-es 的发音 (Pronunciation of -s/-es)	108
4. -s/-es 的发音 (PronunCiation of -s/-es)	109
5. 名词复数 (Plural Nouns)	109
6. 名词复数 (Plural Nouns)	110
7. 主语、动词和宾语 (Subjects, Verbs, and Objects)	111
8. 介宾结构 (Objects of Prepositions)	111
9. 主语、动词、宾语和介词 (Subjects, Verbs, Objects, and Prepositions)	112
10. 时间介词 (Prepositions of Time)	112
11. 词序: 宾语、地点和时间 (Word Order: Object, Place, and Time)	113
12. 主谓一致 (Subject-verb Agreement)	114
13. 主谓一致 (Subject-verb Agreement)	114
14. 形容词 (Adjectives)	114
15. 形容词和名词 (Adjectives and Nouns)	115
16. 用作形容词的名词 (Nouns as Adjectives)	116
17. 复习: 名词 (Review: Nouns)	117
18. 人称代词 (Personal Pronouns)	118
19. 人称代词 (Personal Pronouns)	118
20. 人称代词 (Personal Pronouns)	119
21. 名词所有格 (Possessive Nouns)	120
22. 名词所有格 (Possessive Nouns)	120
23. 名词性物主代词与形容词性物主代词的比较 (Possessive Pronouns vs. Possessive Adjectives)	122
24. 名词性物主代词与形容词性物主代词的比较 (Possessive Pronouns vs. Possessive Adjectives)	122
25. 反身代词 (Reflexive Pronouns)	123
26. 反身代词 (Reflexive Pronouns)	124
27. 复习: 代词 (Review: Pronouns)	125
28. 复习: 代词 (Review: Pronouns)	125
29. other 的单数 (Singular Forms of other)	126
30. other 的单数 (Singular Forms of other)	127
31. other 的复数 (Plural Forms of other)	128
32. 总结: other 的各种形式 (Summary: Forms of other)	129
33. 阶段复习 (Cumulative Review)	130

第七章 情态动词(MODAL AUXILIARIES)

1. 预习: 情态动词 (Preview: Modal Auxiliaries)	132
2. 情态动词的形式 (The Form of Modal Auxiliaries)	133
3. 表示能力 (Expressing Ability)	134
4. 表示能力和可能 (Expressing Ability and Possibility)	134
5. 表示可能 (Expressing Possibility)	135
6. 表示可能和许可 (Expressing Possibility and Permission)	135
7. could 的不同含义 (Meanings of could)	136
8. 委婉请求 (Polite Questions)	137
9. 委婉请求 (Polite Questions)	137
10. 表示建议 (Expressing Advice)	138
11. 表示建议 (Expressing Advice)	138
12. 表示建议 (Expressing Advice)	139
13. 表示必要 (Expressing Necessity)	140
14. 表示必要 (Expressing Necessity)	140
15. 表示必要: must, have to, have got to (Necessity: must, have to, have got to)	141
16. 表示必要: must, have to, have got to (Necessity: must, have to, have got to)	141
17. 表示不必要和禁止 (Expressing Lack of Necessity and Prohibition)	141
18. 表示必要、不必要和禁止 (Expressing Necessity, Lack of Necessity, and Prohibition)	143
19. 表示必要、不必要和禁止 (Expressing Necessity, Lack of Necessity, and Prohibition)	143
20. 逻辑推理或必要 (Logical Conclusion or Necessity)	144
21. 祈使句 (Imperative Sentences)	144
22. 委婉请求和祈使句 (Polite Questions and Imperatives)	145
23. let's 和 why don't (let's and why don't)	145
24. 表示优先选择 (Stating Preferences)	146
25. 表示优先选择 (Stating Preferences)	147
26. 阶段复习 (Cumulative Review)	148
27. 阶段复习 (Cumulative Review)	149
28. 阶段复习 (Cumulative Review)	150

第八章 概念之间的连接(CONNECTING IDEAS)

1. 用 and 连接概念 (Connecting Ideas with and)	152
2. 与 and 连用的标点符号 (Punctuating Items Connected with and)	153
3. 在句中使用正确的标点符号 (Punctuating Sentences)	153
4. 在句中使用正确的标点符号 (Punctuating Sentences)	154
5. and, but 和 or 的用法 (Using and, but, and or)	154
6. and, but, or 和 so 的用法 (Using and, but, or, and so)	155
7. and, but, or 和 so 的用法 (Using and, but, or, and so)	155
8. and, but, or 和 solo 用法 (Using and, but, or, and so)	156
9. and, but, or 和 so 的用法 (Using and, but, or, and so)	156

10. and, but, or 和 so 的用法 (Using and, but, or, and so)	157
11. 在 but 和 and 之后使用助动词 (Using Auxiliary Verbs after but and and)	157
12. but 和 and 之后的助动词 (Auxiliary Verbs after but and and)	158
13. 在 and 之后使用 too, so, either 或 neither (Using too, so, either, or neither after and)	160
14. because 引导的状语从句 (Adverb Clauses with because)	161
15. because 引导的状语从句 (Adverb Clauses with because)	161
16. because 引导的状语从句 (Adverb Clauses with because)	161
17. because 引导的状语从句 (Adverb Clauses with because)	162
18. even though 和 although 引导的状语从句 (Adverb Clauses with even though and although)	163
19. because 和 even though 的用法 (Using because and even though)	164
20. because 引导的状语从句 (Adverb Clauses with because)	165
21. even though/although 和 because 的用法 (Using even though/although and because)	166
22. 错误分析 (Error Analysis)	168

第九章 比较(COMPARISONS)

1. as...as	169
2. as...as	169
3. as...as	170
4. as...as	172
5. as...as	172
6. 比较级和最高级形式 (Comparative and Superlative Forms)	174
7. 比较级形式 (Comparative Forms)	174
8. 比较级 (Comparatives)	175
9. 比较级和最高级 (Comparatives and Superlatives)	176
10. farther 和 further (farther and further)	176
11. 形容词和副词的比较级 (Adjectives and Adverbs in the Comparative)	177
12. 完成比较级 (Completing a Comparative)	177
13. 使用代词完成比较 (Completing Comparisons with Pronouns)	178
14. very 与 a lot/ much/far 的比较 (very vs. a lot/much/far)	179
15. not as...as 和 less...than (not as...as and less...than)	179
16. 模糊比较 (Unclear Comparisons)	180
17. more 与名词连用 (Using more with Nouns)	180
18. 重复比较级 (Repeating a Comparative)	181
19. 双重比较级 (Double Comparatives)	181
20. 双重比较级 (Double Comparatives)	182
21. 最高级的用法 (Using Superlatives)	183
22. 最高级的用法 (Using Superlatives)	183
23. As...as, more/er 和 most/-est (as...as, more/-er, and most/-est)	184
24. 在比较级中使用 never (Using never with Comparatives)	186
25. 使用 never 和 ever 表达比较 (Using ever and never in Comparisons)	186
26. 复习比较级和最高级 (Review of Comparatives and Superlative)	187
27. 复习比较级和最高级 (Review of Comparatives and Superlatives)	188
28. like, alike	189
29. the same as, similar to, different from	190
30. like, alike, similar(to), different(from)	190
31. the same, similar, different, like, alike	191

第十章 被动语态(THE PASSIVE)

1. 主动语态与被动语态的比较 (Active vs. Passive)	193
2. 主动语态与被动语态的比较 (Active vs. Passive)	193
3. 复习过去分词 (Review of Past Participles)	194
4. 被动语态形式 (Passive Form)	194
5. 被动含义与主动含义的比较 (Passive vs. Active meaning)	195
6. 被动语态的时态形式 (Tense Forms of the Passive)	196
7. 被动语态变为主动语态 (Passive to Active)	197
8. 被动语态变为主动语态 (Passive to Active)	197
9. 及物动词与不及物动词的比较 (Transitive vs. Intransitive)	198
10. 主动语态和被动语态 (Active and Passive)	198
11. 复习: 用及物动词和不及物动词判定被动语态 (Review: Identifying Passives with Transitive and Intransitive Verbs)	199
12. by 短语 (The by-phrase)	199
13. by 短语 (The by-phrase)	200
14. 主动语态变为被动语态 (Active to Passive)	200
15. 复习: 主动语态与被动语态的比较 (Review: Active vs. Passive)	201
16. 被动语态的进行时态 (Progressive Tenses in Passive)	201
17. 进行时态动词的被动形式 (Passive Forms of Progressive Verbs)	202
18. 进行时态动词的被动形式 (Passive Forms of Progressive Verbs)	203
19. 复习: 主动语态与被动语态的比较 (Review: Active vs. Passive)	203
20. 情态动词的被动语态 (Passive Modals)	204
21. 情态动词的被动语态 (Passive Modals)	204
22. 情态动词的被动语态 (Passive Modals)	205
23. 总结: 主动语态与被动语态的比较 (Summary: Active vs. Passive)	205
24. 总结: 主动语态与被动语态的比较 (Summary: Active vs. Passive)	206
25. 总结: 主动语态与被动语态的比较 (Summary: Active vs. Passive)	207
26. 过去分词用作形容词 (Using Past Participles as Adjectives)	207
27. 过去分词用作形容词 (Using Past Participles as Adjectives)	208
28. -ed 与 -ing 的比较 (-ed vs. -ing)	209
29. -ed 与 -ing 的比较 (-ed vs. -ing)	209
30. -ed 与 -ing 的比较 (-ed vs. -ing)	211
31. -ed 与 -ing 的比较 (-ed vs. -ing)	211
32. get+形容词和过去分词 (get+Adjective and Past Participle)	212
33. get+形容词和过去分词 (get+Adjective and Past Participle)	213
34. be used/accustomed to	214
35. used to 与 be used to 的比较 (used to vs. be used to)	214
36. used to 与 be used to 的比较 (used to vs. be used to)	215
37. be supposed to	215
38. be supposed to	216
39. 错误分析 (Error Analysis)	217

第十一章 可数/不可数名词与冠词

(COUNT/NONCOUNT NOUNS AND ARTICLES)

1. a 与 an 的比较: 单数可数名词 (a vs. an: Singular Count Nouns)	218
2. 预习: 可数与不可数名词 (Preview: Count and Noncount nouns)	218
3. 可数与不可数名词 (Count and Noncount Nouns)	219
4. 可数与不可数名词 (Count and Noncount Nouns)	220
5. 可数与不可数名词 (Count and Noncount Nouns)	220
6. 可数与不可数名词 (Count and Noncount Nouns)	221
7. many 与 much 的比较 (many vs. much)	222
8. how many 和 how Much (how many and how much)	223
9. 复习: 可数与不可数名词 (Review: Count and Noncount Nouns)	224
10. a few 与 a little 的比较 (a few vs. a little)	224
11. 错误分析 (Error Analysis)	225
12. 可数与不可数名词 (Count and Noncount Nouns)	225
13. 不可数名词的度量单位 (Units of Measure with Noncount Nouns)	226
14. 不可数名词的度量单位 (Units of Measure with Noncount Nouns)	227
15. much 与 many 的比较 (much vs. many)	227
16. a/an 与 some 的比较 (a/an vs. some)	228
17. a 与 some 的比较 (a vs. some)	228
18. a/an 与 the 的比较: 单数可数名词 (a/an vs. the: Singular Count Nouns)	229
19. 零冠词(Ø)与 the 的比较 (Ø vs. the)	230
20. 用 the 表达第二次提到的概念 (Using the for Second Mention)	231
21. 用 the 表达第二次提到的概念 (Using the for Second Mention)	233
22. 总结: a/an、the 与零冠词(Ø)的比较 (Summary: a/an vs. the vs. Ø)	234
23. 用 the 或零冠词(Ø)表达名称 (Using the or Ø with Names)	236
24. 用 the 或零冠词(Ø)表达名称 (Using the or Ø with Names)	237
25. 字母大写 (Capitalization)	238
26. 字母大写 (Capitalization)	238
27. 错误分析 (Error Analysis)	239

第十二章 定语从句(ADJECTIVE CLAUSES)

1. 定语从句中 who 的用法 (Using who in Adjective Clauses)	240
2. 定语从句中 who 的用法 (Using who in Adjective Clauses)	241
3. 定语从句中 who 和 whom 的用法 (Using who and whom in Adjective Clauses)	241
4. 定语从句中 who 和 whom 的用法 (Using who and whom in Adjective Clauses)	242
5. 定语从句中 who 和 whom 的用法 (Using who and whom in Adjective Clauses)	242
6. 定语从句中 that 或省略 that(Ø)的用法 (Using that or Ø in Adjective Clauses)	243
7. 定语从句中 that 或省略 that(Ø)的用法 (Using that or Ø in Adjective Clauses)	243
8. 定语从句中 who, whom, that 或省略代词(Ø)的用法	

(Using who, whom, that, or Ø in adjective clauses)	244
9. who 和 whom 与 which 的比较 (who and whom vs. which)	245
10. 定语从句 (Adjective Clauses)	245
11. which 和 that (which and that)	246
12. 定语从句中 which, that 和省略代词(Ø)的用法 (Using which, that, and Ø in Adjective Clauses)	246
13. 错误分析: 定语从句中宾格代词的用法 (Error Analysis: Object Pronouns in Adjective Clauses)	247
14. 定语从句中代词的用法 (Pronoun Usage in Adjective Clauses)	247
15. 定语从句中的主谓一致 (Subject-verb Agreement in Adjective Clauses)	248
16. 定语从句中的介词 (Prepositions in Adjective Clauses)	249
17. 定语从句中的介词 (Prepositions in Adjective Clauses)	250
18. 定语从句中的介词 (Prepositions in Adjective Clauses)	250
19. 定语从句中 whose 的用法 (Adjective Clauses with whose)	251
20. 定语从句中 whose 的用法 (Adjective Clauses with whose)	251
21. 定语从句的意义 (Meaning of Adjective Clauses)	252
22. 定语从句 (Adjective Clauses)	253
23. 定语从句 (Adjective Clauses)	253
24. 错误分析 (Error Analysis)	254

第十三章 动名词和不定式(ADJECTIVE CLAUSES)

1. 动词+动名词 (Verb+Gerund)	256
2. go+动名词 (go+Gerund)	256
3. 区分动名词和不定式 (Identifying Gerunds and Infinitives)	257
4. 动名词和不定式 (Gerunds and Infinitives)	258
5. 动词+动名词与不定式的比较 (Verb+Gerund vs. Infinitive)	258
6. 动词+动名词或不定式 (Verb+Gerund or Infinitive)	260
7. 动词+动名词或不定式 (Verb+Gerund or Infinitive)	261
8. 介词+动名词 (Preposition+Gerund)	262
9. 介词+动名词 (Preposition+Gerund)	263
10. 复习: 动名词与不定式的比较 (Review: Gerund vs. Infinitive)	264
11. 复习: 动名词与不定式的比较 (Review: Gerund vs. Infinitive)	265
12. 复习: 动名词与不定式的比较 (Review: Gerund vs. Infinitive)	265
13. by+动名词 (by+Gerund)	267
14. by+动名词 (by+Gerund)	268
15. by 与 with 的比较 (by vs. with)	268
16. 动名词作主语; it+不定式 (Gerund as Subject; it+Infinitive)	269
17. 表目的: to 与 for 的比较 (Purpose: to vs. for)	270
18. 表目的: to 与 for 的比较 (Purpose: to vs. for)	271
19. 表目的: to 与 for 的比较 (Purpose: to vs. for)	271
20. (in order)to	271
21. too 与 enough 的比较 (too vs. enough)	272
22. too 与 enough 的比较 (too vs. enough)	273
23. 动名词与不定式的比较 (Gerund vs. Infinitive)	273
24. 动名词与不定式的比较 (Gerund vs. Infinitive)	274
25. 错误分析 (Error Analysis)	276

第十四章 名词性从句(NOUN CLAUSES)

1. 特殊疑问句和名词性从句 (Information Questions and Noun Clauses)	278
2. 名词性从句 (Noun Clauses)	278
3. 特殊疑问句和名词性从句 (Information Questions and Noun Clauses)	279
4. 特殊疑问句和名词性从句 (Information Questions and Noun Clauses)	279
5. 名词性从句 (Noun Clauses)	281
6. 特殊疑问句和名词性从句 (Information Questions and Noun Clauses)	281
7. who, what, whose+be 的名词性从句 (Noun Clauses with who, what, whose+be)	282
8. who, what, whose+be 的名词性从句 (Noun Clauses with who, what, whose+be)	282
9. who, what, whose+be 的名词性从句 (Noun Clauses with who, what, whose+be)	283
10. who, what, whose+be 的名词性从句 (Noun Clauses with who, what, whose+be)	283
11. 名词性从句和一般疑问句 (Noun Clauses and Yes/No Questions)	284
12. 名词性从句和一般疑问句 (Noun Clauses and Yes/No Questions)	285
13. 名词性从句 (Noun Clauses)	285
14. 名词性从句 (Noun Clauses)	286
15. that 从句 (that-clauses)	287
16. that 从句 (that-clauses)	288
17. that 从句 (that-clauses)	289
18. that 从句 (that-clauses)	290
19. that 从句 (that-clauses)	290
20. 直接引语 (Quoted Speech)	291
21. 直接引语 (Quoted Speech)	291
22. 直接引语 (Quoted Speech)	292
23. 直接引语 (Quoted Speech)	293
24. 间接引语: 改变代词 (Reported Speech: Changing Pronouns)	293
25. 间接引语: 改变代词 (Reported Speech: Changing Verbs)	294
26. 间接引语 (Reported Speech)	295
27. 转述问题 (Reporting Questions)	296
28. 引述问题 (Quoting Questions)	296
29. 转述问题 (Reporting Questions)	297
30. 间接引语 (Reported Speech)	298
31. say, tell 与 ask 的比较 (say vs. tell vs. ask)	299
32. 间接引语 (Reported Speech)	299
33. 间接引语 (Reported Speech)	300
34. 间接引语 (Reported Speech)	300
35. 间接引语 (Reported Speech)	302
36. 错误分析 (Error Analysis)	303

附录 1 动词短语(PHRASAL VERBS)

1. 可分的动词短语(A 组) [Phrasal Verbs: Separable(Group A)]	305
2. 可分的动词短语(A 组) [Phrasal Verbs: Separable(Group A)]	306
3. 不可分的动词短语(B 组) [Phrasal Verbs: Nonseparable(Group B)]	307

4. 不可分的动词短语(B组) [Phrasal Verbs: Nonseparable(Group B)]	308
5. 可分的动词短语(C组) [Phrasal Verbs: Separable(Group C)]	308
6. 可分的动词短语(A、B、C组) [Phrasal Verbs: Separable(Groups A, B, C)]	309
7. 可分的动词短语(D组) [Phrasal Verbs: Separable(Group D)]	310
8. 可分和不可分的动词短语(A、B、C、D组)	
[Phrasal Verbs: Separable and Nonseparable(Groups A、B、C、D)]	311
9. 可分的动词短语(E组) [Phrasal Verbs: Separable(Group E)]	312
10. 可分的动词短语(E组) [Phrasal Verbs: Separable(Group E)]	313
11. 不及物的动词短语(F组) [Phrasal Verbs: Intransitive(Group F)]	314
12. 不及物的动词短语(F组) [Phrasal Verbs: Intransitive(Group F)]	316
13. 三个词构成的动词短语(G组) [Phrasal Verbs(three-word)(Group G)]	316
14. 三个词构成的动词短语(G组) [Phrasal Verbs(three-word)(Group G)]	317
15. 三个词构成的动词短语(H组) [Phrasal Verbs(three-word)(Group H)]	317
16. 三个词构成的动词短语(H组) [Phrasal Verbs(three-word)(Group H)]	318
17. 复习: 动词短语(附录1) [Review: Phrasal Verbs(Appendix 1)]	319

附录2 介词搭配(PREPOSITION COMBINATIONS)

1. 介词搭配(A组) [Preposition Combinations(Group A)]	321
2. 介词搭配(A组) [Preposition Combinations(Group A)]	322
3. 介词搭配(B组) [Preposition Combinations(Group B)]	322
4. 介词搭配(B组) [Preposition Combinations(Group B)]	323
5. 介词搭配(C组) [Preposition Combinations(Group C)]	323
6. 介词搭配(A、C组) [Renew: Preposition Combinations(Groups A and C)]	324
7. 介词搭配(D组) [Preposition Combinations(Group D)]	325
8. 介词搭配(B、D组) [Preposition Combinations(Groups B and D)]	326
9. 介词搭配(E组) [Preposition Combinations(Group E)]	326
10. 介词搭配(E组) [Preposition Combinations(Group E)]	327
11. 介词搭配(F组) [Preposition Combinations(Group F)]	327
12. 介词搭配(F组) [Preposition Combinations(Group P)]	328
介词搭配(G组) [Preposition Combinations(Group G)]	329
介词搭配(G组) [Preposition Combinations(Group G)]	330
复习: 介词搭配(附录2) [Review: Preposition Combinations(Appendix 2)]	331
复习: 介词搭配(附录2) [Review: Preposition Combinations(Appendix 2)]	331

练习答案

第一章 现在时

◇练习1 问答

用合适的词语完成下列句子。

SPEAKER A: Hi. My name is Kunio.

SPEAKER B: Hi. My name is Maria. I am glad to meet you.

KUNIO: I am glad to meet you, too. Where are you?

MAMA: I am from Mexico. Where are you?

KUNIO: I am from Japan.

MARIA: Where are you living now?

KUNIO: On Fifth Avenue in an apartment. And you?

MARIA: I am living in a dorm.

KUNIO: What are you studying?

MARIA: Business. After I study English, I'm going to attend the School of Business Administration. How are you? What is your major?

KUNIO: Engineering.

MARIA: What do you like to do in your free time?

KUNIO: I read a lot. How do you?

MARIA: I like to get on the Internet.

KUNIO: Really? What do you do when you're online?

MARIA: I visit many different Web sites. It is a good way to practice my English.

KUNIO: That's interesting. I like to get on the Internet, too.

MARIA: I have to know your full name on the board when I introduce you to the class. How do you spell your name?

KUNIO: My first name is Kunio. K-U-N-I-O. My family name is Akiwa.

MARIA: Kunio Akiwa. Is that right?

KUNIO: Yes, it is. And what is your name again?

MARIA: My first name is Maria. M-A-R-I-A. My last name is Lopez.

KUNIO: Thanks. It's been nice talking to you.

MARIA: I enjoyed it, too.

◇练习2 现在时动词(表 1-1 和 1-2)

用所给动词的现在时或现在进行时形式完成下列句子。

1. sit I am sitting at my desk right now.

2. read I am reading the second sentence in this exercise.

3. look I am looking at sentence 3 now.

4. write Now I am writing the right completion for this sentence.

5. do I am doing a grammar exercise.

6. sit I usually sit at my desk when I do my homework. And right now I am sitting at my desk to do this exercise.

7. read I often read the newspaper, but right now I am reading a sentence in my grammar workbook.

8. look I look at the newspaper every day. But right now I am looking at my grammar workbook.

9. write When I do exercises in this workbook, I write the answers in my book and then I check them in the Answer Key. Right now I am writing an answer in the book.

10. do I _____ grammar exercises every day. Right now I _____ Practice 2 in this workbook.

◇练习3 一般现在时的形式(表 1-1 和 1-2)

用动词 speak 的正确形式完成下列句子, 复习一般现在时的基本形式。

I. 肯定形式

1. I (speak) speak English.
2. They (speak) _____ English.
3. He (speak) _____ English.
4. You (speak) _____ English.
5. She (speak) _____ English.

II. 否定形式

6. I (speak, not) do not (don't) speak your language.
7. They (speak, not) _____ English.
8. She (speak, not) _____ English.
9. You (speak, not) _____ English.
10. He (speak, not) _____ English.

III. 疑问形式

11. (you, speak) Do you speak English?
12. (they, speak) _____ English?
13. (he, speak) _____ English?
14. (we, speak) _____ English?
15. (she, speak) _____ English?

◇练习4 现在进行时的形式(表 1-1 和 1-2)

用动词 speak 的正确形式完成下列句子, 复习现在进行时的基本形式。

I. 肯定形式

1. I (speak) am speaking English right now.
2. They (speak) _____ English right now.
3. She (speak) _____ English right now.
4. You (speak) _____ English right now.
5. He (speak) _____ English right now.

II. 否定形式

6. I (speak, not) am not speaking English right now.
7. They (speak, not) _____ English right now.
8. She (speak, not) _____ English right now.
9. You (speak, not) _____ English right now.
10. He (speak, not) _____ English right now.

III. 疑问形式

11. (you, speak) Are you speaking English right now?
12. (he, speak) _____ English right now?
13. (they, speak) _____ English right now?
14. (we, speak) _____ English right now?
15. (she, speak) _____ English right now?

◇练习5 现在时动词: 疑问句(表 1-1 和 1-2)

用 Does he 或 Is he 完成下列疑问句。

A: _____ it yours?

B: No. It _____ not belong to me. It _____ belongs to my cousin.

He _____ collects old books.

A: That _____ an interesting hobby, _____ you a collector, too?
_____ you collect old books?

B: I _____ have the interest but not the money. Rare old books _____
expensive to collect. I _____ becoming interested in stamps, though. Stamps
_____ not as expensive as rare books. I _____ want to collect stamps from
the 1800s.

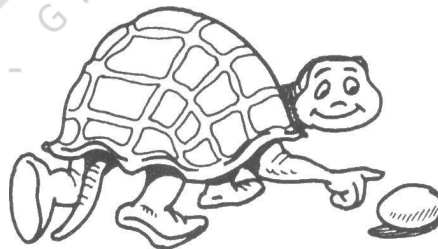
A: I _____ thinking about collecting stamps, too. _____ you want to get
together sometime and talk about it?

B: Yes. Let's do that.

◇练习9 一般现在时(表 1-1 和 1-2)

用 does, do, is, tire 或 Ø 完成下列句子。

1. A turtle _____ Ø _____ lays eggs.
2. _____ Do _____ snakes lay eggs?
3. _____ an alligator lay eggs?
4. _____ an alligator a reptile?
5. _____ turtles and snakes
reptiles?
6. _____ Turtles, _____ snakes, _____ and alligators
all reptiles.
7. Almost all reptiles _____ lay eggs.
8. Reptiles _____ cold-blooded.
9. They _____ prefer warm climates.
10. Their body temperature _____ the same as the temperature of their
surroundings.
11. _____ reptiles like to lie in the sun? Yes, they do.



◇练习10 一般现在时与现在进行时(表 1-1 和 1-2)

用 does, do, is, are 或 Ø 完成下列句子。

1. A mosquito _____ is _____ flying around Sam's head.
2. Mosquitoes _____ pests.
3. They _____ bother people and animals.
4. _____ a male mosquito bite?
5. No, male mosquitoes _____ not bite.
6. Only female mosquitoes _____ bite animals
and people.
7. A female mosquito _____ lays 1000 to 3000
eggs each year.
8. How long _____ mosquitoes live?



9. A female mosquito _____ lives for 30 days.
10. A male mosquito _____ not live as long as a female.
11. How long _____ a male mosquito live?
12. It _____ dies after 10 or 20 days.
13. Beverly _____ wearing mosquito repellent.



14. The mosquito repellent _____ smells bad, but it _____ works.
 15. The mosquito repellent _____ effective.
 16. Mosquitoes _____ stay away from people who _____ wearing mosquito repellent.
 17. _____ you ever wear mosquito repellent?
 18. _____ mosquito repellent work?
- ◇练习 11 频度副词(表 1-3)
将斜体单词填入句中适当位置, 不需填的地方写Ø。
1. usually Ann usually stays Ø at night.
 2. usually Ann Ø is usually at home at night.
 3. always Bob _____ stays _____ home in the evening.
 4. always He _____ is _____ at his desk in the evening.
 5. usually He _____ doesn't _____ go out in the evenings.
 6. always But he _____ doesn't _____ study every evening.
 7. sometimes He _____ watches _____ a little TV.
 8. never He _____ stays _____ up past midnight.
 9. never He _____ is _____ up past midnight.
 10. usually Does _____ Ann _____ study _____ at night?
 11. always Does _____ Bob _____ study _____ at night?
 12. always Is _____ Bob _____ at home at night?

◇练习 12 频度副词(表 1-3)

将所给单词填入句中适当位置, 必要时可将动词的否定形式变为肯定形式(如陈述形式)。

1. Jane doesn't come to class on time.
 - a. usually Jane usually doesn't come to class on time.
 - b. ever Jane doesn't ever come to class on time.
 - c. seldom Jane seldom comes to class on time.
 - d. sometimes Jane _____ to class on time.
 - e. always Jane _____ to class on time.
 - f. occasionally Jane _____ to class on time.
 - g. never Jane _____ to class on time.
 - h. hardly ever Jane _____ to class on time.
2. Jane isn't on time for class.
 - a. usually Jane usually isn't on time for class.
 - b. rarely Jane _____ on time for class.
 - c. always Jane _____ on time for class.
 - d. frequently Jane _____ on time for class.
 - e. never Jane _____ on time for class.

- f. ever Jane _____ on time for class.
g. seldom Jane _____ on time for class.

◇练习 13 频度副词(表 1-3)

利用表格中所给的信息完成下列句子。每个句子都要求填入一个频度副词。

Kim's Day	S	M	T	W	Th	F	S
1. wake up late	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
2. skip breakfast		×	×		×		
3. visit friends	×	×		×		×	×
4. be on time for class		×	×	×	×		
5. surf the Internet				×			
6. talk on the phone	×	×	×	×		×	×
7. do homework			×			×	
8. be in bed early							

- Kim _____ always wakes _____ up late.
- She _____ breakfast.
- She _____ friends.
- She _____ on time for class.
- She _____ the Internet.
- She _____ on the phone.
- She _____ homework.
- She _____ in bed early.

◇练习 14 频度副词(表 1-3)

从下表选出合适的频度副词填空完成句子。

always	often OR usually	sometimes
never	seldom OR rarely	

- I watch TV in the evening five or six times a week.
→ I often OR usually watch TV in the evening.
- I let my roommate borrow my car only one time last year.
→ I seldom OR rarely let my roommate borrow my car.
- Maria eats cereal for breakfast seven days a week.
→ Maria always eats cereal for breakfast.
- Four out of five visitors to the museum stay for three hours or longer.
→ Museum visitors _____ stay for at least three hours.
- We occasionally have quizzes in Dr. Rice's history class.
→ Dr. Rice _____ gives quizzes in her history class.
- If the teacher is on time, the class begins at 8:00 A.M. Once in a while, the teacher is a few minutes late.
→ The class _____ begins at 8:00 A.M.
- The train from Chicago has been late ninety percent of the time.
→ The train from Chicago is _____ on time.
- In the desert, it rains only two or three days between May and September every year.
→ It _____ rains in the desert in the summer.
- James asks me to go to the sailboat races every year, but I don't accept his invitation because I think sailboat racing is boring.
→ I _____ go to sailboat races with James.

10. Every time I go to a movie, I buy popcorn.
→ I _____ buy popcorn when I go to a movie.
11. Andy and Jake work in the same office and are friends. They go to lunch together four or five times a week.
→ Andy and Jake _____ go out to lunch with each other.
12. Most of the time Andy and Jake don't discuss business when they go to lunch with each other.
→ They _____ discuss business during lunch.

◇练习 15 频度副词(表 1-3)

用下表中的频度副词及所给动词的一般现在时形式填空完成句子。

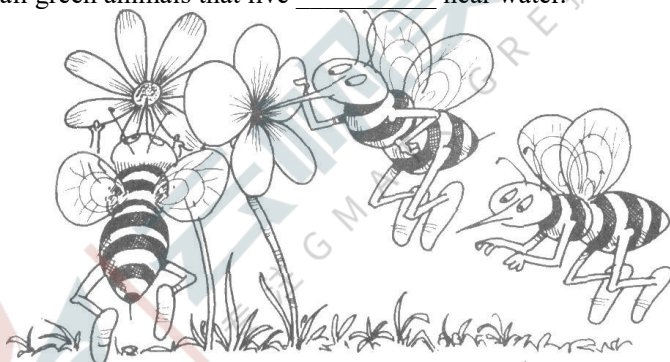
always	often OR usually	sometimes
never	seldom OR rarely	

1. Every time Pat rents a video, she chooses a comedy.
→ Pat (choose) _____ a comedy to rent.
2. I almost always watch soccer matches on TV. I go to a soccer match only once a year.
→ I (go) _____ to a soccer match.
3. I take the bus to work once a week or once every two weeks.
→ I usually carpool to work, but I (ride) _____ the bus.
4. The doctor told Mari to exercise four times a week, but she works long hours and exercises only a couple of times a month.
→ Mari (exercise) _____.
5. My roommate eats only vegetarian food, and I like beef and chicken. We always cook separate meals.
→ I (eat) _____ my roommate's meals.
6. The little boy in the street is begging for food. He comes from a poor family and never gets enough to eat.
→ The little boy (be) _____ hungry.
7. On most Sundays, my family gets together for a big dinner.
→ My family (get) _____ together for a big dinner on Sundays.
8. Usually Jane can get right to work on her computer when she turns it on, but every once in a while she gets an error message.
→ Jane (get) _____ an error message when she turns on her computer.
9. Peter tries to finish his homework before he goes to bed, but he usually falls asleep.
→ Peter (finish) _____ his homework before he falls asleep and decides to go to bed.
10. My friends like to play video games, but I don't join them because the games are too violent.
→ I (play) _____ video games with my friends.
11. Jenny's job starts at 8:00. Most days of the week, Jenny arrives around 7:30.
→ Jenny (arrive) _____ at work early.
12. I like to relax every night by taking a long, hot bath.
→ I (take) _____ a long, hot bath in the evening.

◇练习 16 一般现在时: -S / ES 结尾(表 1-4 和 1-5)

在需要处填入-s/es, 不需要处填Ø, 必要时可将词尾-y 变为-i。

1. Alan like s to play soccer.
2. My son watch es too much TV.
3. Rita do es n't like Ø coffee.
4. Monkeys climb Ø trees.
5. Do you like to climb trees?
6. Do Paul like to cook?
7. Paula like to dance.
8. Mike wash his own clothes.
9. Yuki go to school at seven.
10. Tina get her work done on time.
11. Tina and Pat get their work done.
12. Do Bill get his work done?
13. Eric do n't get it done on time.
14. Ahmed carry a briefcase to work.
15. Janet play tennis every day.
16. A turtle is another animal that live near water.
17. Bees make honey.
18. A bee visit many flowers in one day.
- 19 A frog catch flies with its tongue.
20. Frogs are small green animals that live near water.



◇练习 17 一般现在时: -S / ES 结尾(表 1-4 和 1-5)

阅读关于 SAM's day 的短文, 然后将以第一人称 I 叙述的内容全部改用第三人称 he 叙述, 动词需要做相应的改变。

SAM'S DAY:

I leave my apartment at 8:00 every morning. I walk to the bus stop and catch the 8:10 bus. It takes me downtown. Then I transfer to another bus, and it takes me to my part-time job. I arrive at work at 8:50. I stay until 1:00, and then I leave for school. I attend classes until 5:00. I usually study in the library and try to finish my homework. Then I go home around 8:00. I have a long day.

Sam leaves his apartment at 8:00. He walks to the bus stop and catches the 8:10 bus. It takes him downtown. Then he transfers to another bus, and it takes him to his part-time job. He arrives at work at 8:50. He stays until 1:00, and then he leaves for school. He attends classes until 5:00. He usually studies in the library and tries to finish his homework. Then he goes home around 8:00. He has a long day.

◇练习 18 -S/ES 结尾的发音(表 1-5 和 6-1²)

将表中所给单词按词尾发音填入对应的空格处。

✓cooks	stays	hates	misses
✓promises	seems	travels	draws
invites	watches	picks	introduces

/s/

/z/

/~z/

_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

◇练习 19 -S/ES 结尾的发音(表 1-5 和 6-1)

给下列动词的词尾填入正确发音: /s/, /z/ 或 /əz/。

1. he need/ z /
2. she take/ s /
3. the bus pass/ /
4. John love/ /
5. Pam listen/ /
6. she add/ /
7. he dress/ /
8. it fit/ /
9. the teacher enjoy/ /
10. the baby kiss/ /
11. she realize/ /
12. her dad spend/ /
13. she think/ /
14. he wonder/ /
15. my manager suggest/ /

◇练习 20 -S/ES 结尾的拼写(表 1-4, 1-5 和 2-5)

在空格处填入下列动词的单数第三人称形式和进行时形式。

- | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. buy | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 2. come | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 3. open | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 4. begin | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 5. stop | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 6. die | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 7. rain | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 8. dream | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 9. eat | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 10. enjoy | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 11. write | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 12. try | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 13. stay | _____ | _____ | _____ |

²关于-s/es 结尾的发音和拼写的内容见《朗文中级英语语法》P.157 表 6-1。

14. hope _____
 15. study _____
 16. lie _____
 17. fly _____
 18. sit _____

◇练习 21 非行为动词(表 1-5)

选出正确的句子。

1. a. We want to have an answer.
 b. We are wanting to have an answer.
2. a. The students think their grammar class is challenging.
 b. The students are thinking their grammar class is challenging.
3. a. Look! An eagle is flying overhead.
 b. Look! An eagle flies overhead.
4. a. The eagle is over there! Are you seeing it?
 b. The eagle is over there! Do you see it?
5. a. Now I believe my English is better.
 b. Now I am believing my English is better.
6. a. I'm doing this exercise now.
 b. I do this exercise now.
7. a. My parents are owning two cars at this time.
 b. My parents own two cars at this time.
8. a. This is fun. I am having a good time.
 b. This is fun. I have a good time.
9. a. We are having a new computer now.
 b. We have a new computer now.
10. a. I'm not knowing the answer to your question right now, but I'll find out.
 b. I don't know the answer to your question right now, but I'll find out.
11. a. My family is preferring chicken to red meat.
 b. My family prefers chicken to red meat.
12. a. I need to borrow some money.
 b. I am needing to borrow some money.

◇练习 22 一般现在时与现在进行时(表 1-1→1-6)

用下表中动词的一般现在时或现在进行时形式填空，每个动词只能用一次。

belong	need	see	✓take
bite	play	shine	understand
drive	prefer	sing	watch
look	rain	✓snow	write

1. Look outside! It is snowing. Everything is beautiful and all white.
2. My father takes the 8:15 train into the city every weekday morning.
3. On Tuesdays and Thursdays, I walk to work for the exercise. Every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday, I drive my car to work.
4. A: Charlie, can't you hear the telephone? Answer it!
 B: You get it! I am watching my favorite TV show. I don't want to miss anything.
5. A: What kind of tea do you like?
 B: Well, I'm drinking black tea, but I prefer green tea.
6. I'm gaining weight around my waist. These pants are too tight. I need a larger pair of pants.

7. A: Dinner's ready. Please call the children.
 B: Where are they?
 A: They _____ a game outside in the street.
 8. It's night. There's no moon. Emily is outside. She _____ at the sky.
 She _____ more stars than she can count.
 9. Michael has a good voice. Sometimes he _____ with a musical group in town. It's a good way to earn a little extra money.
 10. A: Ouch!
 B: What's the matter?
 A: Every time I eat too fast, I _____ my tongue.
 11. Nadia always _____ in her diary before bed.
 12. Thank you for your help in algebra. Now I _____ that lesson.
 13. This magazine is not mine. It _____ to Colette.
 14. I can see a rainbow because the sun _____ and it _____ at the same time.

◇练习 23 一般现在时与现在进行时(表 1-1→1-6)

用所给动词的一般现在时或现在进行时形式填空。

Rosa is sitting on the train right now. She (take/not/usually) _____ usually doesn't take

- 1
 the train, but today her son
 (need) _____ her car. She(enjoy)
 2
 _____ the ride today. There (be)
 _____ so many
 3
 4
 people to watch. Some people (eat)
 _____ breakfast. Others (drink)
 5
 _____ coffee and (read)
 _____ the newspaper. One
 6
 7
 woman (work) _____ on her

laptop computer. Another (hug)

8

_____ her baby. Two teenagers
(play) _____ computer

9

10

_____ games. One _____ of _____ them
(wave) _____ his hand in excitement.

A clown (walk)

11

_____ up and down the aisles and
(entertain) _____ the

12

13

_____ children. Rosa _____ (smile)
_____. The train ride (take,
usually)

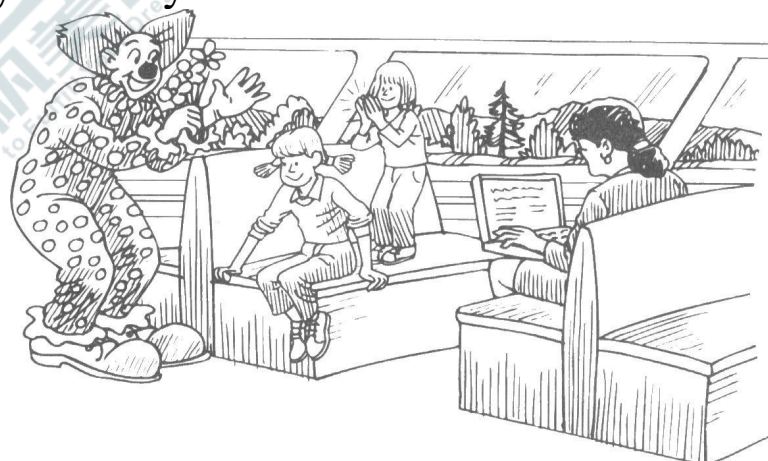
14

_____ her longer than driving,
but it (be) _____ a more

15

16

enjoyable way for her to travel.



◇练习 24 错误分析(表 1-1→1-6)

改正句子。

- doesn't
1. My friend ~~don't~~ speak English well.
 2. I am not believing you.
 3. My sister's dog no bark.
 4. Our teacher is always starting class on time.
 5. Look! The cat gets up on the counter.
 6. Is Marie has enough money?
 7. We are not liking this rainy weather.
 8. Mrs. Gray is worry about her daughter.
 9. My brother no has enough free time.
 10. Is Jim drive to school every day?
 11. He always hurrys in the morning. He no wanting to be late.
 12. Anna have usually dinner at eight.

◇练习 25 现在时动词：疑问句和简略回答 (表 1-7)

用 do, does, aloft, is 或 are 完成句子，然后做出肯定或否定回答。

1. A: Are you leaving now?
B: Yes, I am OR No, I'm not.
2. A: Do your neighbors know that you are a police officer?
B: Yes, they do OR No, they don't.
3. A: Do you follow the same routine every morning?
B: Yes, yes OR No, no.
4. A: Does Dr. Jarvis know the name of her new assistant yet?
B: Yes, yes OR No, no.
5. A: Are Paul and Beth studying the problem?
B: Yes, yes OR No, no.
6. A: Do they understand the problem?
B: Yes, yes OR No, no.
7. A: Is Mike reading the paper and watching television at the same time?
B: Yes, yes OR No, no.
8. A: Are you listening to me?
B: Yes, yes OR No, no.
9. A: Is that building safe?
B: Yes, yes OR No, no.
10. A: Do you and your co-workers get together outside of work?
B: Yes, yes OR No, no.

◇练习 26 复习：现在时动词(表 1-1→1-7)

1. A: Hi! What (you, do) are you doing ?
B: I (watch) am watching an exercise video. I (want) to lose a little weight before my vacation.
A: I really (enjoy) enjoy exercising. I (go) go to an aerobics class three times a week. It (be) is really fun. I also (run) run every morning before school.
B: Stop! You (make) me feel bad!

2. A: I like to read. How about you? (you, read) _____ a lot?
B: Yes, I _____. I (read) _____ at least one novel every week, and I (subscribe) _____ to several magazines. And I (look, always) _____ at the newspaper during breakfast.
3. Before you begin to study, you should ask yourself two questions. First, "Why (I, study) _____ this subject right now?" Second, "What (I, want) _____ to learn about this topic?" Students (need) _____ to understand the purpose of their study.
4. A: I (leave) _____ now. (you, want) _____ to go with me into town?
B: No, thanks. I can't. I (wait) _____ for my sister to call.
5. A: Shhh.
B: Why? (the baby, sleep) _____?
A: Uh-huh. She (take) _____ her afternoon nap.
B: Okay, I'll talk softly. I (want, not) _____ to wake her up.
6. Ann is a painter. She (go) _____ to the opening of every new art show in the city. She (like) _____ to see the latest work of other artists. Right now she (prepare) _____ for a show of her new paintings next month.
7. It (be) _____ a cool autumn day today. The wind (blow) _____ and the leaves (fall) _____ to the ground.
8. My roommate (eat) _____ breakfast at exactly seven o'clock every morning. I usually (eat, not) _____ breakfast at all. What time (you, eat) _____ in the morning?
9. A: (you, shop) _____ at this store every week?
B: No, I _____. I (shop, usually) _____ at the store near my apartment.
A: Why (you, shop) _____ here now?
B: I (try) _____ to find something special for my father's birthday dinner.
10. In cold climates, many trees (lose) _____ their leaves in winter. They (rest) _____ for several months. Then they (grow) _____ new leaves and flowers in the spring. Some trees (keep) _____ their leaves during the winter and (stay) _____ green all year long. In some regions of the earth, trees (grow, not) _____ at all. For example, some desert areas (have, not) _____ any trees. The largest area of the world without trees (be) _____ Antarctica. No trees (grow) _____ in Antarctica.

第二章 过去时

◇练习1 一般过去时(表 2-2→2-7)

将下列各句改写成过去时，用动词的一般过去时形式和 yesterday 或 last。

现在	过去
every day	yesterday
every morning	yesterday morning
every afternoon	yesterday afternoon
every night	last night
every week	last week
every Monday, Tuesday, etc.	last Monday, Tuesday, etc.
every month	last month
every year	last year

- I walk to my office every morning.
→ I walked to my office yesterday morning.
- I talk to my parents on the phone every week.
→ I talked to my parents on the phone last week.
- The post office opens at eight o'clock every morning.
→ The post office opened at eight o'clock morning.
- Mrs. Hall goes to the fruit market every Monday.
→ Mrs. Hall went to the fresh fruit market Monday.
- The company managers meet at nine o'clock every Friday morning.
→ The executives met at nine o'clock Friday morning.
- I make my own lunch and take it to work with me every morning.
→ I made my own lunch and took it to work with me.
- Mr. Clark pays his rent on time every month.
→ Mr. Clark paid his rent on time last month.
- The baby falls asleep at three o'clock every afternoon.
→ The baby fell asleep at three o'clock last afternoon.
- The last bus to downtown leaves at ten o'clock every night.
→ The last bus to downtown left at ten o'clock night.

◇练习2 一般过去时：规则动词与不规则动词(表 2-2 和 2-7)

写出所给动词的一般过去时形式。

- start started
- go went
- see saw
- stand stood
- arrive arrived
- win won
- have had

- bring brought
- break broke
- eat ate
- watch watched
- build built
- take took
- pay paid

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 8. make _____ | 23. leave _____ |
| 9. finish _____ | 24. wear _____ |
| 10. feel _____ | 25. open _____ |
| 11. fall _____ | 26. decide _____ |
| 12. hear _____ | 27. plan _____ |
| 13. sing _____ | 28. write _____ |
| 14. explore _____ | 29. teach _____ |
| 15. ask _____ | 30. hold _____ |

◇练习3 一般过去时形式(表 2-1→2-3)

用所给的词语提问并回答问题。

1. you/answer

A: The teacher asked a question. _____ Did you answer _____ it?

B: Yes, _____ I did _____ . I answered _____ it. OR

No, _____ I didn't _____ . I didn't answer _____ it.

2. he/see

A: Tom went to the celebration, _____ the fireworks?

B: Yes, _____ the fireworks. OR

No, _____ the fireworks.

3. they/watch

A: The game was on TV. _____ it?

B: Yes, _____ the game. OR

No, _____ the game.

4. you/understand

A: You went to a lecture, _____ it?

B: Yes, _____ the lecture. OR

No, _____ the lecture.

5. you/be

A: _____ at home last night?

B: Yes, _____ at home last night. OR

No, _____ at home last night.

◇练习4 现在时和过去时的否定句(第一章和表 2-1→2-3)

引号中的句子包含错误信息, 用正确的信息完成句子: 先写否定句, 再写肯定句。

1. "You flew to school yesterday."

No, I _____ didn't fly _____ to school yesterday. I _____ walked /took the bus _____.

2. "Lemons are sweet."

No, lemons _____ sweet. They _____.

3. "Astronauts walked on Mars in 1969."

No, astronauts _____ on Mars in 1969. They _____ in 1969.

4. "You were a baby in the year 2000."

No, I _____ in 2000. I _____ years old in 2000.

5. "Buddha came from China."

No, Buddha _____ from China. Buddha from Nepal.

6. "Coffee comes from cocoa beans."

No, coffee _____ from cocoa beans. It _____.

7. "You slept outdoors last night."

No, I _____ outdoors last night. I _____.

8. "Ice is hot."

No, ice _____ hot. It _____.

9. "Dinosaurs disappeared a hundred years ago."
 No, dinosaurs _____ a hundred years ago.
 They _____ ago.

◇练习5 一般过去时：疑问句(表 2-2 和 2-3)

用斜体词和 did, was 或 were 写出过去时的疑问句。

1. he/study _____ Did he study _____ yesterday?
2. he/sick _____ was he sick _____ yesterday?
3. she/sad _____ yesterday?
4. they/eat _____ yesterday?
5. they/hungry _____ yesterday?
6. you/go _____ yesterday?
7. she/understand _____ yesterday?
8. he/forget _____ yesterday?

◇练习6 一般过去时：疑问句(表 2-2 和 2-3)

昨天你参加了驾照考试，一位朋友向你询问有关考试的情况，用 did, was 或 were 填空。

1. _____ Did you pass your driver's test yesterday?
2. _____ you nervous?
3. _____ your hands shake?
4. _____ you practice a lot for it?
5. _____ the license examiner friendly?
6. _____ you make any silly mistakes?
7. _____ the car easy to drive?
8. _____ you go on an easy route?

◇练习7 一般过去时：规则动词与不规则动词(表 2-2 和 2-7)

用下表所给动词的一般过去时形式完成下列各句，每个动词只能用一次。

call	hold	sell	swim
fight	jump	✓shake	teach
freeze	ride	stay	think

1. Paul _____ shook _____ the soft drink so hard that it sprayed all over his clothes.
2. Carol didn't want to go on vacation with us, so she _____ home alone all week.
3. Since I hurt my knee, I can't go jogging. Yesterday, I _____ in the pool for an hour instead.
4. I was terrified just standing over the pool on the high diving board. Finally, I took a deep breath, held my nose, and _____ into the water.
5. The climber, who was fearful of falling, _____ the rope tightly in both hands.
6. Johnny pushed Alan down on the floor, and the two boys _____ for a few minutes. Neither boy was hurt.
7. Before Louise started her own company, she _____ chemistry at the university.
8. It was extremely cold last night, and the water we put out for the cat _____ solid.



9. Before I made my decision, I _____ about it for a long, long time.
 10. Carlos _____ your house three times to ask you to go to the movie with us, but there was no answer, so we went without you.
 11. My car wouldn't start this morning, so I _____ my bicycle to work.
 12. I needed money to pay my tuition at the university, so I _____ my motorcycle to my cousin.

◇练习 8 规则动词: -ed 结尾的发音(表 2-4)

大声朗读下列单词, 练习-ed 结尾的发音。

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. stopped = stop/t/ | 11. finished = finish/t/ |
| 2. robbed = rob/d/ | 12. seem = seem/d/ |
| 3. wanted = want/əd/ | 13. killed = kill/d/ |
| 4. talked = talk/t/ | 14. turned = turn/d/ |
| 5. lived = live/d/ | 15. played = play/d/ |
| 6. needed = need/d/ | 16. continued = continue/d/ |
| 7. passed = pass/t ³ / | 17. repeated = repeat/əd/ |
| 8. pushed = push/t/ | 18. waited = wait/əd/ |
| 9. watched = watch/t/ | 19. added = add/əd/ |
| 10. thanked = thank/t/ | 20. decide = decide/əd/ |

◇练习 9 规则动词: -ed 结尾的发音(表 2-4)

写出下列单词的正确发音, 然后大声朗读出来, 练习-ed 结尾的发音。

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. talked = talk/ t- / | 11. continued = continue/ |
| 2. lived = live/ d / | 12. watched = watch/ / |
| 3. waited = wait/ əd / | 13. passed = pass/ / |
| 4. played = play/ / | 14. decide = decide/ / |
| 5. added = add/ / | 15. stopped= stop/ / |
| 6. needed = need/ / | 16. turned = turn/ / |
| 7. killed = kill/ / | 17. thanked = thank/ / |
| 8. finished = finish/ / | 18. wanted = want/ / |
| 9. seemed = seem/ / | 19. robbed = rob/ / |
| 10. repeated = repeat/ / | 20. pushed = push/ |

◇练习 10 -ed 结尾的发音和拼写(表 2-4 和 2-5)

给动词加-ed, 必要时添加或改变字母使拼写正确, 然后选出-ed 结尾的正确发音。

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. walk ed _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ | 9. open _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ |
| 2. pat ted _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ | 10. hurry _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ |
| 3. worry ed _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ | 11. rent _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ |
| 4. stay _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ | 12. try _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ |
| 5. visit _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ | 13. enjoy _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ |
| 6. die _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ | 14. stop _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ |
| 7. trade _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ | 15. need _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ |
| 8. plan _____ /t/ /d/ /əd/ | |

³ 单词 “passed” 和 “past” 发音相同。

◇练习 11 规则动词: -ed 结尾的发音(表 2-4)

大声朗读下列句子, 练习-ed 结尾的发音。

1. I watched TV. Jean listened to the radio. Nick waited for the mail.
watch/t/ listen/d/ wait/əd/
2. I tasted the soup. It seemed too salty.
taste/əd/ seem/d/
3. James planned for his future. He saved money and started his own business.
plan/d/ save/d/ start/əd/
4. I asked a question. Joe answered it. Then he repeated the answer for Ted.
ask/t/ answer/d/ repeat/əd/
5. I stared at the sculpture for a long time. Finally, I touched it.
stare/d/ touch/t/
6. Mary prepared a long report for her boss. She completed it late last night.
prepare/d/ complete/əd/
7. After Dick parked the car, I jumped out and opened the door for my mother.
park/t/ jump/d/ open/d/
8. After I finished reading Rod's poem, I called him and we talked for an hour.
finish/t/ call/d/ talk/t/
9. Earlier today, I cleaned my apartment.
clean/d/
10. I washed the windows, waxed the wood floor, and vacuumed the carpet.
wash/t/ wax/t/ vacuum/d/
11. I crossed my fingers and hoped for good news.
cross/t/ hope/d/

◇练习 12 -ING 和-ED 形式的拼写(表 2-5)

完成下表, 必要时可以参考《朗文中级英语语法》P. 29 表 2-5。

动词词尾	是否双写 辅音字母	原形 -ING -ED
-e	No	excite exciting excited
两个辅音字母		exist
两个元音字母+ 一个辅音字母		shout
一个元音字母+ 一个辅音字母		单音节动词 pat
		双音节动词 (重音在第一个音节上) visit
		双音节动词 (重音在第二个音节上) admit
-y		Pray Pry
-ie		tie

◇练习 13 -ING 形式的拼写(表 2-5)

给动词加-ing, 并将其填入正确的栏中。

- | | | | | |
|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. hit | 4. take | 7. learn | 10. smile | 13. begin |
| 2. come | 5. hop | 8. listen | 11. stay | 14. win |
| 3. cut | 6. hope | 9. rain | 12. study | 15. write |

双写辅音字母 (stop→stopping)	去掉-e (live→living)	直接加-ing (visit→visiting)
hitting		

◇练习 14 -ING 和-ED 形式的拼写(表 2-5)

给动词加-ing 和-ed(括号中是不规则动词的过去式和过去分词)。

- | | -ING | -ED |
|------------|----------|-----------|
| 1. ride | riding | (ridden) |
| 2. start | starting | (started) |
| 3. come | | (came) |
| 4. happen | | |
| 5. try | | |
| 6. buy | | (bought) |
| 7. hope | | |
| 8. keep | | (kept) |
| 9. tip | | |
| 10. fail | | |
| 11. fill | | |
| 12. feel | | (felt) |
| 13. dine | | |
| 14. mean | | (meant) |
| 15. win | | (won) |
| 16. learn | | |
| 17. listen | | |
| 18. begin | | (began) |

◇练习 15 -ING 形式的拼写(表 2-5)

在空格处填入一个或两个 t, 使动词的-ing 形式拼写正确。然后写出句中动词的一般式。

- | | |
|--|---------|
| 1. I'm wai t ing for a phone call. | 1. wait |
| 2. I'm pe t t ing my dog. | 2. pet |
| 3. I'm bi ing my nails because I'm nervous. | 3. |
| 4. I'm si ing in a comfortable chair. | 4. |
| 5. I'm wri ing in my book. | 5. |
| 6. I'm figh the urge to have some ice cream. | 6. |
| 7. I'm wai ing to see if I'm really hungry. | 7. |
| 8. I'm ge ing up from my chair now. | 8. |
| 9. I'm star ing to walk to the refrigerator. | 9. |

10. I'm permi _____ ing myself to have some ice cream.
11. I'm lif _____ ing the spoon to my mouth.
12. I'm ea _____ ing the ice cream now.
13. I'm tas _____ ing it. It tastes good.
14. I'm also cu _____ ing a piece of cake.
15. I'm mee _____ ing my sister at the airport tomorrow.
16. She's visi _____ ing me for a few days. I'll save some cream now.

10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____



◇练习 16 不规则动词的拼写(表 2-7)

写出下列动词的过去时形式。

I.

buy	b o u g h t	
bring	br _____	t
teach	t _____	t
catch	c _____	t
fight	f _____	t
think	th _____	t
find	f _____	d

II.

swim	sw _____
drink	dr _____
sing	s _____
ring	r _____

III.

blow	bl _____
draw	dr _____

fly	fl _____
grow	gr _____
know	kn _____
throw	thr _____

IV.

break	br _____
write	wr _____
freeze	fr _____
ride	r _____
sell	s _____
steal	st _____

V.

hit	h _____
hurt	h _____
read	r _____
shut	sh _____
cost	c _____
put	p _____
quit	q _____

VI.

pay	p _____ d
say	s _____ d

◇练习 17 不规则动词(表 2-7)

用下表中所给不规则动词的一般过去时形式完成下列句子，答案可能不止一个。

begin	drive	hurt	ring	think
build	eat	keep	rise	write
come	fall	lead	shut	
do	freeze	pay	steal	
drink	have	run	take	

- Sue drank/had a cup of coffee before class this morning.
- We ate a delicious dinner at a Mexican restaurant last night.
- When it started to rain yesterday afternoon, I all of the windows in the apartment.
- The phone rang eight times before anybody answered it.
- My brother and his wife came to our apartment for dinner last night.
- The architectural firm that I work for designed that building. My brother's construction company built it. They took two years to complete it.
- When Alan slipped on the icy sidewalk yesterday, he fell down and hurt his back. His back is very painful today.
- Alice called the police yesterday because someone stole her bicycle while she was in the library studying. She's very angry.
- There was a cool breeze last night. I opened the window, but Colette got cold and shut it.
- Ted drove his car across Canada last summer.
- Rita ran faster than anyone else in the footrace.
- None of the other runners was ever in front of Rita during the race. She beat all of the other runners in the race from start to finish.
- Greg is very cheap. I was surprised when he paid for my dinner.
- It was really cold yesterday. The temperature was three below zero.⁴ I nearly froze to death when I walked home!
- Jason glued an excellent job in gluing the broken vase together.
- The sun rose at 6:21 this morning.
- I thought about going to Florida for my vacation, but I finally decided to go to Puerto Rico.
- My friend passed a note and passed it to me in class.
- My mother threw all the letters I wrote to her while I was in England. She didn't throw any away.
- An earthquake destroyed the old bridge, so the town built a new one across the river.

◇练习 18 不规则动词(表 2-7)

用所给不规则动词的一般过去时形式完成下列句子，答案可能不止一个。

break	draw	give	quit	steal
buy	fall	grow	read	teach
choose	feel	hear	shake	
cut	find	lose	sleep	
dig	forget	meet	speak	

- A: Why isn't Bill here for the meeting? He's supposed to give the weekly report.
B: I spoke to him on the phone last night, and he said he'd be here.

⁴注意: -3° F 等于 -20°C。

2. After I gave a large bone to each of my three dogs, they went to separate corners of the backyard and _____ holes to bury their bones.

3. After looking at all the chairs, I finally _____ the red one. It was a difficult decision.

4. The players are depressed because they _____ the game last weekend.

Next time they'll play better.

5. A: How can you take a three-month vacation? What about your job?

B: I won't be going back to that job ever again. I _____ yesterday.

6. Laurie has circles under her eyes because she _____ only two hours last night. She was studying for her final exams.

7. Matt lost his watch. He looked everywhere for it. Finally, he _____ it in his pants that were in the washing machine. He had washed his watch, but it was still ticking.

8. Joy was barefoot. She stepped on a piece of broken glass and _____ her foot.

9. Danny and I are old friends. We _____ each other in 1985.

10. My father _____ me how to make furniture.

11. The student with the highest grade point average _____ a speech at the graduation ceremony. She _____ about her hopes for the future of the world.

12. I didn't have a garden, so I _____ tomatoes in a pot on the balcony outside my apartment.

13. Paul was in a hurry to get to class this morning.

He _____ to comb his hair.

14. Last week I _____ an interesting book about the volcanoes in Iceland.

15. When Erica and I were introduced to each other, we _____ hands.

16. Mike is in jail because he _____ a car.

17. When I heard about Sue's problem, I _____ sorry for her.

18. The students all _____ pictures of their teacher, but few of the drawings looked like her. She tried not to laugh at the pictures.

19. A few minutes ago, I _____ on the radio about a bad plane accident.

20. Joe had an accident. He _____ off the roof and _____ his leg.



◇练习 19 复习：过去时的疑问句和否定句(表 2-1→2-3)

将句中黑体部分的主语和谓语改写成疑问句和否定句，省略其他句子成分。

	疑问句	否定句
1. I rode a bus.	Did I ride	I didn't ride
2. She sat down.		
3. We were on time.		
4. They tried hard.		
5. He was late.		
6. They cut some paper.		
7. She threw a ball.		
8. We did our work.		

◇练习 20 一般现在时与一般过去时：疑问句(第一章，表 2-1→2-5 和第五章预习)

用一般过去时或一般现在时写出疑问句。

SITUATION: Your cousin, Susan, has a new friend. She was with her new friend last night.

You have several questions.

- what/you do last night? A: what did you do last night?
- I went to a concert with my new friend.
- what/your friend's name? A: what is your friend's name?
- Robert.
- he/nice? A: _____
- B: Yes, he's very nice.
- how/your evening? A: _____
- Fine.
- where/you/go? A: _____
- To a concert.
- you/enjoy it? A: _____
- Very much.
- the music/loud? A: _____
- B: Yes, very loud! I loved it.
- what time/you/get home? A: _____
- Around midnight.
- what/you/wear? A: _____
- Nothing special. Just some jeans and a sweater.
- what/he/like? A: _____
- (his personality) B: He's funny and friendly. He's really nice.
- what/he/look like? A: _____
- B: He has dark hair and is medium height.
- you/want to go out with him again? A: _____
- B: Yes. I like him a lot.

◇练习 21 复习：一般现在时，现在进行时和一般过去时的形式(第一章和表 2-1→2-7)

用动词的正确形式完成下表。

EVERY DAY	Now	YESTERDAY
1. He is here every day.	He <u>is</u> here now.	He <u>was</u> here yesterday.
2. I <u>think</u> about you every day.	I, m thinking about you now.	I <u>thought</u> about you yesterday.
3. We play tennis every day.	We _____ tennis now.	We _____ tennis yesterday.
4. I _____ juice every day.	I _____ juice now.	I drank juice yesterday.
5. He _____ every day.	He is teaching now.	He _____ yesterday.
6. She _____ every day. _____	She _____ now. _____	She swam yesterday.
7. You sleep late every day.	You _____ now	You _____ late yesterday.
8. He _____ every day.	He is reading now.	He _____ yesterday.
9. They _____ hard every day.	They _____ hard now.	They tried hard yesterday.
10. We eat dinner every day.	We _____ dinner now.	We _____ dinner yesterday.

◇练习 22 一般现在时与一般过去时(第一章和表 2-1→2-7)

用括号中的动词的一般过去时或一般现在时形式完成下列疑问句及其简略回答。

- A: (you, hear) Did you hear the thunder last night?
 B: No, I didn't I (hear, not) didn't hear anything all night. I (be) was asleep.
- A: Listen! (you, hear) Do you hear a siren in the distance?
 B: No, I don't . I (hear, not) don't hear anything at all.
- A: That's a nice bookshelf. (you, build) _____ it?
 B: No, I _____ My uncle (build) _____ it for me.
- A: I have a question. (a fish, be) _____ slippery to hold?
 B: Yes, _____ It can slip right out of your hand.
 A: How about frogs? (they, be) _____ slippery?
 B: Yes, _____ .
 A: What about snakes?
 B: I (know, not) _____ . I've never touched a snake.
- A: I (want) _____ to go to the mall later this afternoon and look for a new bathing suit. (you, want) _____ to go with me?
 B: I can't. I (have) _____ an appointment with my English teacher.

Besides, I (buy) _____ a new bathing suit last year. I (need, not) _____ new one this year.

6. I always (offer) _____ to help my older neighbor carry her groceries into her house every time I see her return from the store. She (be) _____ always very grateful. Yesterday, she (offer) _____ to pay me for helping her, but of course I (accept, not) _____ the offer.

7. Last Monday night, I (take) _____ my sister and her husband to my favorite restaurant for dinner and (find) _____ the doors locked. I (know, not) _____ it then, but the restaurant (be, not) _____ open on Mondays. We (want, not) _____ to eat anywhere else, so we (go) _____ back to my house. I (make) _____ a salad and (heat) _____ some soup. Everyone (seem) _____ satisfied even though I (be, not) _____ a wonderful cook.

8. My daughter is twenty-one years old. She (like) _____ to travel. My wife and I (worry) _____ about her a little when she (be) _____ away from home, but we also (trust) _____ her judgment.

Last year, after she (graduate) _____ from college, she (-go) _____ to Europe with two of her friends. They (travel, not) _____ by train or by car. Instead, they (rent) motor scooters and (ride) _____ slowly through each country they visited.

While she (be) _____ away, my wife and I (worry) about her safety. We (be) _____ very happy when we (see) _____ her smiling face at the airport and (know) _____ that she was finally safe at home.

◇练习 23 过去进行时(表 2-8 和 2-9)

用所给动词的过去进行时形式完成下列句子，每个动词只能用一次。

✓Aide look read sing sit talk watch

1. Jack's wife arranged a surprise birthday party for him. When Jack arrived home, several people were hiding behind the couch or behind doors. All of the lights were out, and when Jack turned them on, everyone shouted "Surprise!"

2. The birds began to sing when the sun rose at 6:30. Dan woke up at 6:45. When Dan woke up, the birds _____.

3. I _____ a video last night when my best friend called.

4. While we _____ on the phone, the power went out.

5. The bus driver looked at all the passengers on her bus and noticed how quiet they were. Some people _____ newspapers or books. Most of the people _____ quietly in their seats and _____ out the windows of the bus.

◇练习 24 过去进行时(表 2-8 和 2-9)

完成下列句子。一个分句用一般过去时，另一个分句用过去进行时。

正在进行的动作	NADIA	GEORGE	BILL
play soccer	break her glasses	score a goal	hurt his foot
hike	find some money	see a bear	pick up a snake

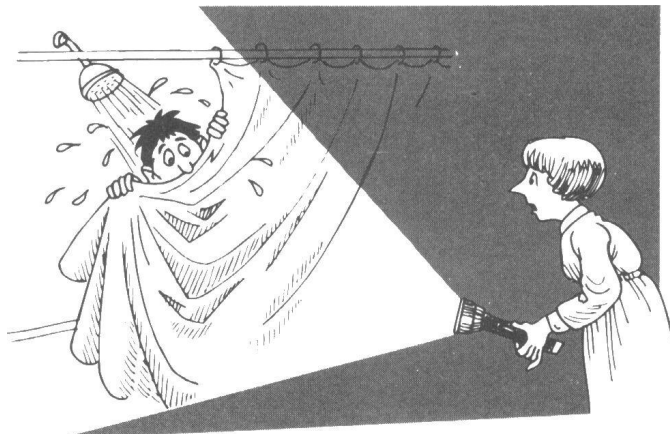
dance	trip and fall	meet his future wife	get dizzy
-------	---------------	----------------------	-----------

1. While Nadia was playing soccer, she broke her glasses.
2. George scored a goal while he was playing soccer.
3. Bill missed his foot while he was playing soccer.
4. While Nadia was saving, she lost some money.
5. George was fighting a bear while he was hunting.
6. Bill was bitten a snake while he was walking.
7. Nadia was talking and was laughing while she was dancing.
8. While George was playing, he met his future wife.
9. While Bill was walking, he became dizzy.

◇练习 25 过去进行时与一般过去时的比较(表 2-8 和 2-9)

用括号中的动词的一般过去时或过去进行时形式完成下列句子。

1. It (begin) began to rain while Amanda and I (walk) were walking to school this morning.
2. While I (wash) was washing dishes last night, I (drop) dropped a plate and (break) broke it.
3. I (see) saw Ted at the student cafeteria at lunchtime yesterday. He (eat) ate a sandwich and (talk) talked with some friends. I (join) joined them.
4. While I (walk) was walking under an apple tree a few days ago, an apple (fall) fell and (hit) hit me on the head.
5. Robert didn't answer the phone when Sara called. He (sing) was singing his favorite song in the shower and (hear, not) didn't hear the phone ring.
6. A: I saw a whale!
B: Really? Great! When?
A: This morning. I (walk) was walking on the beach when I (hear) heard a sudden "whoosh!" It (be) was the spout of a huge gray whale.
7. A: There was a power outage in our part of town last night. (your lights, go out) were out too?
B: Yes, they did. It (be) was terrible! I (take) took a shower when the lights went out. My wife (find) found a flashlight and rescued me from the bathroom. We couldn't cook dinner, so we (eat) ate sandwiches instead. I (try) tried to read some reports by candlelight, but I couldn't see well enough, so I (go) went to bed and (sleep) fell asleep.
How about you?



8. Yesterday Tom and Janice (go) _____ to the zoo, where they (see) _____ many kinds of animals and (have) _____ a few adventures. While they (walk) _____ by an elephant, it (begin) _____ to squirt water at them, so they run behind a rock and (dry) _____ themselves. Later, while they (pass) the giraffe area, one of the tall, purple-tongued animals (lower) _____ its head toward Tom and (start) _____ to nibble on his green hat. Janice said, "Shoo!"⁵ At that point, the giraffe (stretch) _____ its head toward Janice and (try) _____ to eat her ice cream cone. Janice (let, not) _____ the giraffe have the ice cream because she (stand) _____ right in front of a sign that said, "DO NOT FEED THE ANIMALS." She (point) _____ at the sign and (say) _____ to the giraffe, "Can't you read?"

◇练习 26 表示过去：使用时间从句(表 2-10)

用括号中的时间表达连接两个句子，并用下划线划出时间从句。

1. I gave Alan his allowance. He finished his chores. (after)
→ I gave Alan his allowance after he finished his chores. OR
→ After Alan finished his chores, I gave him his allowance.
2. The doorbell rang. I was climbing the stairs. (while)
3. The firefighters checked the ashes one last time. They went home. (before)
4. The Novaks stopped by our table at the restaurant. They showed us their new baby. (when)
5. We started to dance. The music began. (as soon as)
6. We stayed in our seats. The game ended. (until)
7. My father was listening to a baseball game on the radio. He was watching a basketball game on television. (while)

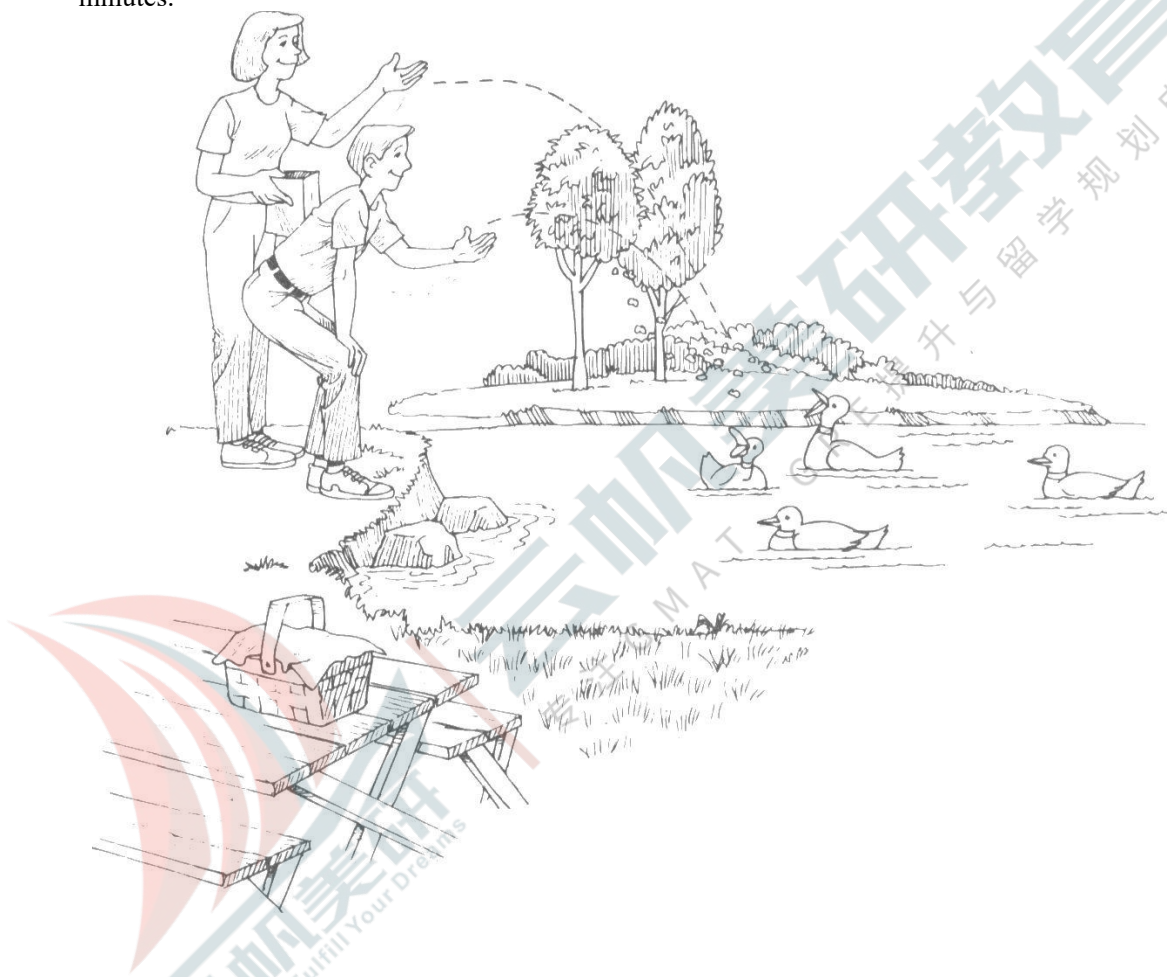
◇练习 27 过去时动词(表 2-1→2-10)

用括号中所给动词的正确形式完成下列句子。

Last Friday was a holiday. It (be) _____ Independence Day, so I didn't
_____ 1
have to go to classes. I (sleep) _____ a little later than usual. Around ten, my
_____ 2
friend Larry (come) _____ over to my apartment. We (pack) _____
_____ 3 _____ 4
a picnic basket and then (take) _____ the bus to Forest Park. We (spend)
_____ 5
_____ most of the day there.
_____ 6
When we (get) _____ to the park, we (find) _____ an empty
_____ 7 _____ 8
picnic table near a pond. There were some ducks on the pond, so we (feed) _____
_____ 9
them. We (throw) _____ small pieces of bread on the water, and the ducks
_____ 10
(swim) _____ over to get them. One duck was very clever. It (catch)
_____ 11
_____ the bread in midair before it (hit) _____ the water.

⁵Janice 说 "Shoo!" 是为了赶走长颈鹿。

12
 Another duck was a thief. It (steal) _____ 13 bread from the beaks of other ducks.
 While we (feed) _____ 14 the ducks, Larry and I (meet) _____
 15
 a man who usually (come) _____ 16 to the park every day to feed the ducks. We
 17
 (sit) _____ on a park bench and (speak) _____ to him for fifteen
 18
 or twenty minutes. _____ 19
 _____ on a park bench and (speak) _____ to him for fifteen or twenty
 18
 minutes. _____ 19



After we (eat) _____ our lunch, I
 20
 (take) _____ a short nap under a tree.
 21
 While I (sleep) _____ , a
 22
 mosquito (bite) _____ my arm. When I
 23
 (wake) _____ up, my arm itched, so I
 24
 scratched it. Suddenly I (hear) _____ a
 25

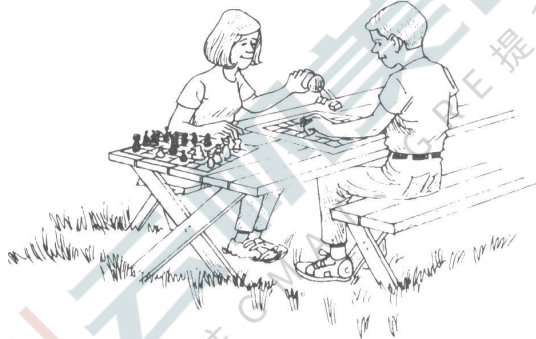


noise in the tree above me. I (look) _____

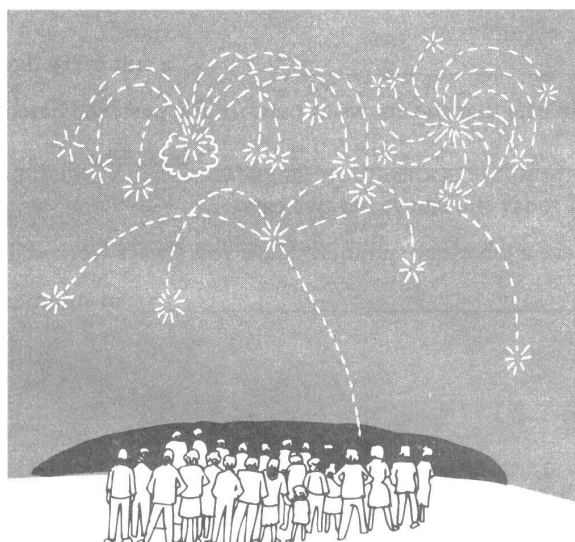
up and (see) _____ an orange and gray
bird. After a few moments, it (fly) _____

away.

During the afternoon, we (do) _____ many things. First we (take)
_____ a long walk. When we (get) _____ back to our picnic table,
I (read) _____ a book, and Larry, who (be) _____ an artist,
(draw) _____ pictures. Later we (play) _____ a game of chess.
Larry (win) _____ the first game, but I (win) _____ the second
one. Then he (teach) _____ me how to play a new game, one with dice. While
we (play) _____, one of the dice (fall) _____ from the
picnic table onto the ground. We finally (find) _____ it in some tall grass.



In the evening, we (join) _____ a huge crowd to watch the fireworks display.
The fireworks (be) _____ beautiful. Some of the explosions (be) _____
very loud, however. They (hurt) _____ my ears. When the display (be)
_____ over, we (leave) _____. All in all, it (be) _____
a very enjoyable day.



◇练习 28 表示过去习惯：USED TO(表 2-11)

用 used to 和所给信息完成下列句子。

1. When James was young, he hated school. Now he likes school.
→ James used to hate school.
2. Ann was a secretary for many years, but now she owns her own business.
→ Ann used to be a secretary, but now she owns her own business.
3. Rebecca had a pet rat when she was ten. The rat died, and she hasn't had another rat as a pet since that time.
→ Rebecca used to have a pet rat as a pet.
4. Before Adam got married, he went bowling five times a week.
→ Adam used to go bowling five times a week.
5. When we raised our own chickens, we had fresh eggs every morning.
→ We used to have fresh eggs every morning when we raised our own chickens.
6. When Ben was a child, he often crawled under his bed and put his hands over his ears when he heard thunder.
→ Ben used to crawl under his bed and put his hands over his ears when he heard thunder.
7. When I lived in my home town, I went to the beach every weekend. Now I don't go to the beach every weekend.
→ I used to go to the beach every weekend, but now I don't.
8. Adam has a new job. He has to wear a suit every day. When he was a student, he always wore jeans.
→ Adam used to wear jeans a suit every day, but now he does.
9. Sara has two cats that she enjoys as pets. In the past, she hated cats. These are her first pets.
→ Sara used to hate cats. She pets, but today she enjoys her two cats.
10. Now you have a job every summer. Have you always worked during summers?
→ What did you do in summer?

◇练习 29 错误分析(第二章)

改错。

- didn't stay
1 They ~~don't stayed~~ the park very long last Saturday.
2. They are walked to school yesterday.
3. I was understand all the teacher's questions yesterday.
4. We didn't knew what to do when the fire alarm ringed yesterday.
5. I was really enjoyed the baseball game last week.
6. Mr. Rice didn't died in the accident.
7. I use to live with my parents, but now I have my own apartment.
8. My friends were went on vacation together last month.
9. I didn't afraid of anything when I am a child.
10. The teacher was changed his mind yesterday.
11. Sally love Jim, but he didn't loved her.
12. Carmen no used to eat fish, but now she does.

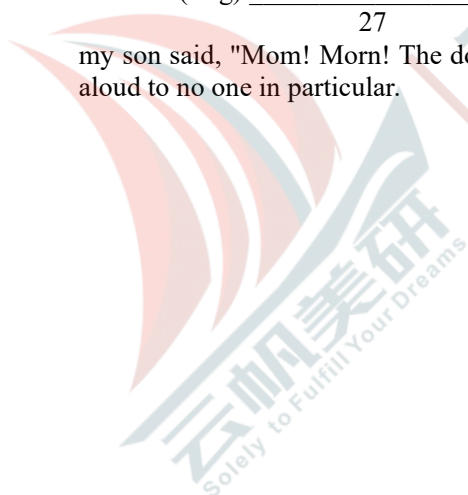
◇练习 30 过去时动词(第二章)

用括号中所给动词的一般过去时或过去进行时形式完成下列句子。

Late yesterday afternoon while I (prepare) . was preparing ¹ dinner, the doorbell
(ring) ² . I (put) ³ everything down and (rush).
 ⁴ to answer it. I (open) ⁵ the door and (find)
 ⁶ a delivery man standing in my doorway. He (hold)
 ⁷ an express mail package and (need) ⁸ me to sign
for it. While I (deal) ⁹ with the delivery man, the phone (ring)
 ¹⁰ I (excuse) ¹¹ myself and (reach) ¹²
for the phone. While I (try) ¹³ to talk on the phone and sign for the
package at the same time, my young son (run) ¹⁴ up to me to tell me about
the cat. The cat (try) ¹⁵ to catch a big fish in my husband's prized
aquarium. The fish (swim) ¹⁶ frantically to avoid the cat's paw.



I (say) _____ an abrupt goodbye to the telemarketer on the phone and
 _____ 17
 (hang) _____ up. I (thank) _____ the delivery man and (shut)
 _____ 18 _____ 19
 _____ the door. I (yell) _____ at the cat and (shoo)
 _____ 20 _____ 21
 _____ her away from the fish. Then I (sit) _____ down in an easy
 _____ 22 _____ 23
 chair and (stay) _____ there until I (begin) _____ to feel calm
 _____ 24 _____ 25
 again. But as soon as I (feel) _____ like everything was under control, the
 _____ 26
 doorbell (ring) _____ again. Then the phone (ring) _____. Then
 _____ 27 _____ 28
 my son said, "Mom! Morn! The dog is in the refrigerator!" I couldn't move. "What's next?" I said
 aloud to no one in particular.



第三章 将来时

◇练习 1 现在，过去和将来(第一、二、三章)

用所给动词的一般现在时、一般过去时和 be going to/will 完成下列句子。

1. arrive a. Joe _____ on time every day.
b. Joe _____ arrived _____ on time yesterday.
c. Joe _____ is going to arrive _____ on time tomorrow. OR
Joe _____ will arrive _____ on time tomorrow.
2. eat a. Ann _____ breakfast every day.
b. Ann _____ breakfast yesterday.
c. Ann _____ breakfast tomorrow, OR
Ann _____ breakfast tomorrow.
3. arrive, not a. Mike _____ on time every day.
b. Mike _____ on time yesterday.
c. Mike _____ isn't going to arrive _____ on time tomorrow. OR
Mike _____ on time tomorrow.
4. eat? a. _____ you _____ breakfast every day?
b. _____ you _____ breakfast yesterday?
c. _____ you _____ breakfast tomorrow? OR
_____ you _____ breakfast tomorrow?
5. eat, not a. I _____ breakfast every day.
b. I _____ breakfast yesterday.
c. I _____ breakfast tomorrow. OR
I _____ breakfast tomorrow

◆练习2 WILL 和 BE GOING TO (表 3-1→3-3)

用所给动词的正确形式完成下表。

Be going to	will
I <u>am going to</u> leave.	I <u>will</u> leave.
You _____ leave.	You _____ leave.
Mr. Rose _____ leave.	He _____ leave.
We _____ leave.	We _____ leave.
Our parents _____ leave.	They _____ leave.
The boys(not) _____ leave.	They(not) _____ leave.
Ann(not) _____ leave.	She(not) _____ leave.
I(not) _____ leave.	I(not) _____ leave.

◇练习3 BE GOING TO(表3-2)

用代词+be going to 的正确形式完成下列句子。

1. I ate lunch with Alan today, and I'm going to eat lunch with him tomorrow too.
2. Jason wasn't in class today, and he isn't going to be in class tomorrow either.
3. The students took a quiz yesterday, and another quiz today.

4. Margaret walked to school this morning, and _____
to school tomorrow morning too.
5. It isn't raining today, and according to the weather report,
_____ tomorrow either.
6. We're in class today, and _____ in class tomorrow
too.
7. You didn't hitchhike to school today, and _____ to
school tomorrow either.
8. I didn't get married last year, and _____ married this
year either.
9. Peter didn't wear a clean shirt today, and _____ a
clean one tomorrow either.

◇练习 4 WILL(表 3-3)

阅读下列文章，用 will 改写带 be going to 的动词。

The Smiths will celebrate their 50th wedding anniversary on December 1 of this year. Their children are planning a party for them at a local hotel. Their family and friends are going to join them for the celebration.

Mr. and Mrs. Smith have three children and five grandchildren. The Smiths know that two of their children are going to be at the party, but the third child, their youngest daughter, is far away in Africa, where she is doing medical research. They believe she is not going to come home for the party.

The Smiths don't know it, but their youngest daughter is going to be at the party. She is planning to surprise them. It is going to be a wonderful surprise for them! They are going to be very happy to see her. The whole family is going to enjoy being together for this special occasion.

◇练习 5 带 WILL 和 BE GOING / O 的疑问句(表 3-1→ 3-3)

用所给信息及 will 和 be going to 完成下列句子。

1. Nick is thinking about starting an Internet company. His friends are wondering:

will Nick start _____ an Internet company?

Is Nick going to start _____ an Internet company?

2. The teacher, Mr. Jones, is thinking about giving a test. His students are wondering:

_____ a test?

_____ a test?

3. Jacob is thinking about quitting his job. His co-workers are wondering:

_____ his job?

_____ his job?

4. Mr. and Mrs. Kono are thinking about adopting a child. Their friends are wondering:

_____ a child?

_____ a child?

5. The Johnsons are thinking about moving. Their friends are wondering:

_____ ?

6. Dr. Johnson is thinking about retiring. Her patients are wondering:

_____ ?

◇练习6 WILL(表 3-3)

用 will 完成下列对话。

1. A: (you, help) _____ Will you help _____ me tomorrow?
B: Yes, _____ I will⁶ _____ OR No, _____ I won't _____.
2. A: (Paul, lend) _____ us some money?
B: Yes, _____. OR No, _____.
3. A: (Jane, graduate) _____ this spring?
B: Yes, _____. OR No, _____.
4. A: (her parents, be) _____ at the ceremony?
B: Yes, _____. OR No, _____.
5. A: (I, benefit) _____ from this business deal?
B: Yes, _____. OR No, _____.

◇练习7 WILL PROBABLY(表 3-4)

用 will/won't 及 probably 完成下列句子。

1. The clouds are leaving, and the sun is coming out. It _____ probably won't _____ rain anymore.
2. The weather is cold today. There's no reason to expect the weather to change. It _____ will probably _____ be cold tomorrow too.
3. Sam, Sharon, and Carl worked hard on this project. They _____ turn in the best work. The other students didn't work as hard.
4. Ronald is having a very difficult time in advanced algebra. He didn't understand anything that happened in class today, and he _____ understand tomorrow's class either.
5. Jan skipped lunch today. She _____ eat as soon as she gets home.
6. I don't like parties. Mike really wants me to come to his birthday party, but I _____ go. I'd rather stay home.
7. Conditions in the factory have been very bad for a long time. All of the people who work on the assembly line are angry. They _____ vote to go out on strike.
8. We are using up the earth's resources at a rapid rate. We _____ continue to do so⁷ for years to come.

◇练习8 WILL PROBABLY(表 3-4)

完成下列句子。

1. 用代词+will/won't 及 probably 完成下列句子。

1. I went to the library last night, and _____ I'll probably go _____ there tonight too.
2. Ann didn't come to class today, and _____ she probably won't come _____ tomorrow either.
3. Greg went to bed early last night, and _____ to bed early tonight too.
4. Jack didn't hand his homework in today, and _____ it in tomorrow

⁶在简略回答中代词不与助动词缩写。

正: Yes, I will. 误: Yes, I'll.

⁷do so 意为“do that thing I just talked about”。在本句中, do so=use up the earth's resources at a rapid rate。

either.

5. The students had a quiz today, and _____ one tomorrow too.

II. 用代词+be going to/not be going to. probably 完成下列句子。

6. I watched TV last night, and _____ I'm probably going to watch _____ TV tonight too.

7. I wasn't at home last night, and _____ at home tonight either.

8. It's hot today, and _____ hot tomorrow too.

9. My friends didn't come over last night, and _____ over tonight either.

10. Alice didn't ride her bike to school today, and _____ it to school tomorrow either.

◇练习 9 将来的确定性(表 3-4)

判断说话人的确定程度是 100%、90% 还是 50%。

1. _____ 90% You'll probably hear from our office tomorrow.

2. _____ Gino may not finish his assignment on time.

3. _____ My roommate will transfer to another university next year.

4. _____ My roommate is probably going to change her major.

5. _____ Julia may join a health club next month.

6. _____ I will probably join a health club too.

7. _____ Karen and Lee are not going to continue dating each other.

8. _____ Maybe they will remain friends.

◇练习 10 将来的确定性(表 3-4)

用括号中的词语回答下列问题, 注意词的顺序。

1. A: Are Joel and Rita going to have a simple wedding? (probably)

B: Yes. Joel and Rita _____ are probably going to have _____ a simple wedding.

2. A: Are they going to invite a lot of people? (probably not)

B: No. They _____ a lot of people.

3. A: Will they get married in Rita's garden? Or will they get married at a place of worship? (may, maybe)

B: They're not sure. They _____ in Rita's garden.
_____ they _____ at a place of worship.

4. A: Is Rita going to rent her wedding dress? (may)

B: She's trying to save money, so she's thinking about it. She _____
her wedding dress.

5. A: Will she decide that she wants a wedding dress of her very own? (probably)

B: She _____ that she wants a wedding dress of her very own.

6. A: Will Joel feel very relaxed on his wedding day? Will he be nervous? (may not, may)

B: Joel _____ very relaxed on his wedding day. He
_____ a little nervous.

7. A: Are they going to go on a honeymoon? (will)

B: Yes. They _____ on a honeymoon immediately after the wedding,
but they haven't told anyone where they are going to go.

8. A: Will they go far away for their honeymoon? (probably not)

B: They _____ far. They have only a few days before they need to
be back at work.

◇练习 11 WILL(表 3-5)

用 will 和下表中的动词完成对话，每个动词只能用一次。

√ answer	hold	move	take
get	leave	read	turn off

- At the office: A: The phone's ringing.
B: I 'll answer it.
- At home: A: The baby won't stop crying.
B: I _____ her.
- At the doctor's office: A: I feel hot.
B: I _____ your temperature.
- At work: A: These boxes are in the way.
B: I _____ them.
- At home: A: The oven's still on.
B: I _____ it
- At a restaurant: A: You paid the bill. I _____ the tip.
B: Thanks!
- At home: A: The mail's here.
B: I _____ it.
- At a fast-food restaurant: A: I don't have my glasses. I can't read the menu board.
B: I _____ it to you.

◇练习 12 BE GOING TO 与 WILL 的比较(表 3-5)

用 be going to⁸或 will 完成下列句子。

- (Speaker B is planning to listen to the news at six.)
A: Why did you turn on the radio?
B: I 'm going to _____ listen to the news at six.
- (Speaker B didn't have a plan to show the other person how to solve the math problem, but she is happy to do it.)
A: I can't figure out this math problem. Do you know how to do it?
B: Yes. Give me your pencil. I 'll _____ show you how to solve it.
- (Speaker B has made a plan. He is planning to lie down because he doesn't feel well.)
A: What's the matter?
B: I don't feel well. I _____ lie down for a little while. If anyone calls, tell them I'll call back later.
A: Okay. I hope you feel better.
- (Speaker B did not plan to take the other person home. He volunteers to do so only after the other person talks about missing his bus.)
A: Oh no! I wasn't watching the time. I missed my bus.
B: That's okay. I _____ give you a ride home.
A: Hey, thanks!
- (Speaker B already has a plan.)
A: Why did you borrow money from the bank?
B: I _____ buy a new pickup.⁹ I've already picked it out.
- (Speaker B does not have a plan.)
A: Mom, can I have a candy bar?
B: No, but I _____ buy an apple for you. How does that sound?

⁸ be going to 和 will 通常可以互换，无论使用哪个，意思几乎没有改变。然而有时它们不能互换。在这个练习中，只能填入其中一个。

⁹ pickup 是一种小型货车。

A: Okay, I guess.

7. (Speaker B has already made her plans about what to wear. Then Speaker B volunteers to help.)

A: I can't figure out what to wear to the dance tonight. It's informal, isn't it?

B: Yes. I _____ wear a pair of nice jeans.

A: Maybe I should wear my jeans, too. But I think they're dirty.

B: I _____ wash them for you. I'm planning to do a load of laundry in a few minutes.

A: Gee, thanks. That'll help me out a lot.

◇练习 13 BE GOING TO 与 WILL 的比较(表 3-5)

用 be going to 或 will 完成下列句子。

1. A: Can I borrow this book?

B: Sure. But I need it back soon.

A: I 'll _____ return it to you tomorrow. Okay?

2. A: I 'm going to _____ wear a dark suit to the wedding reception. How about you?

B: I'm not sure.

3. A: What are you doing with that picture?

B: It doesn't look good in this room. I _____ hang it in our bedroom.

4. A: Can you meet me for dinner after work?

B: I'd like to, but I can't. I _____ work late tonight.

5. A: It's grandfather's eighty-fifth birthday next Sunday. What you _____ give him for his birthday?

B: I _____ give him a walking stick that I made myself.

6. A: Gee, I'd really like an ice cream cone, but I didn't bring any money with me.

B: That's okay. I _____ buy one for you.

A: Thanks!



7. A: Why are you looking for a screwdriver?

B: One of the kitchen chairs has a loose screw. I _____ fix it.

8. A: The computer printer isn't working again! What am I going to do?

B: Calm down. Give Tom a call. He _____ fix it for you. He just fixed my printer.

9. A: Why is Nadia going to leave work early today?
 B: She _____ pick up her husband at the airport.
 10. A: Achoo! Your cat is making me sneeze.
 B: I _____ put her outside.
 A: Thanks.
 11. A: Do you have any plans for Saturday?
 B: I _____ help some friends move to their new home.
 12. A: Your pants have ink on them.
 B: They do? I don't have another pair.
 A: Don't worry. I have some spot remover. I _____ get it for you.



◇练习 14 过去和将来时间从句(表 2-10 和 3-6)

用下划线划出时间从句。

1. After I did my homework last night, I went to bed.
2. I'm going to go to bed after I do my homework tonight.
3. Before Bob left for work this morning, he locked the door.
4. Before Bob leaves for work this morning, he's going to lock the door.
5. I'll call you after I get home this evening.
6. I called my friend after I got home last night.
7. Class will begin as soon as the teacher arrives.
8. As soon as the teacher arrived, class began.
9. When the rain stops, we'll go for a walk.
10. We went for a walk when the rain stopped.

◇练习 15 将来时间从句(表 3-6)

用括号中的词将所给的两个句子合并成一个时间从句。

1. First: I'm going to finish my homework.
 Then: I'm going to go to bed.
 (after) After I finish my homework, I'm going to go to bed.
2. First: I'll finish my homework.
 Then: I'm going to go to bed.
 (until) I'm not going to go to bed until I finish my homework.
3. First: Ann will finish her homework.
 Then: She will watch TV tonight.¹⁰

¹⁰名词通常位于代词的前面。

After Ann eats dinner, she is going to study.
 Ann is going to study after she eats dinner.

(before) _____ TV tonight, _____ her homework.

4. First: Jim will get home tonight.
Then: He's going to read the newspaper.

(after) _____ the newspaper _____ home tonight.

5. First: I'll call John tomorrow.
Then: I'll ask him to my party.

(when) _____ John tomorrow, _____ him to my party.

6. First: Mrs. Fox will stay in her office tonight.
Then: She will finish her report.
(until) _____ in her office tonight _____ her report.

7. First: I will get home tonight.
Then: I'm going to take a hot bath.
(as soon as) _____ home tonight, _____ a hot bath.

8. First: I'm going to be in Bangkok.
Then: I'm going to go to a Thai-style boxing match.
(while) _____ in Bangkok, _____ to a Thai-style boxing match.

◇练习 16 IF 从句(表 3-6)

用 if 从句及所给信息完成下列句子，必要时加逗号。¹¹

- Maybe it will rain tomorrow.
If it rains tomorrow, _____ I'm going to go to a movie.
- Maybe it will be hot tomorrow. _____ I'm going to go swimming.
- Maybe Adam will have enough time.
Adam will finish his essay tonight _____.
- Maybe I won't get a check tomorrow. _____ I'll e-mail my parents.
- Perhaps the weather will be nice tomorrow.
We're going to go on a hike _____.
- Maybe Gina won't study for her test. _____ she'll get a bad grade.
- Maybe I will have enough money.
I'm going to go to Hawaii for my vacation _____.
- Maybe I won't study tonight. _____ I probably won't pass the chemistry exam.

◇练习 17 时间从句和 IF 从句(表 3-6)

用斜体词将两个句子合并成一个状语从句。在新句子中省略括号中的词，然后用下划线划出状语从句。

- when a. I'll see you Sunday afternoon.
b. I'll give you my answer (then).¹²

¹¹注意所给例子中的标点符号。当 if 从句出现在主句前面时，用逗号。反之则不用。

¹²合并句子时省略括号中的词。

→ When I see you sunday afternoon, i'll give you my answer. OR
I'll give you my answer when I see you sunday afternoon.

2. before a. I'm going to clean up my apartment (first).
- b. My friends are going to come over (later).
3. when a. The storm will be over (in an hour or two).
- b. I'm going to do some errands (then).
4. if a. (Maybe) you won't learn how to use a computer.
- b. (As a result), you will have trouble finding a job.
5. as soon as a. Joe will meet us at the coffee shop.
- b. He'll finish his report (soon).
6. after a. Sue will wash and dry the dishes.
- b. (Then) she will put them away.
7. if a. They may not leave at seven.
- b. (As a result), they won't get to the theater on time.

◇练习 18 复习：过去和将来(第二、三章)

阅读第 I 部分，用其中的信息及动词的正确时态完成第 II 部分。注意要用 will(而非 be going to)表示将来，用一般现在时表示现在时间。

I.

(1) Yesterday morning was an ordinary morning. I got up at 6:30. I washed my face and brushed my teeth. Then I put on my jeans and a sweater. I went to the kitchen and started the electric coffee maker.

(2) Then I walked down my driveway to get the morning newspaper. While I was walking to get the paper, I saw a deer. It was eating the flowers in my garden. After I watched the deer for a little while, I made some noise to make the deer run away before it destroyed my flowers.

(3) As soon as I got back to the kitchen, I poured myself a cup of coffee and opened the morning paper. While I was reading the paper, my teenage daughter came downstairs. We talked about her plans for the day. I helped her with her breakfast and made a lunch for her to take to school. After we said goodbye, I ate some fruit and cereal and finished reading the paper.

(4) Then I went to my office. My office is in my home. My office has a desk, a computer, a radio, a fax, a copy machine, and a lot of bookshelves. I worked all morning. While I was working, the phone rang many times. I talked to many people. At 11:30, I went to the kitchen and made a sandwich for lunch. As I said, it was an ordinary morning. II.

(1) Tomorrow morning I will be an ordinary morning. I 'll get up at 6:30. I'll wash my face and brush my teeth. Then I probably on my jeans and a sweater. I to the kitchen and the electric coffee maker.

(2) Then I down my driveway to get the morning newspaper. If I a deer in my garden, I it for a while and then some noise to chase it away before it my flowers.

(3) As soon as I back to the kitchen, I myself a cup of coffee and the morning paper. While I'm reading the paper, my teenage daughter downstairs. We about her plans for the day. I her with her breakfast and a lunch for her to take to school. After we goodbye, I some fruit and cereal and reading the paper.

(4) Then I to my office. My office in my home. My office a desk, a computer, a radio, a fax, a copy machine, and a lot of bookshelves. I all morning. While I'm working, the phone many times. I to many people. At 11:30, I to the kitchen and a sandwich for lunch. As I said, it an ordinary morning.

◇练习 19 用 BE GOING TO 和现在进行时表示将来时间

(表 3-7)

用 be going to 和现在进行时改写下列句子。

1. I'm planning to stay home tonight.

I'm going to stay _____ home tonight.

I'm staying _____ home tonight.

2. They're planning to travel across the country by train this summer.

_____ across the country by train this summer

_____ across the country by train this summer.

3. We're planning to get married in June.

_____ married in June.

_____ married in June.

4. He's planning to start graduate school next year.

_____ graduate school next year.

_____ graduate school next year.

5. She's planning to go to New Zealand next month.

_____ to New Zealand next month.

_____ to New Zealand next month.

6. My neighbors are planning to build their dream home this spring.

_____ their dream home this spring.

_____ their dream home this spring.

◇练习 20 用现在进行时表示将来时间(表 3-7)

用下表中动词的现在进行时形式完成下列句子，每个动词只能用一次。注意表示将来时间的斜体词。

arrive	come	meet	see	take
attend	get	plan	speak	✓ travel
call	leave	prepare	study	

1. Kathy is traveling to Caracas next month to attend a conference.

2. A: Your apartment is so neat! Are you expecting guests?

B: Yes. My parents are coming tomorrow for a two-day visit.

3. A: Do you have any plans for lunch today?

B: I am meeting Shannon at the Shamrock Cafe in an hour. Want to join us?

4. A: I am buying a bicycle for my son for his birthday next month. Do you know anything about bikes for kids?

B: Sure. What do you want to know?

5. Amanda likes to take her two children with her on trips whenever she can, but she isn't taking them with her to El Paso, Texas, next week. It's strictly a business trip.

6. A: What are your plans for the rest of the year?

B: I am going to study French in Grenoble, France, this coming summer. Then I'll be back here in school in the fall.

7. A: Why are you packing your suitcase?

B: I am going for Los Angeles in a couple of hours.

8. My regular dentist, Dr. Jordan, is attending a conference in Las Vegas next week, so I am seeing her partner, Dr. Peterson, when I go in for my appointment next Friday.

9. A: Do we have a test in English class tomorrow?

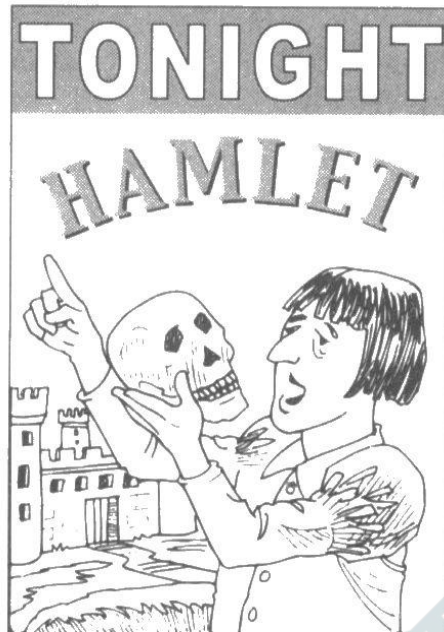
B: No. Don't you remember? We're going to have a guest lecturer.
 A: Really? Who? Are you sure we don't have a test?
 B: A professor from the Department of Environmental Sciences _____ to our class tomorrow morning.
 A: Great! That sounds interesting. And it's a lot better than having a test.
 10. A: My sister and her husband _____ over to my house for dinner tomorrow night. It's my sister's birthday, so I _____ a special birthday dinner for her. I _____ her favorite food: roast beef and mashed potatoes.
 B: That's nice. She'll like that. 1. A: I'm going to call the doctor. You have a fever, chills, and a stomach ache.
 B: No, don't call a doctor. I'll be okay.
 A: I'm worried. I _____ the doctor! And that's it!

◇练习 21 用一般现在时表示将来时间(表 3-8)

从下表中选择合适的动词完成下列句子, 用一般现在时表示将来时间。

arrive	depart	get in	open
begin	end	land	start
close	finish	leave	

1. A: What time _____ does _____ class _____ begin/start _____ tomorrow morning?
 B: It _____ begins/ starts _____ at eight o'clock sharp.
 2. A: The coffee shop _____ at seven o'clock tomorrow morning. I'll meet you there at 7:15.
 B: Okay. I'll be there.
 3. A: What time are you going to go to the airport tonight?
 B: Tom's plane _____ around 7:15, but I think I'll go a little early in case it gets in ahead of schedule.
 4. A: What's the hurry?
 B: I've got to take a shower, change clothes, and get to the theater fast. The play _____ in forty-five minutes, and I don't want to miss the beginning.
 5. A: What time _____ the dry cleaning shop _____ this evening?
 If I don't get there in time, I'll have nothing to wear to the banquet tonight.
 B: It _____ at 6:00. I can pick up your dry cleaning for you.
 A: Hey, thanks! That'll really help!
 6. A: What time should we go to the theater tomorrow night?
 B: The doors _____ at 6:00 P.M., but we don't need _____ to be there that early. The show _____ at 8:00. If we _____ at the theater by 7:15, we'll be there in plenty of time. The show _____ around 10:30, so we can be back home by a little after 11:00.
 7. A: I've enjoyed my visit with you, but tomorrow I have to go back home.
 A: What time _____ your flight _____ tomorrow?
 B: It _____ at 12:34 P.M. I want to be at the airport an hour early, so we should leave here around 10:30, if that's okay with you.
 A: Sure. What time _____ your flight _____ in Mexico City? B: It's about a three-hour flight. I'll get in around 4:30 Mexico City time.



◇练习 22 BE ABOUT TO 的用法(表 3-9)

用 be about to 完成下列句子，下表中的动词只能用一次。

break	leave	✓rain	ring	write
-------	-------	-------	------	-------

1. A: What does it usually mean if the sky is cloudy and dark?

B: It usually means that it is about to rain.

2. A: What does it probably mean if Jack is standing by the front door with his car keys in his hand?

B: It means that he is about to leave the house. 3. A: What does it mean if the teacher picks up a piece of chalk?

B: It probably means that she is about to write on the board.

4. A: You're in the kitchen. The oven timer has only a few seconds left. What does that mean?

B: The timer is about to ring.

5. A: The heavy snow is making the tree branches hang down. One is almost touching the ground. What's going to happen?

B: The branch is about to break probably.



◇练习 23 平行动词(表 3-10)

用括号中的动词完成下列句子。

1. My classmates are going to meet at Danny's and (study) Study together tonight.
2. Tomorrow the sun will rise at 6:34 and (set) set at 8:59.
3. Last night, I was listening to music and (do) do my homework when Kim stopped by.
4. Next weekend, Nick is going to meet his friends downtown and (go) go to a soccer game.
5. My pen slipped out of my hand and (fall) fall to the floor.
6. Alex is at his computer. He (write) writes e-mails and (wait) waits for responses.
7. Every morning without exception, Mrs. Carter (take) takes her dog for a walk and (buy) buys a newspaper at Charlie's newsstand.
8. Before I (go) go to your boss and (tell) tell her about your mistake, I want to give you an opportunity to explain it to her yourself.
9. Next month, I (take) take my vacation and (forget) forget about everything that is connected to my job.
10. Kathy thinks I was the cause of her problems, but I wasn't. Someday she (discover) discovers the truth and (apologize) apologizes to me.

练习 24 错误分析(第三章)

改错。

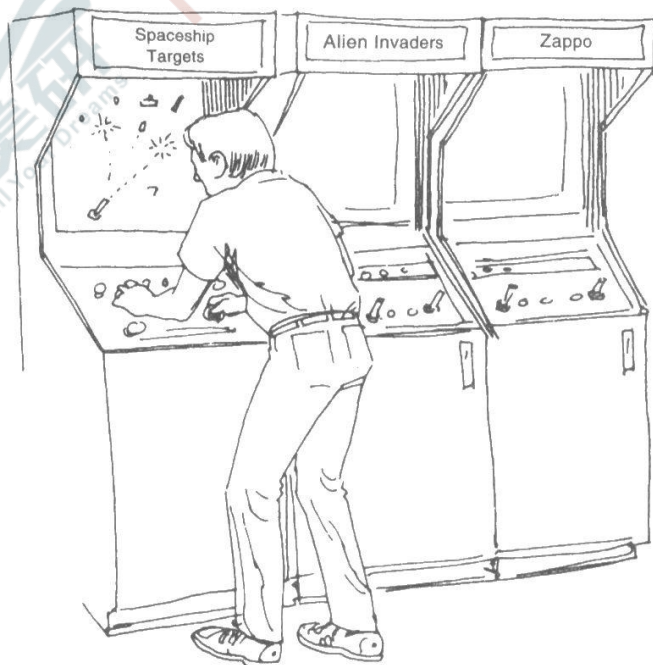
1. My friends will ~~to~~ join us after work.
2. Maybe the rain stops soon.
3. On Friday, our school close early so teachers can go to a workshop.
4. My husband and I will intend to be at your graduation.
5. Our company is going to sells computer equipment to schools.
6. Give grandpa a hug. He's about to leaving.
7. Mr. Scott is going to retire and moving to a warmer climate.
8. If your soccer team will win the championship tomorrow, we'll have a big celebration for you.
9. I maybe won't be able to meet you for coffee.

10. I bought this cloth because I will make some curtains for my bedroom.
11. I moving to London when I will finish my education here.
12. Are you going go to the meeting?
13. I opened the door and walk to the front of the room.
14. When will you be going to move into your new apartment?

◇练习 25 动词时态复习(第一章→第三章)

用括号中动词的正确形式完成下列句子。

1. It's getting late, but before I (go) _____ go _____ to bed, I (finish) _____ my homework and (write) _____ a couple of e-mails.
2. While I (make) _____ dinner last night, some grease (spill) _____ out of the frying pan and (catch) _____ on fire. When the smoke detector on the ceiling (start) _____ to buzz, my roommate (run) _____ into the kitchen to find out what was wrong. He (think) _____ that the house was on fire!
3. Mark is obsessed with video games. He (play) _____ video games morning, noon, and night. Sometimes he (cut) _____ class to play them. Right now he (do, not) _____ very well in school. If he (study, not) _____ harder and (go) _____ to class every day, he (flunk) _____ out of school.
4. Sometimes my daughter, Susie, has temper tantrums. She (cry) _____ and (stomp) _____ her feet when she (get) _____ angry. Yesterday when she (get) _____ angry, she (pick) _____ up a toy car and (throw) _____ it at her little brother. Luckily, the car (hit, not) _____ him. Susie (feel) _____ very bad. She (apologize) _____ to her brother and (kiss) _____ him.
5. It's October now. The weather (begin) _____ to get colder. It (begin) _____ to get cold every October. I (like, not) winter, but I (think) autumn is beautiful. In a couple of weeks, my friend and I (take) _____ a weekend trip to the country if the weather (be) _____ nice. We (drive) _____ through the river valley and (enjoy) _____ the colors of fall.



6. Jane (meet) _____ me at the airport when my plane (arrive) _____ tomorrow.
7. If I (see) _____ Mike tomorrow, I (tell) _____ him about the party.
8. I go to New York often. When I (be) _____ in New York, I usually (see) _____ a Broadway play.
9. When I (be) _____ in New York next week, I (stay) at the Park Plaza Hotel.
10. Cindy and I (go) _____ to the beach tomorrow if the weather (be) _____ warm and sunny.
11. Jack (watch) _____ a football game on TV right now. As soon as the game (be) _____ over, he (mow) _____ the grass in the back yard.



12. As soon as the test (be) _____ over in class yesterday, the students (leave) _____ the room.
13. As soon as I (get) _____ home every day, my children always (run) _____ to the door to meet me.
14. A: I'll lend you my bike if I (need, not) _____ it tomorrow.
B: Thanks.
15. A: Everyone in the office (plan) _____ to come to the annual company picnic tomorrow. (you, come) _____?
B: Of course!
16. A: How (you, get, usually) _____ to work?
B: I (take) _____ the commuter train every morning.
17. This morning, Bob (comb) _____ his hair when the comb (break) _____. So he (finish) _____ combing his hair with his fingers and (rush) _____ out the door to class.
18. I'm exhausted! When I (get) _____ home tonight, I (read) _____ the paper and (watch) _____ the news. I (do, not) _____ any work around the house.
19. Yesterday I (see) _____ the man who stole the radio from my car last Friday. I (run) _____ after him, (catch) _____ him, and (knock) _____ him down. A passerby (go) _____ to call the police. I (sit) _____ on the man while I (wait) _____ for them to come. After they (get) _____ there and (understand) _____ the situation, they (put) _____ handcuffs on him and (take) him to jail.
20. A: My cousin (have) _____ a new cat. She now (have) four cats.
B: Why (she, have) _____ so many?
A: To catch the mice in her house.
B: (you, have) _____ any cats?

A: No, and I (get, not) _____ any. I (have, not) _____ mice in my house.



云帆美研教育
专注 GMAT、GRE 提升与留学规划申请

第四章 现在完成时与过去完成时

◇练习 1 现在完成时的形式(表 4-1→4-3)

用所给动词的正确形式和括号中的词语完成下列对话。使用现在完成时。

1. eat A: (you, ever) Have you ever eaten pepperoni pizza?
B: Yes, I have. I have eaten pepperoni pizza many times. OR
No, I haven't. I (never) have never eaten pepperoni pizza.
2. talk A: (you, ever) _____ to a famous person?
B: Yes, I _____. I _____ to a lot of famous people. OR
No, I _____. I (never) _____ to a famous person.
3. rent A: (Erica, ever) _____ a car?
B: Yes, she _____. She _____ a car many times. OR
No, she _____. She (never) _____ a car.
4. see A: (you, ever) _____ a shooting star?
B: Yes, I _____. I _____ a lot of shooting stars. OR
No, I _____. I (never) _____ a shooting star.
5. catch A: (Joe, ever) _____ a big fish?
B: Yes, he _____. He _____ lots of big fish. OR
No, he _____. He (never) _____ a big fish.
6. have A: (you, ever) _____ a bad sunburn?
B: Yes, I _____. I _____ a bad sunburn several times, OR.
No, I _____. I (never) _____ a bad sunburn.

◇练习 2 现在完成时(表 4-1→4-3)

用括号中所给动词的现在完成时形式完成下列句子。

1. A cell phone is so convenient. I (want) have wanted one since they were available for sale.
2. I quit eating meat when I was in college. I (be) _____ a strict vegetarian for several years and feel very healthy.
3. We got a dog because we live in an isolated area. She (be) _____ a wonderful watchdog for us.
4. We (fly) _____ that airline many times because the service is excellent.
5. Our neighbors (pick up, not) _____ their mail yet. They may not be back from their trip.
6. Vivian (change) _____ her hair color so many times that no one can remember her natural color.
7. Our teacher (correct, already) _____ our tests, but she (return, not) _____ them yet.
8. A: Jose left two messages on my answering machine. I wonder what he wants.
B: Maybe he just wants to talk. He said he (talk, not) _____ to you in a long time.
9. My parents (need) _____ a new car for several months. They "(look) _____ in lots of car showrooms, but they can't agree on what kind of car to buy.
10. A: (you, have) _____ your flu shot this year? I got mine last week.

B: No, but I will. I (get) _____ one every year for the past three years.
My doctor says it's a good idea after the age of 50.

◇练习3 复习：不规则动词(表 2-6, 2-7 和 4-1)

将下表中的动词归入正确的组。

√ring	put	quit	have	shut	teach
√hurt	drink	stick	swim	sink	pay
√win	stand	upset	find	let	bring
feed	keep	meet	sing	catch	set
weep	sit	cut	buy	fight	think

II. 动词原形、过去式和过去分词形式相同。

Example: cost → cost → cost

<u>hurt</u>	<u>hurt</u>	<u>hurt</u>
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

II. 元音变化: i→a→u。

例: begin → began → begun

<u>ving</u>	<u>vang</u>	<u>vang</u>
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

III. 过去式与过去分词形式相同。

Example: find → found → found

<u>win</u>	<u>won</u>	<u>won</u>
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

◇练习4 现在完成时(表 4-1→4-3)

用下表中动词的现在完成时形式和括号中的词语完成下列句子。每个动词只能用一次。

eat	look	save	√use
give	play	sleep	wear
improve	rise	speak	win

1. People _____ have used _____ leather to make shoes for hundreds of years.
2. The night is over. It's daytime now. The sun _____.

3. I (never) _____ golf, but I'd like to. It looks like fun.
4. Our team is great. They _____ all of their games so far this year. They haven't lost a single game.
5. Amy must be mad at me. She (not) _____ one word to me all evening. I wonder what I did to make her angry.
6. The cat must be sick. He (not) _____ any food for two days. We'd better call the vet.
7. Our teacher _____ us a lot of tests and quizzes since the beginning of the term.
8. We put a little money in our savings account every month. We want to buy a car, but we (not) _____ enough money yet. We'll have enough in a few more months.
9. (you, ever) _____ outdoors for an entire night? I mean without a tent, with nothing between you and the stars?
10. My aunt puts on a wig whenever she goes out, but I (never) _____ a wig in my whole life.
11. Paul's health _____ a lot since he started eating the right kinds of food, exercising regularly, and handling the stress in his life. He's never felt better.
12. I can't find my keys. I _____ everywhere-in all my pockets, in my briefcase, in my desk. They're gone.



◇练习5 现在完成时与一般过去时的比较(表 4-3 和 4-4)

如果动作或者情景已经完成则写 F，如果延续到现在则写 C。

1. C My grandfather has worked since he was in high school.
2. F My grandmother worked for 20 years.
3. F finished my work two hours ago.
4. F I have already finished my work, so I'm leaving the office.
5. _____ My father has been sick since yesterday.
6. _____ Jane was sick last Monday.

7. _____ Tom has already left. He's not here.
8. _____ Tom left five minutes ago.
9. _____ I have known Max Shell since we were children.
10. _____ The baby has had a fever since midnight. I think I'll call the doctor.
11. _____ The baby had a fever all night, but he's better now.
12. _____ I have had the flu several times in my lifetime.
13. _____ I had the flu last year.
14. _____ Sue has had the flu since last Friday.

◇练习 6 复习：不规则动词(表 2-6, 2-7 和 4-1)

用所给动词的一般过去时和现在完成时形式完成下列句子。

1. begin I began a new diet and exercise program last week. I have begun lots of new diet and exercise programs in my lifetime.
2. bend I _____ down to pick up my young son from his crib this morning. I _____ down to pick him up many times since he was born.
3. broadcast The radio _____ news about a terrible earthquake in Iran _____ last week. The radio _____ news about Iran every day since the earthquake occurred there.
4. catch I _____ a cold last week. I _____ a lot of colds in my lifetime.
5. come A tourist _____ into Mr. Nasser's jewelry store after lunch. A lot of tourists _____ into his store since he opened it last year.
6. cut I _____ some flowers from my garden yesterday. I _____ lots of flowers from my garden so far this summer.
7. dig The workers _____ a hole to fix the leak in the water pipe. They _____ many holes to fix water leaks since the earthquake.
8. draw The artist _____ a picture of a sunset yesterday. She _____ many pictures of sunsets in her lifetime.
9. feed I _____ birds at the park yesterday. I _____ birds at the park every day since I lost my job.
10. fight We _____ a war last year. We _____ several wars since we became an independent country.
11. forget I _____ to turn off the stove after dinner. I _____ to turn off the stove a lot of times in my lifetime.
12. hide The children _____ in the basement yesterday. They _____ in the basement often since they discovered a secret place there.
13. hit The baseball player _____ the ball out of the stadium yesterday. He _____ a lot of home runs since he joined our team.
14. hold My husband _____ the door open for me when he entered the restaurant. He _____ a door open for me many times since we met each other.
15. keep During the discussion yesterday, I _____ my opinion to myself. I _____ my opinions to myself a lot of times in my lifetime.
16. lead Mary _____ the group discussion at the conference. She _____ group discussions many times since she started going to conferences.
17. lose Eddie _____ money at the racetrack yesterday. He _____ money at the racetrack lots of times in his lifetime.



18. meet I _____ two new people in my class yesterday. I a lot of new people since I started going to school here.
19. ride I _____ the bus to work yesterday. I _____ the bus to work many times since I got a job downtown.
20. ring The doorbell _____ a few minutes ago. The doorbell _____ three times so far today.
21. see I _____ a good movie yesterday. I _____ a lot of good movies in my lifetime.
22. steal The fox _____ a chicken from the farmer's yard. The fox _____ three chickens so far this month.
23. stick I _____ a stamp on the corner of the envelope. I _____ lots of stamps on envelopes in my lifetime.
24. sweep I _____ the floor of my apartment yesterday. I _____ the floor of my apartment lots of times since I moved in.
25. take I _____ a test yesterday. I _____ lots of tests in my life as a student.
26. upset The Smith children _____ Mr. Jordan when they broke his window. Because they are careless and noisy, they _____ Mr. Jordan many times since they moved in next door.
27. withdraw I _____ some money from my bank account yesterday. I _____ more than three hundred dollars from my bank account so far this month.
28. write I _____ a letter to a friend last night. I _____ lots of letters to my friends in my lifetime.

◇练习 7 现在完成时与一般过去时的比较(表 4-4)

用所给动词的一般过去时或者现在完成时形式填空。

- I (go) went to Toronto last year for business. I (go) have gone there several times since then.
- I (live) _____ in British Columbia from 1998 to 2000.
- My friend, Joe, (live) _____ in Vancouver since 2000.
- Before Joe (move) _____ to Vancouver, he (work) _____ on cruise ships as a cook.
- My college roommate came from Ghana. We (room) _____ together for three years, and then she (return) _____ home.
- My grandfather (be) _____ a great golfer for most of his life, but he (die)

- _____ last year.
7. My father (play) _____ competitive golf for most of his life and really enjoys it.
8. Since my husband began working the night shift, he (sleep, not) _____ very well.
9. When I lived in Alaska, the long daylight hours (make) _____ it difficult for me to sleep.
10. Since I was a child, I (enjoy) _____ collecting rocks from the beach.
11. When I was a child, my friends (collect) _____ rocks with me.

◇练习 8 复习：不规则动词(表 2-6, 2-7 和 4-1)

本练习是对不规则动词的复习。用所给动词的一般过去时或现在完成时形式及括号中的词语完成

下列句子。

1. go a. I have gone to every play at the local theater so far this year.
- b. My whole family went to the play last weekend.
2. give a. Jane gave me a ride home from work today.
- b. (she, ever) Has she ever given you a ride home. since she started working in your department?
3. fall a. I _____ down many times in my lifetime, but never hard enough to really hurt myself or break a bone.
- b. Mike _____ down many times during football practice yesterday.
4. break a. (you, ever) _____ a bone in your body?
- b. I _____ my leg when I was ten years old. I jumped off the roof of my house.
5. shake a. In my entire lifetime, I (never) _____ hands with a famous movie star.
- b. In 2000, I _____ hands with a famous soccer player.
6. hear a. _____ you practicing your trumpet late last night.
- b. In fact, I _____ you practicing every night for two weeks.



7. fly a. Mike is a commercial airline pilot. Yesterday he _____ from Tokyo to Los Angeles.
- b. Mike _____ to many places in the world since he became a pilot.
8. wear a. Carol really likes her new leather jacket. She _____ it every day

since she bought it.

b. She _____ her new leather jacket to the opera last night.

9. build a. (you, ever) _____ a piece of furniture?

b. My daughter _____ a table in her woodworking class at the high school last year.

10. teach a. Ms. Kent _____ math at the local high school since 1995.

b. She _____ in Hungary last year on an exchange program.

11. find a. In your lifetime, (you, ever) _____ something really valuable?

b. My sister _____ a very expensive diamond ring in the park last year.

12. drive a. After I took Danny to school, I _____ straight to work.

b. I'm an experienced driver, but I (never) _____ a bus or a big truck.

13. sing a. I _____ a duet with my mother at the art benefit last night.

b. We _____ together ever since I was a small child.

14. run a. I (never) _____ in a marathon race, and I don't intend to.

b. I'm out of breath because I _____ all the way over here.

15. tell a. Last night, my brother _____ me a secret.

b. He _____ me lots of secrets in his lifetime.

16. stand a. When I visited the United Nations last summer, I _____ in the main gallery and felt a great sense of history.

b. Many great world leaders _____ there over the years.

17. spend a. I _____ all of my money at the mall yesterday.

b. I don't have my rent money this month. I (already) _____ it on other things.

18. make a. I consider myself fortunate because I _____ many good friends in my lifetime.

b. I _____ a terrible mistake last night. I forgot that my friend had invited me to his apartment for dinner.

19. rise a. The price of flour _____ a lot since February.

b. When his name was announced, Jack _____ from his seat and walked to the podium to receive his award.

20. feel a. I _____ terrible yesterday, so I stayed in bed.

b. I _____ terrible for a week now. I'd better see a doctor.

◇练习9 SINCE 与 FOR 的比较(表 4-5)

用 since 或 for 完成下列句子。

1. David has worked for the power company _____ Since _____ 1999.

2. His brother has worked for the power company _____ for _____ five years.

3. I have known Peter Gow _____ September.

4. I've known his sister _____ three months.

5. Jonas has walked with a limp _____ many years.

6. He's had a bad leg _____ he was in the war.

7. Rachel hasn't been in class _____ last Tuesday.

8. She hasn't been in class _____ three days.

9. My vision has improved _____ I got new reading glasses.

10. I've had a toothache _____ yesterday morning.

11. I've had this toothache _____ thirty-six hours.

12. I've had a cold _____ almost a week.

13. Jane hasn't worked _____ last summer when the factory closed down.

14. I attended Jefferson Elementary School _____ six years.

◇练习 10 带 **SINCE** 和 **FOR** 的现在完成时(表 4-5)

用 **since** 或 **for** 改写下列句子。

1. I was in this class a month ago, and I am in this class now.

→ I have been in this class for a month.

2. I knew my teacher in September, and I know her now.

3. Sam wanted a dog two years ago, and he wants one now.

4. Sara needed a new car last year, and she still needs one.

5. Our professor was sick a week ago, and she is still sick.

6. They live in Canada. They moved there in December.

7. I know Mrs. Brown. I met her in 1999.

8. Tom works at a fast-food restaurant. He got the job three weeks ago.

◇练习 11 现在完成时和一般过去时的时间表达(表 4-1→4-5)

选出所有可以正确完成下列句子的短语，不正确的用破折号标出来。

1. The Petersons took a trip

_____ ✓ _____ two weeks ago.

_____ - _____ since yesterday.

_____ ✓ _____ yesterday.

_____ _____ last year.

_____ _____ several months ago.

_____ _____ since last month.

_____ _____ the day before yesterday.

_____ _____ in March.

2. The Petersons have been out of town

_____ the day before yesterday.

_____ one month ago.

_____ since Friday.

_____ last week.

_____ since last week.

_____ in April last year.

_____ several weeks ago.

_____ for several weeks.

◇练习 12 **SINCE** 从句(表 4-5)

用括号中的词语完成下列句子。使用现在完成时或一般过去时。

1. Carol and I are old friends. I (know) have known her since I (be) was a freshman in high school.

2. Maria (have) _____ a lot of problems since she (come) _____ to this country.

3. I (experience, not) _____ any problems since I (come)

- _____ here.
4. Since the semester (begin) _____, our teacher (give) _____ four tests.
5. Mike (be) _____ in school since he (be) _____ six years old.
6. My mother (be, not) _____ in school since she (graduate) _____ from college in 1978.
7. Since I (start) _____ doing this exercise, I (complete) six sentences.
8. Since soccer season (begin) _____, our son (have, not) _____ much free time.
9. Our long-distance phone calls (become) _____ less expensive since we (change) _____ to a different telephone company.
10. Our phone bill (rise) _____ since we (buy) _____ a cell phone.

◇练习 13 现在完成进行时(表 4-6 和 4-7)

用所给信息完成下列对话，使用现在完成进行时。

1. Eric is studying. He started to study at seven o'clock. It is now nine o'clock.
A: How long has Eric been studying ?
B: He 's been studying for two hours.
2. Kathy is working at the computer. She began to work at the computer at two o'clock. It is now three o'clock.
A: How long has kathy been working at the computer ?
B: She's been working since two o'clock.
3. It began to rain two days ago. It is still raining.
A: How long _____ ?
B: It _____ for _____.
4. Liz is reading. She began to read at ten o'clock. It is now ten-thirty.
A: How long _____ ?
B: She _____ for _____.
5. Boris began to study English in 2001. He is still studying English.
A: How long _____ ?
B: He _____ since _____.
6. Three months ago, Nicole started to work at the Silk Road Clothing Store.
A: How long _____ ?
B: She _____ for _____.
7. Ms. Rice started to teach at this school in September 2001.
A: How long _____ ?
B: She _____ since _____.
8. Mr. Fisher drives a Chevy. He bought it twelve years ago.
A: How long _____ ?
B: He _____ for _____.
9. Mrs. Taylor is waiting to see her doctor. She arrived at the waiting room at two o'clock. It is now three-thirty.
A: How long _____ ?
B: She _____ for _____.
10. Ted and Erica started to play tennis at two o'clock. It's now four-thirty.
A: How long _____ ?
B: They _____ since _____.

◇练习 14 现在完成进行时(表 4-6 和 4-7)

选出动词的正确形式。

1. Where have you been? I _____ for you for over an hour!
A. am waiting ☒ B. have been waiting
2. I'm exhausted! I _____ for the last eight hours without a break.
A. am working B. have been working
3. Shhh! Susan _____. Let's not make any noise. We don't want to wake her up.
A. is sleeping B. has been sleeping
4. Annie, go upstairs and wake your brother up. He _____ for over ten hours. He has chores to do.
A. is sleeping B. has been sleeping
5. Erin has never gone camping. She _____ in a tent.
A. has never slept B. has never been sleeping
6. This is a great shirt! I _____ it at least a dozen times, and it still looks like new.
A. have washed B. have been washing
7. Aren't you about finished with the dishes? You _____ dishes for thirty minutes or more. How long can it take to wash dishes?
A. have washed B. have been washing
8. We _____ to the Steak House restaurant many times. The food is excellent.
A. have gone B. have been going

◇练习 15 ALREADY, STILL, YET, ANYMORE(表 4-8)

选出正确选项，完成下列句子。

1. I haven't finished my homework yet. I'm _____ working on it.
A. already ☒ B. still C. yet D. anymore
2. Top Rock Videos used to be my favorite TV show, but I have stopped watching it. I don't watch it _____.
A. already B. still C. yet D. anymore
3. I don't have to take any more math classes. I've _____ taken all the required courses.
A. already B. still C. yet D. anymore
4. I used to nearly choke in an airplane because of all the smoke in the cabin. But smoking is now forbidden by law on all domestic flights. You can't smoke in an airplane _____.
A. already B. still C. yet D. anymore
5. I'm not quite ready to leave. I haven't finished packing my suitcase _____.
A. already B. still C. yet D. anymore
6. "Don't you have a class at two?"
"Yeah, why?"
"Look at your watch."
"Oh my gosh, it's _____ past two! Bye!"
A. already B. still C. yet D. anymore
7. Don't sit there! I painted that chair yesterday, and the paint isn't completely dry _____.
A. already B. still C. yet D. anymore
8. 1448 South 45th Street is Joe's old address. He doesn't live there _____.
A. already B. still C. yet D. anymore
9. Mr. Wood is eighty-eight years old, but he _____ goes into his office every day.
A. already B. still C. yet D. anymore
10. "Are you going to drive to Woodville with us for the street festival Saturday?"
"I don't know. I might. I haven't made up my mind _____. "
A. already B. still C. yet D. anymore

◇练习 16 ALREADY, STILL, YET, ANYMORE(表 4-8)

用 already, still, yet 或 anymore 完成下列句子。

1. A: Has Dennis graduated yet ?
B: No. He's still in school.
2. A: I'm hungry. How about you? Did you eat _____?
B: No. Did you?
A: Nope. Let's go eat lunch.
3. A: Do you _____ live on Fifth Street?
B: Not anymore. I moved.
4. A: Has Karen found a new apartment
B: Not that I know of. She's still living on Elm Street.
5. A: Do you _____ love me?
B: Of course I do! I love you very much.
6. A: Is the baby _____ sleeping?
B: Yes. Shhh. We don't want to wake him up.
7. A: Is the baby asleep _____ ?
B: I think so. I don't hear anything from the nursery. I put him down for his nap fifteen minutes ago, so I'm pretty sure he's asleep by now.
8. It started raining an hour ago. We can't go for a walk because it's _____ raining. I hope it stops soon.
9. Look! The rain has stopped. It isn't raining _____. Let's go for a walk.
10. I didn't understand this chapter in my biology book when I read it yesterday. Since then, I've read it three more times, but I _____ don't understand it.
11. A: Is Anne home _____ ?
B: No, she isn't. I'm getting worried. She was supposed to be home at eight. It's almost nine, and she _____ isn't here.
A: Don't worry. She'll probably be here any minute.
12. A: I'm going to have another sandwich.
B: What? You just ate three sandwiches!
A: I know, but I'm not full _____. I'm _____ hungry.
13. A: Would you like to see today's newspaper?
B: Thanks, but I've _____ read it.
14. A: Did you try to call Peter again?
B: Yes, but the line was _____ busy. I'll try again in a few minutes.
15. A: How does Dick like his job at the cafe?
B: He doesn't work there _____. He found a new job.
16. A: Is your younger sister a college student?
B: No. She's _____ in high school.
17. A: When are you going to make Tommy's birthday cake?
B: I've _____ made it.
18. A: How did you do on your calculus exam?
B: I haven't taken it _____. The exam is tomorrow. I'm studying for it.

◇练习 17 动词时态复习(第一→四章)

阅读 Ann 和 Ben 的对话, 用括号中的词语完成下列句子。

- BEN: I (need) _____ need _____ to find a job. Where (be) _____ a good place for a student to work? 1 2
- ANN: (you, work, ever) _____ at a restaurant?

3

BEN: Yes. I (work) _____ at several restaurants. I (have)

4

_____ a job as a dishwasher last fall.

5



ANN: Where?

BEN: "At The Bistro, a little cafe on First Street.

ANN: How long (you, work) _____ there?

6

BEN: For two months.

ANN: I (work) _____ in a lot of restaurants, but I (have, never)

7

_____ a dishwashing job. How (you, like)

8

_____ your job as a dishwasher?

9

BEN: I (like, not) _____ it very much. It (be) _____ hard

10

11

work for low pay.

ANN: Where (you, work) _____ at present?

12

BEN: I (have, not) _____ a job right now. I (have, not)

13

_____ a job since I (quit) _____ the dishwashing one.

14

15

ANN: (you, look) _____ for a part-time or a full-time job?

16

SEN: A part-time job, maybe twenty hours a week.

ANN: I (go) _____ to Al's Place tomorrow to see about a job. The restaurant

17

(look) _____ for help. Why don't you come along with me?

18

BEN: Thanks. I think I (do) _____ that. I (look, never)

19

_____ for a job at Al's Place before. Maybe the pay (be)

20

_____ better than at The Bistro.

21

ANN: I (know, not) _____. We (find) _____ out when

we (go) _____ there tomorrow.
24

23

◇练习 18 现在完成时与过去完成时的比较(表 4-9)

用括号中的词语完成下列句子。使用现在完成时或过去完成时。

1. I am not hungry. I (eat, already) have already eaten.
2. I was not hungry. I (eat, already) had already eaten.
3. It's ten o'clock. I (finish, already) _____ my homework, so I'm going to go to bed.
4. Last night I went to bed at ten o'clock. I (finish, already) _____ my homework.
5. By the time¹³ I went to bed last night, I (finish, already) _____ my homework.
6. Sam's parties usually start late, so I was surprised that his party (start, already) _____ by the time I got there.
7. Look at all the people who are here! The party (start, already) _____.
8. Carol missed her plane yesterday because of a traffic jam on her way to the airport. By the time she got to the airport, her plane (leave, already) _____.

◇练习 19 过去进行时与过去完成时的比较(表 4-9)

用括号中的词语完成下列句子。使用过去进行时或过去完成时。

1. When I left for school this morning, it (rain) was raining, so I used my umbrella.
2. By the time class was over this morning, the rain (stop) had stopped, so I didn't need my umbrella anymore.
3. Last night I started to study at 7:30. Dick came at 7:35. I (study) _____ when Dick came.
4. Last night I started to study at 7:30. I finished studying at 9:00. Dan came at 9:30. By the time Dan came, I (finish) _____ my homework.
5. When I walked into the kitchen after dinner last night, my wife (wash) _____ the dishes, so I picked up a dish towel to help her.
6. By the time I walked into the kitchen after dinner tonight, my husband (wash, already) _____ the dishes and (put) _____ them away.

◇练习 20 过去完成时(表 4-9)

阅读下面的文章，用下划线划出过去完成时动词及修饰它们的副词 always 和 never，然后使用

过去完成时完成后面的句子。

(1) Alan Green got married for the first time at age 49. His new life is very different because he has had to change many old habits. For example, before his marriage, he had always watched TV during dinner, but his wife likes to talk at dinnertime, so now the TV is off.

(2) Until his marriage, Alan had always read the front page of the newspaper first, but his wife likes to read the front page first, too, so now Alan reads the sports page first.

(3) Until he got married, he had never let anyone else choose the radio station in the car. He

¹³by the time = before

had always listened to exactly what he wanted to listen to. But his wife likes to choose what's on the radio when she's in the car with him.

(4) When he was a bachelor, Alan had always left his dirty socks on the floor. Now he picks them up and puts them in the laundry basket.

(5) Before he 'was married, he'd never put the cap back on the toothpaste. He left it off. His wife prefers to have the cap back on. She also squeezes from the bottom of the tube, and Alan doesn't. Alan can't remember to put the cap back on, so now they have separate toothpaste tubes.

(6) Alan had never shared the TV remote control with anyone before he got married. He still likes to have control of the TV remote, but he doesn't say anything when his wife uses it.

完成这些句子。

1. Until Alan got married, he had always watched TV during dinner.

2. Before his marriage, he _____ the front page of the newspaper first.

3. Prior to getting married, he _____ other people choose the station on his car radio.

4. Until he began married life, he _____ his dirty socks on the floor.

5. Before getting married, he _____ the toothpaste cap back on.

6. Until he had a wife who also liked to use the TV remote control, he _____ the remote with anyone.

◇练习 21 动词时态复习(第二、四章)

用括号中的词语完成下列句子。

1. A: (you, enjoy) Did you enjoy the concert last night?

B: Very much. I (go, not) hadn't gone to a concert in a long time.

2. A: (you, see) _____ John yesterday?

B: Yes, I did. It (be) _____ good to see him again. I (see, not) _____ him in a long time.

3. A: Hi, Jim! It's good to see you again. I (see, not) _____ you in weeks.

B: Hi, Sue! It (be) _____ good to see you again, too. I (see, not) _____ you since the end of last semester. How's everything going?

4. A: (you, get) _____ to class on time yesterday morning?

B: No. By the time I (get) _____ there, it (begin, already)

5. A: I called Ana, but I couldn't talk to her.

B: Why not?

A: She (go, already) _____ to bed, and her sister didn't want to wake her up for a phone call.

6. A: You're a wonderful artist. I love your watercolor paintings of the river valley.

B: Thank you. I (paint) _____ the same valley many times because it has such interesting light at different times of the day.

7. A: I had a scare yesterday. I (watch) _____ the news when a tornado warning flashed on the screen.

B: What (you, do) _____?

A: I (run) _____ to the basement of the house.

8. A: (you, go) _____ out to eat last night?

B: No. By the time I (get) _____ home, my husband (make, already) _____ dinner for us.

A: How (be) _____ it?

B: Terrific! We (have) _____ chicken, rice, and a salad. While we (eat) _____, George Drake (stop) _____ by to visit us, so we (invite) _____ him to join us for dinner.

◇练习 22 错误分析(第一→四章)

改错。

1. Where have you been? I've ^ waiting for you for an hour.
2. Anna have been a soccer fan since a long time.
3. Since I have been a child, I liked to solve puzzles.
4. Have you ever want to travel around the world?
5. The family is at the hospital since they hear about the accident.
6. My sister is only 30 years old, but her hair has began to turn gray.
7. Jake has been working as a volunteer at the children's hospital several times.
8. Steve has worn his black suit only once since he has bought it.
9. My cousin is studying for medical school exams since last month.
10. The students are hearing rumors about their teacher's engagement for a week.
11. I don't know the results of my medical tests already. I'll find out soon.
12. Jean has been try to get online to go Internet shopping for an hour.
13. By the time Michelle unlocked the door and got into her apartment, the phone already stopped ringing.



云帆美研
专注 GMAT、GRE 提升与留学规划申请

第五章 疑问句

◇练习 1 预习：疑问句(表 5-1→5-13)

假设你正在采访你的同班同学 Anna。将你的名字写在第一条横线上，然后用适当的问题完成下列对话。

1. ME: Hi. My name is _____. Our teacher has asked me to interview you so that I can practice asking questions. Could I ask you a few questions about yourself?

ANNA: Sure.

2. ME: Well, first of all, _____ what is your name _____ ?

ANNA: Anna.

3. ME: _____ ?

ANNA: Yes, that's my first name.

4. ME: _____ ?

ANNA: Polanski.

5. ME: _____ ?

ANNA: P-O-L-A-N-S-K-I.

ME: Let me make sure I have that right. Your first name is Anna, A-N-N-A. And your last name is Polanski, P-O-L-A-N-S-K-I. Right?

ANNA: That's right.

6. ME: _____ ?

ANNA: Poland.

7. ME: _____ ?

ANNA: Warsaw. My hometown is Warsaw.

8. ME: _____ ?

ANNA: Two weeks ago. I came to this country two weeks ago.

9. ME: _____ ?

ANNA: To study. I came here because I wanted to study at this school.

10. ME: _____ ?

ANNA: Biochemistry.

11. ME: _____ ?

ANNA: I'm going to stay here for four years, or until I graduate.

12. ME: _____ ?

ANNA: I'm living at my aunt and uncle's house.

13. ME: _____ ?

ANNA: No, it isn't far from school.

14. ME: _____ ?

ANNA: I'd say about ten blocks.

15. ME: _____ ?

ANNA: Sometimes I take the bus, but usually I walk.

16. ME: You're lucky. I live far away from the school, so it takes me a long time to get here every day. But that's my only big complaint about living here. Otherwise, I like going to this school a lot. _____ ?

ANNA: Very much.

ME: Well, thanks for the interview. I think I have enough information for the assignment. Nice to meet you.

ANNA: Nice to meet you, too.

◇练习 2 一般疑问句(表 5-1)¹⁴

根据 B 的回答写出正确的问句形式。

- | | | 助动词 | 主语 | 主要动词 | 句子的其余部分 |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|-----------|------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. 一般现在时 | A: | <u>Do</u> | <u>you</u> | <u>like</u> | <u>coffee?</u> |
| | B: Yes, I like coffee. | | | | |
| 2. 一般现在时 | A: | | | | |
| | B: Yes, Tom likes coffee. | | | | |
| 3. 现在进行时 | A: | | | | |
| | B: Yes, Ann is watching TV. | | | | |
| 4. 现在进行时 | A: | | | | |
| | B: Yes. I'm having lunch with Rob. | | | | |
| 5. 一般过去时 | A: | | | | |
| | B: Yes, Sara walked to school. | | | | |
| 6. 过去进行时 | A: | | | | |
| | B: Yes, Ann was taking a nap. | | | | |
| 7. 一般将来时 | A: | | | | |
| | B: Yes, Ted will come to the meeting. | | | | |
| 8. 情态动词: CAN | A: | | | | |
| | B: Yes, Rita can ride a bicycle. | | | | |
| 9. 主要动词: BE | A: | | | | |
| 一般现在时 | B: Yes, Ann is a good artist. | | | | |
| 10. 主要动词: BE | A: | | | | |
| 一般过去时 | B: Yes, I was at the wedding. | | | | |

◇练习 3 一般疑问句和简略回答(表 5-1 和 5-2)

用 do, does, is 或 are 完成 A 的问题, 然后补全 B 的简略回答。

- A: I need a flashlight. Do you have one?
B: No, I don't.
- A: Is Africa the largest continent?
B: No, Asia is.
- A: Do ants eat other insects?

¹⁴*各种时态和情态动词的疑问句形式见《朗文中级英语语法》:

一般现在时与现在进行时: P. 4 表 1-2

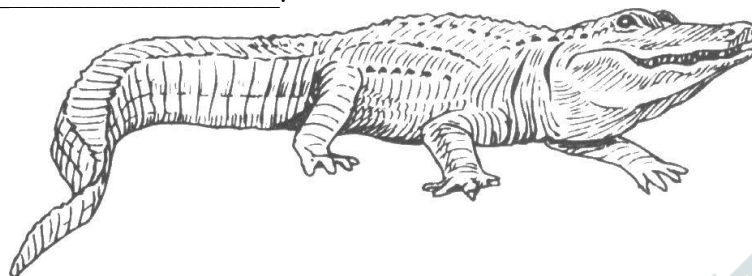
一般过去时: P.26 表 2-2

过去进行时: p.39 表 2-9

一般将来时: p.56 表 3-2 和 P.59 表 3-3

情态动词 can: P.191 表 7-2

- B: Yes, _____.
4. A: _____ you going to be in class tomorrow?
- B: Yes, _____.
5. A: _____ all snakebites poisonous?
- B: No, _____.
6. A: _____ crocodiles lay eggs?
- B: Yes, _____.



7. A: _____ it raining right now?
- B: No, _____.
8. A: _____ that pen belong to you?
- B: No, _____.
9. A: _____ you working on English grammar right now?
- B: Yes, _____.
10. A: Mercury is a liquid metal used in thermometers, _____ mercury have a boiling point?
- B: Yes, _____. It boils at 356.58°C.

◇练习 4 一般疑问句和简略回答(表 5-1 和 5-2)

用简略回答回答下列问题。

1. Do you know how to swim? yes, I do. OR No, I don't.
2. Does your mother speak Chinese? _____
3. Are you going downtown tomorrow? _____
4. Will you be in class tomorrow? _____
5. Can you play the guitar? _____
6. Do you know how to play the violin? _____
7. Are we going to have a test on grammar tomorrow? _____
8. Can turtles swim? _____
9. Should people smoke cigarettes? _____
10. Did you watch TV last night? _____
11. Do you have a bicycle? _____
12. Will class begin on time tomorrow? _____
13. Does class begin on time every day? _____
14. Were all of the students in class yesterday? _____
15. Should the teacher speak more slowly? _____
16. Is English grammar easy? _____
17. Was this exercise difficult? _____

◇练习 5 一般疑问句和简略回答(表 5-1 和 5-2)

完成 A 的问题, 然后补全 B 的简略回答。

1. A: _____ Does Jane eat _____ lunch at the cafeteria every day?
B: Yes, _____ she does. (Jane eats lunch at the cafeteria every day.)
2. A: _____ Do _____ your parents live nearby?

- B: No, _____ (My parents don't live nearby.)
 3. A: _____ to class yesterday?
 B: No, _____ (Ann and Jim didn't come to class yesterday.)
 4. A: _____ in your grammar workbook?
 B: Yes, _____ (I'm writing in my grammar workbook.)
 5. A: _____ home last night?
 B: No, _____ (I wasn't home last night.)
 6. A: _____ in your astronomy class?
 B: Yes, _____ (Tim Wilson is in my astronomy class.)
 7. A: _____ her work before she goes to bed?
 B: Yes, _____ (Karen will finish her work before she goes to bed.)
 8. A: _____ under water?
 B: Yes, _____ (Some birds can swim under water.)
 9. A: _____ at your homework for tomorrow yet?
 B: No, _____ (I haven't looked at my homework for tomorrow yet.)

◇练习 6 一般疑问句和特殊疑问句(表 5. P 和 5. 2)

写下 A 的问题, 完成对话。如果空白处不需要任何词则填 Ø。

- | | (疑问词) | 助动词 | 主语 | 主要动词 | 句子的其余部分 |
|-----|---|-----|-----|------|---------------------|
| 1. | | | | | |
| A: | Ø | Did | you | hear | the news yesterday? |
| B: | Yes, I did. (I heard the news yesterday.) | | | | |
| 2. | | | | | |
| A: | when | did | you | hear | the news? |
| B: | Yesterday. (I heard the news yesterday.) | | | | |
| 3. | | | | | |
| A: | Ø | | | | |
| B: | Yes, he is. (Eric is reading today, S paper.) | | | | |
| 4. | | | | | |
| A: | | | | | |
| B: | Today's paper. (Eric is reading today's paper.) | | | | |
| 5. | | | | | |
| A: | | | | | |
| B: | Yes, I did. (I found my wallet.) | | | | |
| 6. | | | | | |
| A: | | | | | |
| B: | On the floor of the car. (I found my wallet on the floor of the car.) | | | | |
| 7. | | | | | |
| A: | | | | | |
| B: | Because he enjoys the exercise. (Mr. Li walks to work because he enjoys the exercise.) | | | | |
| 8. | | | | | |
| A: | | | | | |
| B: | Yes, he does. (Mr. Li walks to work.) | | | | |
| 9. | | | | | |
| A: | | | | | |
| B: | Yes, she will. (Ms. Cook will return to her office at one o'clock.) | | | | |
| 10. | | | | | |
| A: | | | | | |
| B: | At one o'clock. (Ms. Cook will return to her office at one o'clock.) | | | | |
| 11. | | | | | |
| A: | | | | | |

B: Yes, it is. (The orange juice is in the refrigerator.)

12. (疑问词) be 的形式 主语 句子的其余部分

A: _____

B: In the refrigerator. (The orange juice is in the refrigerator.)

◇练习 7 特殊疑问句(表 5-1→5-3)

根据回答,用括号中所给的信息及 when, what time, where 或 why 写出问题。特别注意疑问句的语序。

1. A: _____ What time (when) do the fireworks start _____ this evening?

B: 9:30. (The fireworks start at 9:30 this evening.)

2. A: _____ to see the principal?

B: Because I need to get his signature on this application form. (I'm waiting to see the principal because I need to get his signature on this application form.)

3. A: _____ her new job?

B: Next Monday morning. (Rachel starts her new job next Monday morning.)

4. A: _____ home for work?

B: Usually around 6:00. (I usually leave home for work around 6:00.)

5. A: _____ to the meeting?

B: Because I fell asleep after dinner and didn't wake up until 9:00. (I didn't get to the meeting because I fell asleep after dinner and didn't wake up until 9:00.)

6. A: _____ razor blades?

B: At many different kinds of stores. (You can find razor blades at many different kinds of stores.)

7. A: _____ for home?

B: Next Saturday. (I'm leaving for home next Saturday.)

8. A: _____ to finish this project?

B: Next month. (I expect to finish this project next month.)

9. A: _____

B: To Mars. (The spaceship will go to Mars.)

10. A: _____ Chinese?

B: In Germany. (I studied Chinese in Germany.)

A: _____ Chinese in Germany?

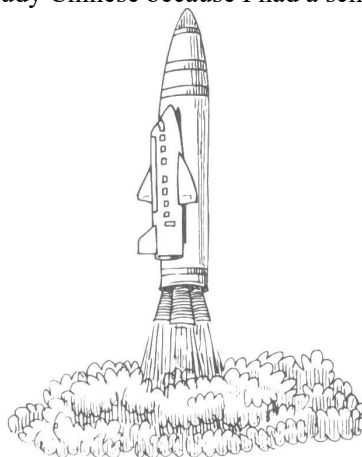
B: Because there is a good Chinese language school there.

(I studied Chinese in Germany because there is a good Chinese language school there.)

A: _____ to China to study Chinese?

B: Because I had a scholarship to study in Germany.

(I didn't go to China to study Chinese because I had a scholarship to study in Germany.)



◇练习 8 特殊疑问句(表 5-1→5-3)

用 where, why, when 或 what time 写出特殊疑问句。

1. A: _____ When / What time did you get up _____ this morning?

B: At 7:30. (I got up at 7:30 this morning.)

2. A: _____ today?

B: At the cafeteria. (I ate lunch at the cafeteria today.)

3. A: _____ lunch?

B: At 12:15. (I ate lunch at 12:15.)

4. A: _____ at the cafeteria?

B: Because the food is good. (I eat lunch at the cafeteria because the food is good.)

5. A: _____?

B: In Chicago. (My aunt and uncle live in Chicago.)

6. A: _____ your aunt and uncle?

B: Next week. (I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle next week.)

7. A: _____ tonight?

B: Around six. (I'll get home around six tonight.)

8. A: _____ tonight?

B: At the library. (George is going to study at the library tonight.)

9. A: _____ at the library?

B: Because it's quiet. (George studies at the library because it's quiet.)

10. A: _____ a bus?

B: At that corner. (You can catch a bus at that corner.)

11. A: _____?

B: Ten o'clock. (I have to leave at ten o'clock.)

12. A: _____ in 1998?

B: In Japan. (I was living in Japan in 1998.)

13. A: _____ in their books?

B: Because they're working on an exercise. (The students are writing in their books because they're working on an exercise.)

14. A: _____ you?

B: Around seven. (You should call me around seven.)

15. A: _____ absent?

B: Because she's flying her kite in the park. (Yoko is absent because she's flying her kite in the park.)

◇练习 9 WHY 引导的特殊疑问句(表 5-4)

练习用 why 造句。

1. A: I was absent from class yesterday.

B: Why _____ were you _____ absent from class yesterday?

2. A: I can't come to your party this weekend.

B: Why _____ to my party this weekend?

3. A: Tom went downtown yesterday.

B: Why _____ downtown yesterday?

4. A: Ann won't be in class tomorrow.

B: Why _____ in class tomorrow?

5. A: I need to go to the drugstore.

B: Why _____ to go to the drugstore?

6. A: I'm going to buy a new dictionary.

B: Why _____ a new dictionary?

7. A: I didn't do my homework last night.

B: Why _____ your homework last night?

8. A: Anita is not coming to class tomorrow.
B: Why _____ to class tomorrow?
9. A: Joe and I are going to the bank after class.
B: Why _____ to the bank after class?
10. A: I didn't eat breakfast this morning
B: Why _____ breakfast this morning?
11. A: Jack took a taxi to school today.
B: Why _____ a taxi to school today?
12. A: I don't like the weather in this city.
B: Why _____ the weather in this city?

◇练习 10 WHO, WHOM 和 WHAT(表 5-4)

用 who, whom 和 what 造句。

- | 疑问句 | 回答 |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. _____ Who knows Tom? | Someone knows Tom. |
| 2. _____ Who (m) does Tom know? | Tom knows someone. |
| 3. _____ | Someone will help us. |
| 4. _____ | I will ask someone. |
| 5. _____ | Eric is talking to someone on the phone. |
| 6. _____ | Someone is knocking on the door. |
| 7. _____ | Something surprised them. |
| 8. _____ | Jack said something. |
| 9. _____ | Sue talked about something. |
| 10. _____ | Ann talked about someone. |

◇练习 11 WHO, WHOM 和 WHAT(表 5-4)

根据括号中完整回答的信息写出问句，完成对话。

1. A: _____ Who taught _____ you to play chess?
B: My mother. (My mother taught me to play chess.)
2. A: _____ ?
B: A bank robbery. (Robert saw a bank robbery.)
3. A: _____ a good look at the bank robber?
B: Robert did. (Robert got a good look at the bank robber.)
4. A: _____ ?
B: A toy for my brother's children. (I'm making a toy for my brother's children.)
5. A: _____ to?
B: Joe. (That calculator belongs to Joe.)
6. A: _____ in your pocket?
B: A bag of candy. (I have a bag of candy in my pocket.)
7. A: _____ ?
B: A mouse. (The cat killed a mouse.)
8. A: _____ ?
B: Curiosity. (Curiosity killed the cat.¹⁵)
9. A: _____ an apple fall to the ground from a tree?
B: Gravity. (Gravity makes an apple fall to the ground from a tree.)
10. A: _____ on the envelope?

¹⁵curiosity 指想知道某件事情的欲望。"Curiosity killed the cat." 是一个英语谚语，意思是当我们想知道太多与自己无关的事情，可能就会遇到麻烦。

B: My sister. (My sister wrote a note on the envelope.)

11. A: _____ from?

B: My father. (I got a letter from my father.)



◇练习 12 询问一个单词的含义(表 5-3 和 5-4)

询问斜体词的含义，完成对话。

1. Captain Cook explored many islands in the Pacific Ocean.

A: _____ What does "explore" mean?

B: It means "to go to a new place and find out about it".

2. Alice put her hand underneath the blanket.

A: _____

B: It means _____

3. How many times a minute do people blink?

A: _____

B: It means _____

4. The food was absolutely delicious/

A: _____

B: It means _____

◇练习 13 WHAT+DO 的某一形式(表 5-6)

用括号中的信息及 what+do 的某一形式提问，完成每组对话。动词时态或情态动词与括号中的保持一致。

1. A: _____ What is Alex doing _____ ?

B: Watching a movie on TV. (Alex is watching a movie on TV.)

2. A: _____ What should I do _____ if someone calls while you're out?

B: Just take a message. (You should take a message if someone calls while I'm out.)

3. A: _____?
B: They explore space. (Astronauts explore space.)
4. A: _____ Saturday morning?
B: Play tennis at Waterfall Park. (I'm going to play tennis at Waterfall Park Saturday morning.)
5. A: _____ when you get sick?
B: I see my doctor. (I see my doctor when I get sick.)
6. A: _____ to help you?
B: Carry this suitcase. (You can carry this suitcase to help me.)
7. A: _____ when she heard the good news?
B: She smiled. (Sara smiled when she heard the good news.)
8. A: I spilled some juice on the floor. _____?
B: Wipe it up with a paper towel. (You should wipe it up with a paper towel.)
9. A: _____ after she graduates?
B: I think she plans to look for a job in hotel management. (Emily is going to look for a job in hotel management after she graduates.)
10. A: _____ when the fire alarm sounded?
B: Ran down the stairs and out of the building. (I ran down the stairs and out of the building when the fire alarm sounded.)
11. A: _____ after school today?
B: Let's go to the shopping mall, okay? (I would like to go to the shopping mall after school today.)
12. A: _____?
B: Make this coin stand on edge. (I'm trying to make this coin stand on edge.)
13. A: _____?
B: He needs to hand in all of his homework. (Kevin needs to hand in all of his homework if he wants to pass advanced algebra.)
14. A: _____?
B: He's an airplane mechanic. (Nick repairs airplanes for a living.)
15. A: Did you say something to that man over there? Why does he look angry?
B: I accidentally ran into him and stepped on his foot.
A: _____?
B: Said something nasty. (He said something nasty when I bumped into him.)
A: _____?
B: Apologized. (I apologized.)
A: Then _____?
B: Walked away without saying a word. (Then he walked away without saying a word.)
A: What an unpleasant person!
B: I didn't mean to step on his foot. It was just an accident.

◇练习 14 WHAT KIND OF(表 5-7)

用 what kind of 提问。

1. A: What kind of music _____ do you like best?
B: Rock 'n roll.
2. A: _____ do you like to wear?
B: Jeans and a T-shirt.
3. A: _____ do you like best?
B: Fresh fruit and vegetables.
4. A: _____ do you like to read?
B: Romance novels.
5. A: _____ should I buy?
B: A four-door sedan with good gas mileage.
6. A: _____ does your country have?
B: It's a democratic republic.

7. A: _____ would you like to have?
 B: I'd like to have one that pays well, is interesting, and allows me to contribute to society. I've often thought I'd like to be a doctor or an architect.
8. A: _____ would you like to marry?
 B: Someone who is kind-hearted, loving, funny, serious, and steady.
9. A: _____ can we recycle?
 B: Paper, wood, plastic, and aluminum.

◇练习 15 WHOCH 与 WHAT 的比较(表 5-8)

用 which 或 what 完成下列疑问句。

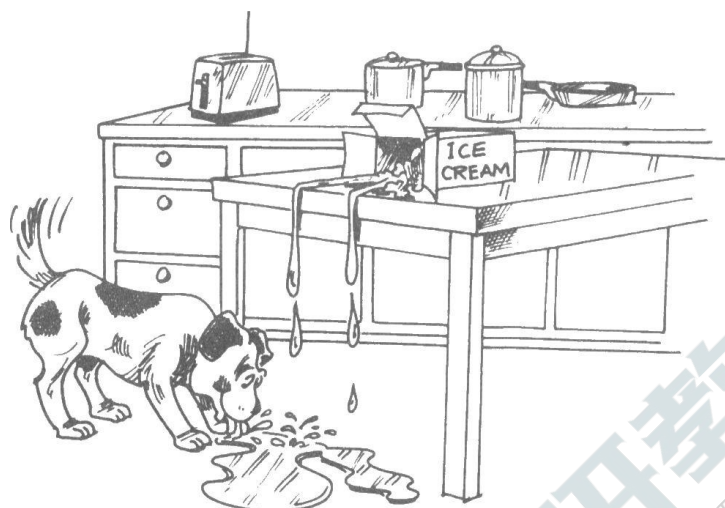
1. A: I have two pens. _____ Which one do you want?
 B: That one.
2. A: I'm hungry.
 B: So am I. _____ What are you going to order?
 A: I think I'll have the fish.
3. A: There are two good movies on TV tonight, a spy movie and a comedy. _____ one do you want to watch?
 B: Let's watch the spy movie.
4. A: Did you go out last night?
 B: No. I stayed home and watched TV.
 A: _____ did you watch?
 B: A movie.
5. A: These shoes are comfortable, and so are those shoes, _____ should I buy, these or those? I can't decide.
 B: These.
6. A: There are flights to Atlanta at 7:30 A.M. and 8:40 A.M. _____ one are you going to take?
 B: The 7:30 flight.
7. A: _____ does "huge" mean?
 B: "Very big."
8. A: I need some help.
 B: _____ can I do to help?
 A: Please hand me that bowl.
 B: Sure.
9. A: Would you please hand me a sharp knife?
 B: I'd be happy to. There are several in this drawer, _____ one would you like?
 A: That one.

◇练习 16 WHO 与 WHOSE 的比较(表 5-9)

用 who 或 whose 完成下列疑问句。

1. A: _____ Who is driving to the game tonight?
 B: Heidi is.
2. A: _____ Whose car are we taking to the game?
 B: Heidi's.
3. A: This notebook is mine. _____ is that? Is it yours?
 B: No, it's Sara's.
4. A: There's Ms. Adams. _____ is standing next to her?
 B: Mr. Wilson.
5. A: _____ was the first woman doctor in the United States?
 B: Elizabeth Blackwell, in 1849.
6. A: Okay. _____ forgot to put the ice cream back in the freezer?

B: I don't know. Don't look at me. It wasn't me.
 7. A: _____ motorcycle ran into the telephone pole?
 B: Bill's.
 8. A: _____ suitcase did you borrow for your trip?
 B: Andy's.



◇练习 17 WHO 与 WHOSE 的比较(表 5-9)

根据 B 的回答造句。

1. A: _____ Whose house is that?
 B: Pat's. (That's Pat's house.)
2. A: _____ Who's living in that house?
 B: Pat. (Pat is living in that house.)
3. A: _____
 B: Pedro's. (I borrowed Pedro's umbrella.)
4. A: _____
 B: Linda's. (I used Linda's book.)
5. A: _____
 B: Nick's. (Nick's book is on the table.)
6. A: _____
 B: Nick. (Nick is on the phone.)
7. A: _____
 B: Sue Smith. (That's Sue Smith.) She's a student in my class.
8. A: _____
 B: Sue's. (That's Sue's.) This one is mine.

◇练习 18 HOW 的用法(表 5-10)

用下表中的词语完成下列句子。

Busy	fresh	safe	soon	expensive	✓ hot	serious	well
------	-------	------	------	-----------	-------	---------	------

1. A: How hot does it get in Chicago in the summer?
 B: Very hot. It can get over 100°. (100° F = 37.8°C)
2. A: How _____ will dinner be ready? I'm really hungry.
 B: In just a few more minutes.
3. A: Look at that beautiful vase! Let's get it.
 B: How _____ is it?
 A: Oh my gosh! Never mind. We can't afford it.

4. A: Sorry to interrupt, Ted, but I need some help. How _____ are you today? Do you have time to read over this report?
B: Well, I'm always _____, but I'll make time to read it.
5. A: How _____ is To shi about becoming an astronomer?
B: He's very _____. He already knows more about the stars and planets than his high school teachers.
6. A: How _____ is a car with an airbag?
B: Well, there have been bad accidents where both drivers walked away without injuries because of airbags.
7. A: Tomatoes for sale! Hey, lady! Do you want to buy some tomatoes? Tomatoes for sale!
B: Hmmm. They look pretty good. How _____ are they?
A: What do you mean "How _____ are they?" Would I sell something that wasn't _____? They were picked from the field just this morning.
8. A: Do you know Jack Young?
B: Yes.
A: Oh? How _____ do you know him?
B: Very _____. He's one of my closest friends. Why?
A: He's applied for a job at my store.

◇练习 19 HOW FAR, HOW LONG, HOW OFTEN 的用法(表 5-11→5-13)

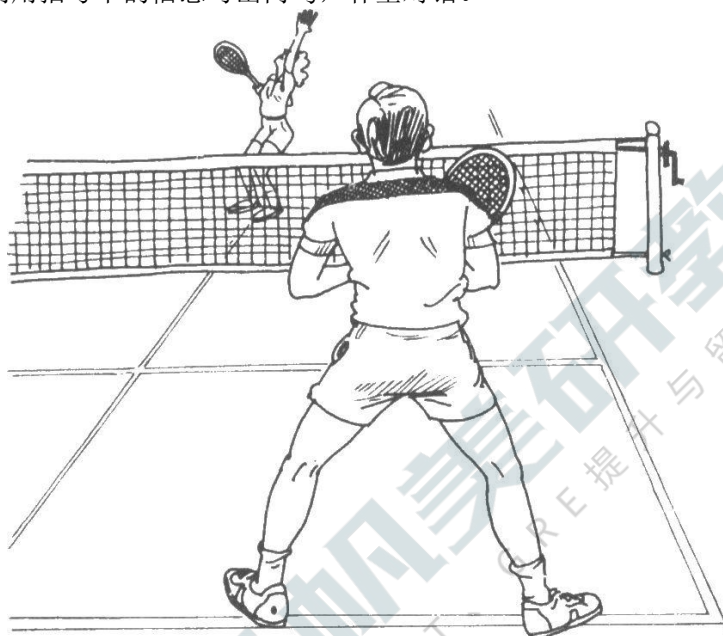
用 for, long 或 often 完成下列疑问句。

1. A: How _____ far _____ is it to the nearest police station?
B: Four blocks.
2. A: How _____ long _____ does it take you to get to work?
B: Forty-five minutes.
3. A: How _____ often _____ do you see your family?
B: Once a week.
4. A: How _____ is it to your office from home?
B: About twenty miles.
5. A: How _____ is it from here to the airport?
B: Ten kilometers.
6. A: How _____ do you see your dentist?
B: Every six months.
7. A: How _____ does it take to get to the airport?
B: Fifteen minutes.
8. A: How _____ above sea level is Denver, Colorado?
B: One mile. That's why it's called the Mile High City.
9. A: How _____ does it take to fly from Chicago to Denver?
B: About three hours.
10. A: How _____ does your department have meetings?
B: Twice a week.
11. A: How _____ did it take you to build your own boat?
B: Four years.
12. A: How _____ did you walk?
B: Two miles.
13. A: How _____ did you walk?
B: Two hours.
14. A: How _____ does the bus come?
B: Every two hours.
15. A: How _____ is it from here to the bus stop?
B: About two blocks.

16. A: How _____ does the ride downtown take?
 B: About 20 minutes.
 17. A: How _____ do you take the bus?
 B: Every day.

◇练习 20 阶段复习(表 5-1→5-13)

根据回答, 利用括号中的信息写出问句, 补全对话。



1. A: _____ What is Jack doing _____ ?
 B: He's playing tennis. (Jack is playing tennis.)
 2. A: _____ with?
 B: Anna. (He is playing tennis with Anna.)
 3. A: _____ ?
 B: Serving the ball. (Anna is serving the ball.)
 4. A: _____ in the air?
 B: A tennis ball. (She is throwing a tennis ball in the air.)
 5. A: _____ ?
 B: Rackets. (Anna and Jack are holding rackets.)
 6. A: _____ between them?
 B: A net. (A net is between them.)
 7. A: _____ ?
 B: On a tennis court. (They are on a tennis court.)
 8. A: _____ ?
 B: For an hour and a half. (They have been playing for an hour and a half.)
 9. A: _____ right now?
 B: Jack. (Jack is winning right now.)
 10. A: _____ the last game?
 B: Anna. (Anna won the last game.)

◇练习 21 阶段复习(表 5.1→5-13)

根据回答, 利用括号中的信息写出问句, 补全对话。

1. A: _____ When will the clean clothes be _____ dry?

- B: In about an hour. (The clean clothes will be dry in about an hour.)
2. A: _____ Saturday afternoon?
- B: I went to a baseball game. (I went to a baseball game Saturday afternoon.)
3. A: _____?
- B: The small paperback. (I bought the small paperback dictionary, not the hardcover one.)
4. A: _____ to clean your apartment before your parents visited?
- B: Four hours. (It took me four hours to clean my apartment before my parents visited.)
5. A: _____ the top shelf?.
- B: Stand on a chair. (You can reach the top shelf by standing on a chair.)
6. A: _____ the best?
- B: Whole wheat bread. (I like whole wheat bread the best.)
7. A: _____ the phone when it rang?
- B: Because I was in the middle of dinner with my family. (I didn't answer the phone when it rang because I was in the middle of dinner with my family.)
8. A: _____ to the show with?
- B: Maria and her sister. (I'm going to the show with Maria and her sister.)
9. A: _____ the radio?
- B: Eric. (Eric repaired the radio.)
10. A: _____ in your hometown in the winter?
- B: It's not bad. It rarely gets below zero. (It rarely gets below zero in my hometown in the winter.)

◇练习 22 反意疑问句(表 5-16)

用正确的动词完成下列反意疑问句。

1. 一班现在时

- You like strong coffee, don't you?
- David goes to Ames High School, _____ he?
- Kate and Sara live on Tree Road, _____ they?
- Jane has the keys to storeroom, _____ she?
- Jane's in her office, _____ she?
- You're a member of this class, _____ you?
- Jack doesn't have a car, _____ he?
- Ann isn't from California, _____ she?

2. 一般过去时

- Paul went to Florida, _____ he?
- You didn't talk to the boss, _____ you?
- Tom's parents weren't at home, _____ they?
- That was Pat's idea, _____ it?

3. 现在进行时, BE GOING TO 和过去进行时

- You're studying hard, _____ you?
- Tom isn't working at the bank, _____ he?
- It isn't going to rain today, _____ it?
- Susan and Kevin were waiting for us, _____ they?
- It wasn't raining, _____ it?

4. 现在完成时

- It has been warmer than usual, _____ it?
- You've had a lot of homework, _____ you?
- We haven't spent much time together, _____ we?
- Lisa has started her new job, _____ she?
- Bill hasn't finished his sales report yet, _____ he?

5. 情态动词

- a. You can answer these questions, _____ you?
- b. Kate won't tell anyone our secret, _____ she?
- c. Sam should come to the meeting, _____ he?
- d. Alice would like to come with us, _____ she?
- e. I don't have to come to the meeting, _____ I?
- f. Steve had to leave early, _____ he?

◇练习 23 反意疑问句(表 5-16)

给下列句子添加反意疑问句, 并做出预期的回答。

1. A: You've already seen that movie, haven't you?
B: Yes, I have.
2. A: Alex hasn't called, has he?
B: No, he hasn't.
3. A: You talked to Mike last night, didn't you?
B: Yes, I did.
4. A: You usually bring your lunch to school, _____
B: _____
5. A: Rita and Philip have been married for five years, _____
B: _____
6. A: Kathy has already finished her work, _____
B: _____
7. A: This isn't a hard exercise, _____
B: _____
8. A: We have to hand in our assignments today, _____
B: _____
9. A: Tony Wah lives in Los Angeles, _____
B: _____
10. A: You used to live in Los Angeles, _____
B: _____
11. A: Tomorrow isn't a holiday, _____
B: _____
12. A: Jack doesn't have to join the army, _____
B: _____
13. A: I don't have to be at the meeting, _____
B: _____
14. A: This isn't your book, _____
B: _____
15. A: Jack and Elizabeth were in class yesterday, _____
B: _____
16. A: Jennifer won't be here for dinner tonight, _____
B: _____

◇练习 24 错误分析(第五章)

改错。

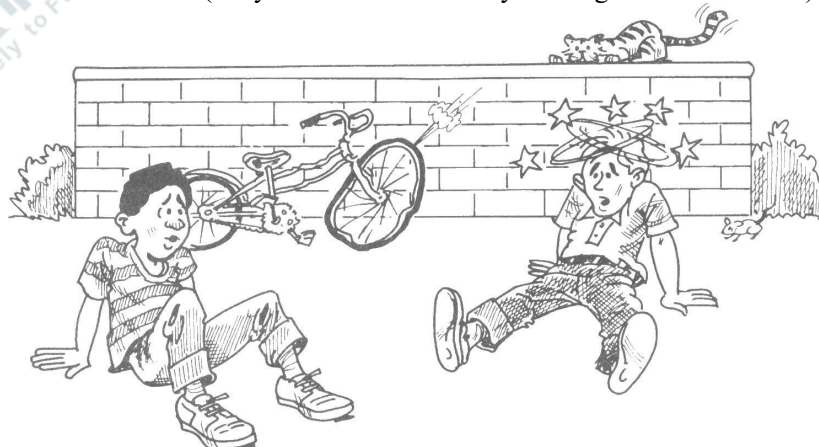
- Who
1. Whom saw the car accident?
 2. Why you didn't say "good-bye" when you left?
 3. How about ask Julie and Tim to come for dinner Friday night?
 4. What time class begins today?
 5. Why he have no shoes on his feet?
 6. Where you can get a drink of water in this building?

7. What kind of music you like best?
8. How long it takes to get to the beach from here?
9. She is working late tonight, doesn't she?
10. Who's glasses are those?
11. How much tall your father?
12. Who you talked to about registration for next term?
13. How about we go to see the baby elephant at the zoo tomorrow?
14. How far from here to the nearest gas station?

◇练习 25 复习：疑问句(第五章)

根据回答，利用括号中的信息完成下列问句。

1. A: _____ When are you going to buy _____ a new bicycle?
B: Next week. (I'm going to buy a new bicycle next week.)
2. A: _____ How are you going to pay _____ for it?
B: With my credit card. (I'm going to pay for it with my credit card.)
3. A: _____ your old bike?
B: Ten years. (I had my old bike for ten years.)
4. A: _____ your bike?
B: Four or five times a week. (I ride my bike four or five times a week.)
5. A: _____ to work?
B: I usually ride my bike. (I usually get to work by riding my bike.)
6. A: _____ your bike to work tomorrow?
B: Yes. (I'm going to ride my bike to work tomorrow.)
7. A: _____ your bike to work today?
B: I decided I would rather walk. (I didn't ride my bike to work today because I decided I would rather walk.)
8. A: _____ a comfortable seat?
B: Yes, it does. (My bike has a comfortable seat.)
9. A: _____ ?
B: A ten-speed. (I have a ten-speed bicycle.)
10. A: _____ his new bike?
B: Two weeks ago. (Jason got his new bike two weeks ago.)
11. A: _____ Jason's new bike?
B: Billy. (Billy broke Jason's new bike.)
12. A: _____ ?
B: The front wheel on Jason's new bike. (Billy broke the front wheel on Jason's new bike.)
13. A: _____ ?
B: Jason's new bike. (Jason's new bike is broken.)
14. A: _____ Jason's bike?
B: He ran into a brick wall. (Billy broke Jason's bike by running into a brick wall.)



15. A: _____ yours?
B: The blue one. (The blue bicycle is mine, not the red one.)
16. A: _____ your bicycle at night?
B: Inside my apartment. (I keep my bicycle inside my apartment at night.)
17. A: _____?
B: David. (That bike belongs to David.)
18. A: _____?
B: Suzanne's. (I borrowed Suzanne's bike.)
19. A: _____?
B: In the park. (Rita is in the park.)
20. A: _____?
B: Riding her bike. (She's riding her bike.)
21. A: _____ her bike yesterday?
B: 25 miles. (Rita rode her bike 25 miles¹⁶ yesterday.)
22. A: _____ "bicycle"?
B: B-I-C-Y-C-L-E. (You spell "bicycle" B-I-C-Y-C-L-E.)



云帆美研教育
专注 GMAT、GRE 提升与留学规划申请

¹⁶25 miles = approximately 40 kilometers/kilometres.

第六章 名词和代词

◇练习 1 预习：名词复数(表 6-2)

用下划线划出名词，必要时写出其正确的复数形式，不要改动其他的词。

1. Airplane^s have wings^s.
2. Child like to play on swing.
3. Some animal live in zoo.
4. Tree grow branch and leaf.
5. I saw three duck and several goose in a pond at the park.
6. Some baby are born with a few tooth.
7. I eat a lot of potato, bean, pea, and tomato.
8. Opinion are not the same as fact.
9. Each country has its own custom.
10. Government collect tax.

◇今练习 2 -S/ES 的发音(表 6-1)

写出正确的读音： / s / , / z / , / əz / , 并练习朗读这些单词。

1. dogs = dog + / z /
2. cups = cup + / s /
3. desks = desk + / s /
4. classes = class + / əz /
5. doors = door + / s /
6. radios = radio + / əz /
7. pages = page + / əz /
8. spoons = spoon + / s /
9. sheets = sheet + / s /
10. wishes = wish + / əz /
11. collars = collar + / əz /
12. shirts = shirt + / s /

◇练习 3 -SIES 的发音(表 6-1)

写出正确的读音： / s / , / z / , / əz / , 并练习朗读这些单词。

1. ear / z /
2. cat / s /
3. dish / s /
4. disk / s /
5. table / s /
6. lie / əz /
7. letter / əz /
8. group / əz /
9. nose / əz /
10. date / əz /
11. purse / əz /

12. fox/ /

◇练习 4 -SIES 的发音(表 6-1)

标出带下划线的单词的正确读音: / s / , / z / , / əz / , 并大声朗读这些句子。

1. My friends raise chickens and cows.
/z/ / / /
2. Boxes come in many different sizes.
/ / / /
3. The doctor checked the child's eyes, ears, and nose.
/ / / / /
4. Most businesses need to have computers.
/ / / /
5. Apples and oranges are my favorite fruits.
/ / / /
6. Sam's faxes have several mistakes.
/ // / /
7. We heard loud voices from the houses down the street.
/ / / /
8. Do you prefer to watch videos or go to movies on weekends?
/ / / / /

◇练习 5 名词复数(表 6-2)

写出正确的单数或复数形式。

- | 单数 | 复数 |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. <u>mouse</u> | <u>mice</u> |
| 2. <u>pocket</u> | <u>pockets</u> |
| 3. _____ | <u>teeth</u> |
| 4. _____ | <u>tomatoes</u> |
| 5. _____ | <u>fish/fishes</u> |
| 6. _____ | <u>women</u> |
| 7. <u>branch</u> | _____ |
| 8. <u>friend</u> | _____ |
| 9. <u>duty</u> | _____ |
| 10. <u>highway</u> | _____ |
| 11. <u>thief</u> | <u>pockets</u> |
| 12. <u>belief</u> | _____ |
| 13. <u>potato</u> | _____ |
| 14. <u>radio</u> | _____ |
| 15. <u>offspring</u> | _____ |
| 16. _____ | <u>children</u> |
| 17. <u>season</u> | _____ |
| 18. <u>custom</u> | _____ |
| 19. <u>business</u> | _____ |
| 20. _____ | <u>centuries</u> |
| 21. <u>occurrence</u> | _____ |
| 22. _____ | <u>phenomena</u> |
| 23. <u>sheep</u> | _____ |
| 24. _____ | <u>loaves</u> |
| 25. <u>glass</u> | _____ |
| 26. <u>problem</u> | _____ |
| 27. <u>family</u> | _____ |

28. wife _____
 29. shelf _____
 30. roof _____
 31. _____ feet
 32. woman _____

◇练习 6 名词复数(表 6-2)

写出下表中各单词的复数形式，并将其归入正确的类别。

✓ COW	baby	lily	husband	goose
sheep	rose	tomato	pea	child
apple	horse	daughter	cherry	
potato	daisy	strawberry	wife	
poppy	son	mouse	pear	
daffodil	grape	banana	bean	

- Common farm animals include _____ cows, _____
- Common vegetables include _____
- Common fruits include _____
- Common flowers include _____
- Family members include _____

◇练习 7 主语、动词和宾语(表 6-3)

找到并用下划线划出下列句子的主语(S)和谓语(V)，如果句子包含宾语，也找出来。

S V O

- Children play games.
- Fish swim.
- The baby doesn't like her new toys.
- Computers process information quickly.
- Dictionaries give definitions.
- Teachers correct tests.
- The cat found a mouse.
- The sun shines brightly.
- Water evaporates.
- Do snakes lay eggs?
- The child petted the dog.
- Did the phone ring?

◇练习 8 介宾结构(表 6-3 和 6-4)

找出下列句子中的介词(PREP)和介词宾语(O of PREP)，并用下划线划出来。

PREP o of PREP

- The man opened the door with his key.
- The little girl put her shoes on the wrong feet.
- The student added and subtracted with a calculator.
- My father fixes breakfast for my mother every morning.
- Librarians work in libraries.
- The bird flew into the window of the building.
- I do all my homework on a computer.
- The artist drew scenes of the beach in his notebook.

9. The children played in the backyard until dinner.
10. It rained for two weeks.
11. The painter splashed paint on the floor of his studio.
12. A man with dark glasses stood near the door.

◇练习 9 主语、动词、宾语和介词(表 6-3 和 6-4)

找出下列句子的主语(S)、谓语(V)、宾语(O)和介词短语(PP)，并用下划线划出来。

S V O

1. Bridges cross rivers.
2. A terrible earthquake occurred in Turkey.
3. Airplanes fly above the clouds.
4. Trucks carry large loads.
5. Rivers flow toward the sea.
6. Salespeople treat customers with courtesy.
7. Bacteria can cause diseases.
8. Clouds are floating across the sky.
9. The audience in the theater applauded the performers at the end of the show.
10. Helmets protect bicyclists from serious injuries.

◇练习 10 时间介词(表 6-5)

用正确的时间介词完成下列短语。

The Jacksons got married...

1. in the summer.
2. in June.
3. on June 17th.
4. on Saturday.
5. at 12:00 P.M.
6. at noon.
7. in 2000.
8. on Saturday afternoon.

Their baby was born...

9. at midnight.
10. at 12:00 A.M.
11. in the morning.
12. on April 12th.
13. in 2001.
14. in April.
15. on Wednesday.

◇练习 11 词序：宾语、地点和时间(表 6-6)

将下列短语按正确顺序排序，完成句子。只有一种正确的排序方案。

1. The dog chased 3 for several minutes.
1 a cat
2 around the room
2. The policeman stopped the driver
 at a busy intersection
 at midnight

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 3. My friends rented | _____ on the lake |
| | _____ last summer |
| | _____ a houseboat |
| 4. The children caught | _____ in the river |
| | _____ several fish |
| | _____ last weekend |
| 5. Our library shows | _____ free movies |
| | _____ every Saturday |
| | _____ in the children's section |
| 6. We ate | _____ at noon |
| | _____ our lunch |
| | _____ in the park |
| 7. The little girl always puts | _____ in bed |
| | _____ at night |
| | _____ her dolls |
| 8. The florist delivers | _____ every Monday |
| | _____ fresh flowers |
| | _____ to our office |
| 9. I bought | _____ at the corner store |
| | _____ a newspaper |
| | _____ after work yesterday |

◇练习 12 主谓一致(表 6-7)

用 is 或 are 完成句子。

1. These magazines _____ are _____ from the library.
2. The magazines on the table _____ for you.
3. Some people _____ wise.
4. Everyone _____ here.
5. Everybody _____ on time for class.
6. Each person in class _____ ready to begin.
7. Every teacher at this school _____ patient.
8. There _____ some money on the table.
9. There _____ some bills for you to pay.
10. This information about taxes _____ helpful.

◇练习 13 主谓一致(表 6-7)

选出正确的动词。

1. Bees make , makes honey.
2. Tomatoes needs, need lots of sunshine to grow.
3. Do, Does the people in your neighborhood help each other?
4. There is, are some people already in line for the movie.
5. The vegetables in the bowl on the table is, are fresh.
6. Everybody always comes, come to class on time.
7. Everyone in the class is, are paying attention.
8. The dishes on the counter is, are dirty.
9. Each person needs, need to bring identification.
10. The people next door goes, go hiking every weekend in the summer.
11. My father and mother works, work for the same company.
12. The pictures on the wall is, are of my father's family.

◇练习 14 形容词(表 6-8)

用形容词的反义词完成下列短语。

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. new cars | _____ old _____ cars |
| 2. a young man | an _____ man |
| 3. a _____ day | a warm day |
| 4. fast trains | _____ trains |
| 5. sad news | _____ news |
| 6. a good day | _____ day |
| 7. _____ hair | dry hair |
| 8. _____ exercises | hard exercises |
| 9. a soft pillow | a _____ pillow |
| 10. a _____ street | a wide street |
| 11. _____ plates | dirty plates |
| 12. _____ cups | full cups |
| 13. dangerous cities | _____ cities |
| 14. _____ children | quiet children |
| 15. shallow water | _____ water |
| 16. sweet candy | _____ candy |
| 17. _____ clothes | expensive clothes |
| 18. a dark color | a _____ color |
| 19. a heavy box | a _____ box |
| 20. a _____ place | a private place |
| 21. my left foot | my _____ foot |
| 22. the wrong answer | the _____ answer |
| 23. weak coffee | _____ coffee |
| 24. a _____ walk | a short walk |

◇练习 15 形容词和名词(表 6-8)

选出形容词，并用箭头标出它所描述的名词。

- Paul has a loud voice. (arrow from loud to voice)
- Sugar is sweet. (arrow from sweet to Sugar)
- The students took an easy test.
- Air is free.
- We ate some delicious food at a Mexican restaurant.
- An encyclopedia contains important facts about a wide variety of subjects.
- The child was sick.
- The sick child crawled into his warm bed and sipped hot tea.
- Our camping equipment looks old and rusty.
- The hungry bear found food in the garbage cans.
- My elderly father needs nursing care.
- May I offer you some fresh coffee and warm cookies?

◇练习 16 用作形容词的名词(表 6-9)

用斜体部分的信息完成下列句子。每个句子要有一个名词作形容词，置于另一个名词之

前。

1. Articles in newspapers are called _____ newspaper articles .
2. Numbers on pages are called _____ .
3. Money that is made of paper is called _____ .
4. Buildings with apartments are called _____ .
5. Disks for computers are called _____ .
6. Presents for birthdays are called _____ .
7. Gardens with roses are called _____ .
8. Chains for keys are called _____ .
9. Governments in cities are called _____ .
10. Ponds for ducks are called _____ .
11. Walls made of bricks are called _____ .
12. Cartons that hold eggs are called _____ .
13. Views of mountains are called _____ .
14. Knives that people carry in their pockets are called _____ .
15. Lights that control traffic are called _____ .
16. Tables used for outdoor picnics are called _____ .
17. Pies that are made with apples are called _____ .
18. Helmets for bicycle riders are called _____ .
19. Cabins made out of logs are called _____ .
20. Bridges made from steel are called _____ .

◇练习 17 复习：名词(表 6-2→6-9)

这些句子中有些名词用得不正确，判断哪些名词应该用复数，然后加以改正，不要改动句中其他的词。

- Find each noun.
 - Decide if the noun should be plural.
 - Write the correct plural form as necessary.
- Do not change any other words in the sentences.

1. The mountain ^ in Chile are beautiful.
2. Cat hunt mouse.
3. Mosquito are small insect.
4. Everyone has eyelash.
5. Goose are larger than duck.
6. What are your favorite radio program?
7. Forest sometimes have fire. Forest fire endanger wild animal.
8. Sharp kitchen knife can be dangerous weapon.
9. Good telephone manner are important.
10. I bought two theater ticket for the Thursday evening's performance of A Doll's House.
11. Our daily life have changed in many way in the past one hundred year. We no longer need to use oil lamp or candle in our house, raise our own chicken, or build daily fire for cooking.
12. There are approximately 250,000 different kind of flower in the world.
13. Newspaper reporter have high-pressure job.
14. I applied to several foreign university because I want to study abroad next year.
15. "Fed lives with three other university student.
16. The offspring of animal like horse, zebra, and deer can run soon after they are born.
17. Science student do laboratory experiment in their class.
18. Housefly are troublesome pest. They carry germ.
19. I like to read magazine article about true personal experience.
20. Many modern device require battery to work. Some flashlight, pocket calculator, portable radio, tape recorder, and many kind of toy need battery.



GOOSE

· Subject (s)

- Object of a verb (o of v)

- Object of a preposition (o of PREP)

 O of V

1. The teacher helped me with the lesson.

S

O of PREP

2. I carry a dictionary with me at all times.

3. Mr. Fong has a computer. He uses it for many things. It helps him in many ways.

4. Jessica went to Hawaii with Ann and me. We like her, and she likes us. We had a good time with her.

5. Mike had dirty socks. He washed them in the kitchen sink and hung them to dry in front of the window. They dried quickly.

6. Joseph and I are close friends. No bad feelings will ever come between him and me. He and I share a strong bond of friendship.

6-10)

1. [Janet] had [a green apple.]

1. [Janet] had [a green apple.] (She) ate (it) after class.

2. Betsy called this morning. John spoke to her.

3. Nick and Rob are at the market. They are buying fresh vegetables.

4. Eric took some phone messages for Karen. They're on a pad of yellow paper in the kitchen.

5. When Louie called, Alice talked to him. He asked her for a date. She accepted.

6. Jane wrote a letter to Mr. and Mrs. Moore. She mailed it to them yesterday. They should get her letter on Friday.

✓练习 20 人称代词

选出正确的代词。

1. You can ride with Jennifer and I, (me)

2. Did you see Mark? *He, Him* was waiting in your office to talk to you.

3. I saw Rob a few minutes ago. I passed Sara and *he, him* on the steps of the classroom building.

4. Nick used to work in his father's store, but his father and *he, him* had a serious disagreement. Nick left and started his own business.
5. When the doctor came into the room, I asked *she, her* a question.
6. The doctor was very helpful. *She, Her* answered all of my questions.
7. Prof. Molina left a message for you and *I, me. He, Him* needs to see we, us.
8. Emily is a good basketball player. I watch Betsy and *she, her* carefully during games. *They, Them* are the best players.
9. Once my little sister and *I, me* were home alone. When our parents returned, a valuable vase was broken. *They, Them* blamed *we, us* for the broken vase, but in truth the cat had broken it, them. *We, Us* got in trouble with *they, them* because of the cat.
10. Take these secret documents and destroy *it, them*.
11. Ron invited Mary and *I, me* to have dinner with *he, him*.
12. Maureen likes movies. Ron and *she, her* go to the movies every chance they get.
13. Tom and *I, me* both want to marry Ann. She has to choose between he and I, him and me.
14. I talked to Jennifer and Mike. I told *they, them* about the surprise birthday party for Lizzy. *They, Them* won't tell *she, her* about *it, them*. *She, Her* is really going to be surprised!
15. Ted invited *I, me* to go to the game with *he, him*.
16. Ted invited Adam and *I, me* to go to the game with Tina and *he, him*.
17. My brother always teases *I, me* and my sister when *he, him* comes home from college. Our parents laugh and tell *he, him* to quit picking on *we, us*. *We, Us* love the attention. *We, Us* miss *he, him* when *he, him* returns to school.

◇练习 21 名词所有格(表 6-11)

根据第一句中的斜体名词在第二句中写出名词所有格，特别注意加撇号(')的位置。

1. I have one friend. My *friend's* name is Paul.
2. I have two friends. My *friends'* names are Paul and Kevin.
3. I have one son. My _____ name is Ryan.
4. I have two sons. My _____ names are Ryan and Scott.
5. I have one baby. My _____ name is Joy.
6. I have two babies. My _____ names are Joy and Erica.
7. I have one child. My _____ name is Anna.
8. I have two children. My _____ names are Anna and Keith.
9. I know one person. This _____ name is Nick.
10. I know several people. These _____ names are Nick, Karen, and Rita.
11. I have one teacher. My _____ name is Ms. West.
12. I have two teachers. My _____ names are Ms. West and Mr. Fox.
13. I know a man. This _____ name is Alan Burns.
14. I know two men. These _____ names are Alan Burns and Joe Lee.
15. We live on the earth. The _____ surface is seventy percent water.

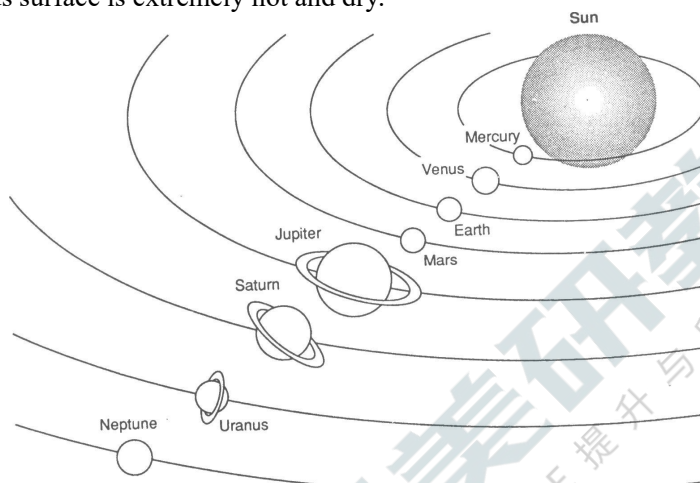
◇练习 22 名词所有格(表 6-11)

根据需要写出名词所有格、

Dan's

1. I met ~~Dan~~ sister yesterday.
2. I met Dan and his sister yesterday, ok (no change)
3. I know Jack roommates.
4. I know Jack well. He's a good friend of mine.
5. I have one roommate. My roommate desk is always messy.
6. You have two roommates. Your roommates desks are always neat.
7. Jo Ann and Betty are sisters.
8. Jo Ann is Betty sister. My sister name is Sonya.

9. My name is Richard. I have two sisters. My sisters names are Jo Ann and Betty.
 10. There is an old saying: "A woman work is never done."
 11. I read a book about the changes in women roles and men roles in modern society.
 12. Jupiter is the largest planet in our solar system. We cannot see Jupiter surface from the earth because thick clouds surround the planet.
 13. Mercury is the closest planet to the sun. Mercury atmosphere is extremely hot and dry.
 14. Mars¹⁷ surface has some of the same characteristics as Earth surface, but Mars could not support life as we know it on Earth. The plants and animals that live on Earth could not live on any of the other planets in our solar system.
 15. Venus is sometimes called Earth twin because the two planets are almost the same size. But like Mars, Venus surface is extremely hot and dry.



16. The planets English names come from ancient Roman mythology. For example, Mars was the name of the god of war in ancient Rome. Jupiter was the king of the gods. Mercury, who was Jupiter son, was the messenger of the gods. Venus was the goddess of love, beauty, and creativity. Venus son was named Cupid, the god of love and desire.

◇练习 23 名词性物主代词与形容词性物主代词的比较(表 6-12)

用名词性物主代词或形容词性物主代词指代斜体词完成下列句子。

1. A: Can I look at *your* grammar book?
 B: Why? You have your own¹⁸ book. You have yours, and I have mine.
 2. A: Anna wants to look at *your* grammar book.
 B: Why? She has her own book. She has hers, and I have mine.
 3. A: Tom wants to look at *your* grammar book.
 B: Why? He has his own book. He has his, and I have mine.
 4. A: Tom and I want to look at *your* grammar book.
 B: Why? You have your own books. You have yours, and I have mine.
 5. A: Tom and Anna want to look at *our* grammar books.

¹⁷如果一个单数名词以.，结尾，那么有两种可能的所有格形式，见以下各例：

单数名词 所有格形式

James I know James' brother. 或 I know James's brother.

Chris Chris' car is red. 或 Chris's car is red.

Carlos Carlos' last name is Rivera. 或 Carlos's last name is Rivera

¹⁸own 总是跟在形容词性物主代词后面，如：my own, your own, their own. 单词 own 表示没有其他人有同样的东西。所有权只属于我(my own book), 属于你(your own book), 属于他们(their own books), 属于我们(our own books), 等等。

B: Why? They have _____ own books. We have _____ own books. They have _____, and we have _____.

◇练习 24 名词性物主代词与形容词性物主代词的比较(表 6-12)

用名词性物主代词或形容词性物主代词指代斜体词完成下列句子。

1. Sara asked her mother for permission to go to a movie.
2. I don't need to borrow your bicycle. Sara loaned me hers.
3. Ted and I are roommates, my apartment is small.
4. Brian and Louie have a huge apartment, but we don't, ours is small.
5. You can find my keys in the top drawer of the desk.
6. The keys in the drawer belong to you. I have mine in my pocket. You should look in the drawer for mine.
7. Tom and Paul talked about my experiences in the wilderness areas of Canada. I've had a lot of interesting experiences in the wilderness, but nothing to compare with mine.
8. I know Eric well. He is a good friend of mine. You know him, too, don't you? Isn't he a friend of mine, too?
9. Omar, my wife and I would like to introduce you to a good friend of mine. His name is Dan Lightfeather.

◇练习 25 反身代词(表 6-13)

用反身代词指代斜体词完成下列句子。

1. I enjoyed myself at Disney World.
2. Paul enjoyed himself.
3. Paul and I enjoyed ourselves.
4. Hi, Emily! Did you enjoy yourself?
5. Hi, Emily and Dan! Did you enjoy yourselves?
6. Jessica enjoyed herself.
7. Jessica and Paul enjoyed themselves.
8. Joe helped himself to more dessert.
9. Jane helped herself.
10. I helped myself.
11. We helped ourselves.
12. They helped themselves.
13. The new teacher introduced himself to the students.
14. My friends and I introduced ourselves.
15. The assistant teacher and school nurse introduced themselves.
16. Ann introduced herself.
17. Jack introduced himself.
18. The other teachers introduced themselves.
19. Did you introduce yourself?

◇练习 26 反身代词(表 6-13)

从下表中选择合适的表达完成下列句子。务必使用正确的反身代词。

be proud of	help	talk to
blame	introduce	teach
✓ cut	take care of	work for
enjoy		

1. Ouch! I just cut myself with a knife.
2. You graduated with top honors in your class. Congratulations, Anna! You must _____.
3. John often _____. People think there is more than one person in the room, but there isn't. It's only John.
4. When I was young, I _____ to ride a bicycle. Then I taught the other children in the neighborhood.
5. Sheri _____ for the accident, but it wasn't her fault. There was nothing she could have done when the car came toward her.
6. Eat! Eat! There's lots more pizza in the oven. Please, all of you, _____.
7. Adam seldom gets sick because he eats nourishing food and exercises regularly. He _____.
8. They went to a party last night. Let's ask them if they _____.
9. My father never worked for anyone. He always owned his own company. He _____ throughout his entire adult life.
10. At the beginning of each term, my students walk around the room and greet each other. When they finish, they _____ to the whole class.

◇练习 27 复习：代词(表 6-10→6-13)

选出正确的代词。

1. Nick invited I, me to go to dinner with he, him.
2. Sam and you should be proud of *yourself*, *yourselves*. The two of you did a good job.
3. The room was almost empty. The only furniture was one table. The table stood by *it*, *itself* in one corner.
4. The bird returned to *its*, *it's** nest to feed its, its offspring.
5. Nick has his tennis racket, and Ann has *her*, *hers*, *her's*.¹⁹
6. Where's Eric? I have some good news for Joe and *he*, *him*, *his*, *himself*.
7. Don't listen to Greg. You need to think for *yourself*, *yourselves*, Jane. It's *you*, *your*, *your's** life.
8. We all have *us*, *our*, *ours* own ideas about how to live *our*, *ours*, *our's** lives.
9. You have your beliefs, and we have *our*, *ours*.
10. People usually enjoy *themselves*, *themselves*, *themselves*²⁰ at family gatherings.
11. History repeats *himself*, *herself*, *itself*.
12. David didn't need my help. He finished the work by *him*, *himself*, *his*, *his self*.

◇练习 28 复习：代词(表 6-10→6-13)

用代词指代斜体词完成下列句子。

1. Tom is wearing a bandage on his arm. He hurt himself while he was repairing the roof. I'll help him with the roof later.

¹⁹物主代词不用撇号。注意, its 是名词性物主代词; it's 是 it is 的缩写。同时注意 her's, your's 和 our's 不符合语法。

²⁰ themselves 和 theirselves 都不是真实存在的英语单词, 只有 themselves 才是正确的反身代词形式。

◆练习 29 OTHER 的单数(表 6-14)

4. Two cups: one



5. Six spoons: one _____

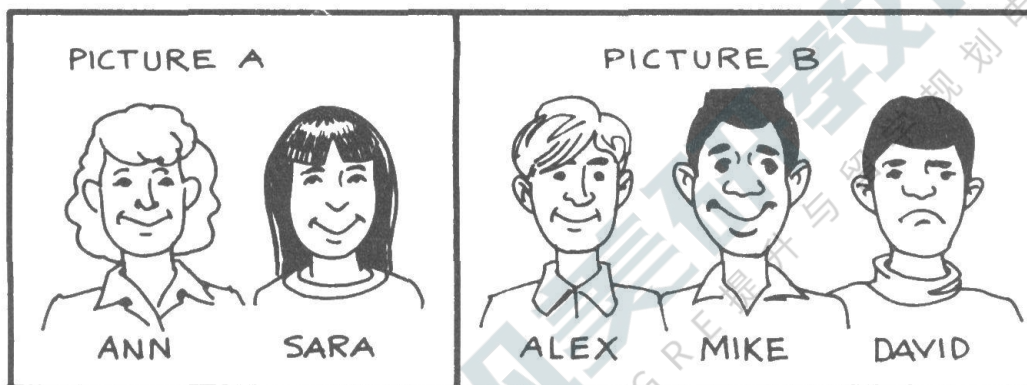
◇练习 30 OTHER 的单数(表 6-14)

用 another 或 the other 完成下列句子。

1. There are many kinds of animals in the world. The elephant is one kind. The tiger is another .

2. There are two colors on this page. One is white. The other is black.

3. There are two women in Picture A. One is Ann. _____ is Sara.



4. There are three men in Picture B. One is Alex. _____ one is Mike.

5. In Picture B, Alex and Mike are smiling, _____ man looks sad.

6. There are three men in Picture B. All three have common first names. One is named Alex.

a. _____ is named David.

b. The name of _____ one is Mike.

7. There are many common English names for men. Alex is one.

a. Mike is _____.

b. David is _____.

c. John is _____ common name.

d. Joe is _____.

e. What is _____ common English name for a man?

8. Alex's bicycle was run over by a truck and destroyed. He needs to get _____ one.

9. The Smiths have two bicycles. One belongs to Mr. Smith. _____ bike belongs to Mrs. Smith.

10. There are three books on my desk. Two of them are dictionaries. _____ one is a telephone directory.

11. The puppy chewed up my telephone directory, so I went to the telephone company to get _____ phone book.

◇练习 31 OTHER 的复数(表 6-15)

用 the other, the others, other 或 others 完成下列句子。

1. There are four common nicknames for "Robert." One is "Bob." Another is "Bobby." The others are "Robbie" and "Rob."

2. There are five English vowels. One is "a." Another is "e." _____ are "i," "o," and "u."

3. There are many consonants in English. The letters "b" and "c" are consonants. _____ are "d, f," and "g."
4. Some people are tall, and _____ are short. Some people are neither tall nor short.
5. Some people are tall, and _____ people are short.
6. Some animals are huge. _____ are tiny.
7. Some animals are huge. _____ animals are tiny.
8. Some ships are fueled by petroleum, _____ are propelled by atomic power.
9. Some boats are used for pleasure, _____ boats are used for commercial fishing.
10. Of the twenty students in the class, eighteen passed the exam. _____ failed.
11. Out of the twenty students in the class, only two failed the exam. _____ students passed.
12. Our physical education class was divided into two groups. Half of the students stayed inside and played basketball, _____ students went outside and played soccer.
13. The telephone and the automobile are twentieth-century inventions. _____ are the computer, television, and the airplane. Can you name _____ twentieth-century inventions?
14. If you really hate your job, why don't you look for _____ one? You don't have to be a dishwasher all your life. There are lots of _____ jobs in the world.
15. An automobile consists of many parts. The motor is one, and the steering wheel is _____. _____ parts are the brakes, the trunk, and the fuel tank.
16. The students in our class had two choices: basketball or soccer. Half of the students played basketball, _____ played soccer.
17. Here, children. I have two coins. One is for you, Tommy. _____ is for you, Jimmy.

◇练习 32 总结: OTHER 的各种形式(表 6-14→6-16)

选出正确选项完成下列句子。

Example: Copper is one kind of metal. Silver is _____.

- (A) another B. the other C. the others D. others E. other

- Summer is one season. Spring is _____.
A. another B. the other C. the others D. others E. other
- There are four seasons. Summer is one. _____ are winter, fall, and spring.
A. Another B. The other C. The others D. Others E. Other
- What's your favorite season? Some people like spring the best. _____ think fall is the nicest season.
A. Another B. The other C. The others D. Others E. Other
- My eyes are different colors. One eye is gray, and _____ is green.
A. another B. the other C. the others D. others E. other
- There are two reasons not to buy that piece of furniture. One is that it's expensive. _____ is that it's not well made.
A. Another B. The other C. The others D. Others E. Other
- Alex failed his English exam, but his teacher is going to give him _____ chance to pass it.
A. another B. the other C. the others D. others E. other
- Some people drink tea in the morning. _____ have coffee. I prefer fruit juice.
A. Another B. The other C. The others D. Others E. Other
- There are five digits in the number 20,000. One digit is a 2. _____ digits are all

zeroes.

- A. Another B. The other C. The others D. Others E. Other

◇练习 33 阶段复习(第六章)

选出正确答案。

1. The people at the market is, are friendly.
2. How many potato, potatoes should I cook for dinner tonight?
3. I wanted to be alone, so I worked myself, by myself
4. The twins were born in, on December 25 on, at midnight.
5. All the workers at our company get four-week, four-weeks vacations.
6. The bus driver waited for we, us at the bus stop.
7. Can you tell a good book by its, it's title?
8. This is our, ours dessert, and that is your, yours.
9. Jack has so much confidence. He really believes in him, himself
10. These bananas are OK, but the other, the others were better.

◇练习 34 阶段复习(第六章)

改错。

1. Look at those beautiful mountains!
2. The children played on Saturday afternoon at the park a game.
3. There are two horse, several sheeps, and a cow in the farmers field.
4. The owner of the store is busy in the moment.
5. The teacher met her's students at the park after school.
6. Everyone want peace in the world.
7. I grew up in a city very large.
8. This apple tastes sour. Here's some more, so let's try the other one.
9. Some tree lose their leaf in the winter.
10. I am going to wear my shirt is brown to the party.
11. I hurt me self at work last week.
12. Our neighbors invited my friend and I to visit they.
13. My husband boss works for twelve hour every days.
14. The students couldn't find they're books.
15. I always read magazines articles while I'm in the waiting room at my dentists office.

第七章 情态动词

◇练习 1 预习：情态动词(第七章)

加粗的斜体词是情态动词。阅读文章，然后回答问题。

- (1) Everyone in my family **has to** contribute to keeping order in our house. My parents
 - (2) assign chores to my brother Joe and me. We **must** do these tasks every day. Sometimes if
 - (3) one of us is busy and can't do a chore, the other one may take care of it.
 - (4) For example, last Friday it was Joe's turn to wash the dishes after dinner. He said he
 - (5) **couldn't** wash them because he had to hurry to school for a basketball game. Joe asked me
 - (6) "Will you do the dishes for me, please? I promise to do them for you tomorrow when it's
 - (7) your turn. I've got to get to school for the game." I reluctantly agreed to do Joe's chore
 - (8) and washed the dishes after dinner.
 - (9) But the next night, Joe "forgot" that we had traded days. When I reminded him to
 - (10) wash the dishes, he said, "Who, me? It's not my turn. You have to do the dishes tonight.
 - (11) It's your turn."
 - (12) I think I'd better write our agreement down when I do my brother Joe's chores, and I
 - (13) **ought to** give him a copy of the agreement. Joe has a short memory, especially if he has
- to
- (14) wash dishes or take out the
 - (15) garbage. I should write
 - (16) everything down. In fact, I
 - (17) might write out a weekly
 - (18) schedule. Then, we could
 - (19) write our names in and change
 - (20) assignments if necessary. That
 - (21) **ought to** solve the problem.
 - (22) I **must** remember to do that.



下列句子中的情态动词是什么意思?选出意思最相近的选项。

情 态 动 词

含义

- | | | | | |
|--|----------|------------|-----------------|------------|
| (1) Everyone has to contribute... | must | should | is able to | might |
| (3) ... and can't do a chore... | must not | should not | is not able to | might not |
| (3) ... the other one may take care of it. | | must | should | is able to |
| (5) He couldn't wash them... | must not | should not | was not able to | might not |
| (7) I've got to get to school... | must | should | are able to | might |
| (10) You have to do the dishes... | must | should | are able to | might |
| (12) I think I'd better write... | must | should | am able to | might |
| (13) ... and I ought to give him... | must | should | am able to | may |
| (13) ... especially if he has to... | must | should | is able to | may |
| (17) In fact, I might write out... | must | should | am able to | may |
| (21) ...That ought to solve the problem. | | must | should | is able to |

◇练习 2 情态动词的形式(表 7-1)

在必要的地方加 to, 如果没有必要加 to 则写Ø。

1. Mr. Alvarez spilled tea on his shirt. He must Ø change clothes before dinner.

2. Mr. Alvarez has to change his shirt before dinner.
3. Tom and I might play tennis after work tomorrow.
4. You had better see a doctor.
5. Would you speak more slowly, please?
6. The students have take a test next Friday.
7. Everyone should pay attention to local politics.
8. Everyone ought participate in local government.
9. May I please have the salt and pepper? Thanks.
10. You'd better not come to the meeting late. The boss will be angry if you're late.
11. I've had a lot of trouble sleeping the last few nights. I've got get a good night's sleep! I can barely stay awake in class.
12. We may go to Argentina for our vacation.
13. Will you please mail this letter for me?

◇练习3 表示能力 (表 7-2)

从括号中选择一个词完成下列句子。

1. (giraffe, zebra) A zebra can't stretch its neck to reach the tops of trees.
2. (bee, cat) A single cat can kill a thousand mice in a year.
3. (Rabbits, Elephants) Elephants can crush small trees under their huge feet.
4. (Monkeys, Chickens) Monkeys can climb trees with ease.
5. (ducks, camels) Did you know that camels can survive seventeen days without any water at all?
6. (cow, bull) One cow can produce as much as 8,500 lbs. (3,860 kgs) of milk in a year.
7. (horse, cat) A person can sit on a horse without hurting it.
8. (donkey, snake) A snake can carry heavy loads on its back.
9. (squirrel, polar bear) A squirrel can stay high up in the trees for weeks, leaping from branch to branch.
10. (people, ants) Most ants can lift objects that are ten times heavier than their own bodies.
11. (baby, student) When I was a student, I could sleep most of the day.
12. (men, women) One hundred years ago, men couldn't vote in many countries, but now they can.

◇练习4 表示能力和可能 (表 7-2 和 7-3)

用 can/can't, may/might 或 may not/might not 完成下列句子。

1. Jessica hasn't made up her mind about where to go to school. She may/might attend Duke University, or she may not/might not. She just doesn't know yet.
2. Alice is a runner. She likes to compete, but two days ago she broke her ankle when she fell. She can't run in the race tomorrow.
3. A: Carol's in New York now. Is she going to return to school in Chicago in September?
B: It depends. If she finds a job in New York, she'll stay there this fall. Who knows? She may stay there through the winter and spring, too. If she likes her job, she want to return to school in Chicago next year at all. We'll have to wait and see.
4. A: Do you remember a famous actor named Basil Rathbone? Is he still making movies?
B: I think he is be dead.
5. Jodie finished law school last month, but she hasn't taken her exams yet. She can't practice law until she passes them.
6. Jack and Jenny haven't decided what kind of wedding to have. They may have a large, formal celebration, or they may have a small, quiet ceremony.
7. My roommate is planning to go sailing tomorrow, but he needs at least one other person to help him sail the boat. If no one is available, he may take it out.

◇练习5 表示可能 (表 7-3)

用括号中的词改写下列句子。

1. Maybe I will take a nap. (might)→ I might take a nap
2. She might be sick. (maybe)→ Maybe she is sick.
3. There may be time later. (maybe)→ _____
4. Maybe our team will win. (may)→ _____
5. You may be right. (might)→ _____
6. Maybe we'll hear soon. (may)→ _____
7. It might rain. (may)→ _____
8. Maybe it will snow. (might)→ _____
9. She might come tomorrow. (maybe)→ _____
10. She might be at home right now. (maybe)→ _____

◇练习 6 表示可能和许可 (表 7-3)

判断情态动词的含义是可能还是许可。

- | 情态动词 | 含义 |
|--|------------------------|
| 1. Both of my grandparents are retired. They like to travel.
They may travel overseas next summer. | possibility permission |
| 2. They may take their two grandchildren with them. | possibility permission |
| 3. A: Yes, Tommy, you may play outdoors until dinner.
B: Okay, Mom. | possibility permission |
| 4. A: What's wrong with the dog's foot?
B: He may have an infection. | possibility permission |
| 5. The dog has an infected foot. He might need to go to the vet. | possibility permission |
| 6. A: Susie, no, you can't stay overnight at your friend's house tonight.
B: Then how about my friend staying overnight here?
A: No. | possibility permission |
| 7. It may be hot and humid all weekend. | possibility permission |
| 8. Johnny, you may not stay up until midnight. Your bedtime is nine o'clock. | possibility permission |
| 9. I might not stay up to watch the end of the game on TV. I'm sleepy. | possibility permission |
| 10. Children, you cannot go out now. It's dark outside, and dinner is ready. | possibility permission |

◇练习 7 COULD 的不同含义 (表 7-2 和 7-4)

选出与斜体动词意思相同的表达。

1. How long will it take you to paint two small rooms? "I'm not sure. If the job is not complicated, I could finish by Thursday."
a. was able to finish ⑥. might finish
2. I think I'll take my umbrella. It could rain today.
a. was able to rain b. might rain
3. My niece could read by the time she was four years old.
a. was able to read b. might read
4. You could see that the little boy was unhappy because of the sad expression in his eyes.
a. were able to see b. might see
5. Sally is in excellent condition. I think she could win the 10-kilometer race on Saturday.
a. was able to win b. might win
6. John couldn't drive for a month because of a broken ankle, but now it's healed.
a. wasn't able to drive b. might not drive
7. Jane could arrive before dinner, but I don't really expect her until nine or later.
a. was able to arrive b. might arrive

8. John was in an accident, but he couldn't remember how he had hurt himself.
a. wasn't able to remember b. might not remember

◇练习 8 委婉请求 (表 7-5 和 17-6)

1. A: This desk is too heavy for me. May, can you help me lift it?
B: Sure. No problem.
2. A: Ms. Milano, way, will I be excused from class early today? I have a doctor's appointment.
B: Yes. You may leave early. That would be fine.
3. A: I'm having trouble with this word processor. Would, May you show me how to set the margins one more time?
B: Of course.
4. A: Andrew, would, could I speak to you for a minute?
B: Sure. What's up?
5. A: I can't meet David's plane tonight. Can, May you pick him up?
B: Sorry. I have to work tonight. Call Uncle Frank. Maybe he can pick David up.
6. A: Could, May you please take these letters to the post office before noon?
B: I'd be happy to, sir. Hmmm. It's almost eleven-thirty. May, Will I leave for the post office now and then go to lunch early?
A: That would be fine.
7. A: Marilyn, are you feeling okay? Would, Can I get you something?
B: May, Will you get me a glass of water, please?
A: Right away.
8. A: Darn these medicine bottles! I can never get the cap off!.
B: Would, Could I open that for you?
A: Thanks. I'd really appreciate it.

◇练习 9 委婉请求 (表 7-5 和 7-6)

1. It's cold in here. you please close the door?
___ May ___ ☒ Could ___ ☒ Can ___ ☒ Would
2. Oh, my pen's out of ink. ___ I borrow yours?
___ Could ___ May ___ Will ___ Can
3. I can't lift this box by myself. ___ you help me carry it?
___ Would ___ Could ___ May ___ Will
4. Hello. ___ I help you find something in the store?
___ Can ___ Would ___ May ___ Could
5. The store closes in ten minutes. ___ you please bring all your purchases to the counter?
___ Will ___ May ___ Can ___ Could

◇练习 10 表示建议 (表 7-7)

用 should/shouldn't 及下表中的表达或你自己的语言完成下列句子。

be cruel to animals	give too much homework
always be on time for an appointment	miss any classes
/drive a long distance	quit
exceed the speed limit	throw trash out of your car window

1. If you are tired, you Shouldn't drive a lona distance
2. Cigarette smoking is dangerous to your health. You _____
3. A good driver _____
4. A teacher _____
5. A student _____
6. Animals have feelings, too. You _____
7. It is important to be punctual. You _____

8. Littering is against the law, You _____



◇练习 11 表示建议 (表 7-7)

从下表中选择你认为最佳的答案完成下列句子。

call the landlord and complain	✓ soak it in cold water
eat it	take it back to the store
find a new girlfriend	try to fix it herself
get a job	✓ wash it in hot water
send it back to the kitchen	

- A: I cut my finger. I got blood on my shirt. My finger is okay, but I'm worried about my shirt. What should I do?
 B: You should soak it in cold water
 You shouldn't soak it in cold water
- A: Ann bought a new tape recorder. After two days, it stopped working. What should she do?
 B: She ought to _____
 She shouldn't _____
- A: I don't have any money. I'm broke and can't pay my rent. I don't have enough money to pay my bills. What should I do?
 B: You'd better _____
- A: There's no hot water in my apartment. What should I do?
 B: You should _____
- A: I asked Mary to marry me five times. She said no every time. What should I do?
 B: Maybe you should _____
- A: Helen is in a restaurant. She has ordered a salad. There's a big dead fly in it. What should she do?
 B: She should _____
 She shouldn't _____

◇练习 12 表示建议 (表 7-7 和 7-8)

选出正确的选项完成下列句子。

- Danny doesn't feel well. He _____ see a doctor.
 A. should B. ought C. had
- Danny doesn't feel well. He _____ better see a doctor.
 A. should B. ought C. had
- Danny doesn't feel well. He _____ to see a doctor.
 A. should B. ought C. had
- It's extremely warm in here. We _____ open some windows.
 A. should B. ought C. had
- It's really cold in here. We _____ to close some windows.

- A. should B. ought C. had
6. There's a police car behind us. You _____ better slow down!
7. People who use public parks _____ clean up after themselves.
A. should B. ought C. had
8. I have no money left in my bank account. I _____ better stop charging things on my credit card.
A. should B. ought C. had
9. It's going to be a formal dinner and dance. You _____ to change clothes.
10. This library book is overdue. I _____ better return it today.
A. should B. ought C. had

◇练习 13 表示必要(表 7-9)

选出正确的选项完成下列句子。

1. I _____ to wash the dishes after dinner last night. It was my turn.
A. have B. has C. had D. must
2. Bye! I'm leaving now. I _____ got to take this package to the post office.
A. have B. has C. had D. must
3. I know you didn't mean what you said. You _____ think before you speak!
A. have B. has C. had D. must
4. Yesterday everyone in the office _____ to leave the building for a fire drill. I'm glad it wasn't a real fire.
A. have B. has C. had D. must
5. Janet _____ to take an educational psychology course next semester. It's a required course.
A. have B. has C. had D. must
6. Pete, Chris, and Anna _____ to stay after class this afternoon. Professor Irwin wants them to help him grade papers.
A. have B. has C. had D. must
7. Mr. Silva, you _____ not be late today. The vice-president is coming in, and you're the only one who can answer her questions about the new project.
A. have B. has C. had D. must
8. Last year our town didn't have many tourists because of an oil spill. Business was bad. My wife and I own a small souvenir shop near the ocean. We _____ to borrow money from the bank last month to save our business.
A. have B. has C. had D. must

◇练习 14 表示必要(表 7-9)

用 have to 和 must 的任一适当形式完成下列句子。

1. I can't go to the movie tonight because I _____ have to / must study for final exams.
2. When I was in high school, I _____ work every evening at my parents' store.
3. If you want to travel to certain countries, you _____ get a visa.
4. I'm sorry I was absent from class yesterday, but I _____ go to a funeral.
5. Erica won't be in her office tomorrow afternoon because she _____ pick her brother up at the airport.
6. When I worked in my uncle's restaurant, I _____ wash dishes and clear tables.
7. If you want to enter the university, you _____ take an entrance exam.
8. We wanted to go bike riding along the river yesterday, but we _____ stay home because the weather was awful.

◇练习 15 表示必要: MUST, HAVE TO, HAVE GOT TO(表 7-9)

选出正确的动词。

1. Last week, John must, had to interview five people for the new management position.

2. Professor Drake had got to had to cancel several lectures when she became ill.
3. Why did you have to had to leave work early?
4. I must, had to take my daughter to the airport yesterday.
5. Where did John have to, had to go for medical help yesterday?
6. We had to, had got to contact a lawyer last week about a problem with our neighbors.

◇练习 16 表示必要: MUST, HAVE TO, HAVE GOT TO (表 7-9)

用斜体动词的过去时态完成下列句子。

1. I have to study for my medical school exams.
PAST: I had to study for my medical school exams.
2. We have to turn off our water because of a leak.
PAST: We had to turn off our water because of a leak.
3. Do you have to work over the holidays?
PAST: Did you have to work over the holidays?
4. Jerry has got to see the dentist twice this week.
PAST: Jerry had to see the dentist twice last month.
5. Who has got to be in early for work this week?
PAST: Who had to be in early for work last week?
6. The bank must close early today.
PAST: The bank had to close early yesterday.

◇练习 17 表示不必要和禁止(表 7-10)

用 don't/doesn't have to 或 must not 完成下列句子。

1. The soup is too hot. You must not eat it yet. Wait for it to cool.
2. You don't have to have soup for lunch. You can have a sandwich if you like.
3. The review class before the final exam is optional. We don't have to go unless we want to.
4. Many vegetables can be eaten raw. You don't have to cook them.
5. You don't have to use a pencil to write a check because someone could change the amount you have written on it.
6. When the phone rings, you don't have to answer it. It's up to you.
7. When you have a new job, you don't have to be late the first day. In fact, it is a good idea to be a few minutes early.
8. A: I don't have to forget to set my alarm for 5:30.
B: Why do you have to get up at 5:30?
A: I'm going to meet Ron at 6:00. We're going fishing.
9. You don't have to play loud music late at night.
The neighbors will call the police.
10. This box isn't as heavy as it looks. you don't have to help me with it.
Thanks anyway for offering to help.
11. Susan, you don't have to go to the university. Your father and I think you should, but it's your choice.
12. People don't have to spend their money foolishly if they want to stay out of financial trouble.
13. When you first meet someone, you don't have to ask personal questions.
For example, it's not polite to ask a person's age.
14. The nations of the world don't have to stop trying to achieve total world peace.
15. My husband and I grow all of our own vegetables in the summer. We don't have to buy any vegetables at the market.



◇练习 18 表示必要，不必要和禁止(表 7-9 和 7-10)

用 have to 或 must 的正确形式完成下列句子。为了使句子合理可以在必要时使用否定句。

1. Smoking in this building is prohibited. You must / have to extinguish your cigar.
2. Alan's company pays all of his travel expenses. Alan doesn't have to pay for his own plane ticket to the business conference in Amman, Jordan.
3. Our company provides free advice on the use of our products. You don't have to pay us for the advice.
4. Everyone here must leave immediately! The building is on fire!
5. Lynn doesn't have to attend the meeting tonight because she isn't working on the project that we're going to discuss. We're going to talk about raising money for the new library. Lynn isn't involved in that.
6. The construction company must finish the building by the end of the month. That's the date they promised, and they will lose a lot of money if they're late.
7. Please remember, you must call my house between three and four this afternoon. That's when the baby sleeps, and my mother will get upset if we wake him up.

◇练习 19 表示必要、不必要和禁止(表 7-9 和 7-10)

将下表中的短语填入正确的栏中。

✓ fall asleep while driving	take other people's belongings
cook every meal themselves	pay taxes
say "sir" or "madam" to others	stay in their homes in the evening
eat and drink in order to live	stop when they see a police car's lights behind them
drive without a license	

People have to/must... (必要)	People must not... (禁止)	People don't have to... (不必要)
	fall asleep while driving	

◇练习 20 逻辑推理或必要(表 7-9 和 7-11)

如果情态动词 must 表示“逻辑推理”，则写 1；如果表示“必要”，则写 2。

1 = logical conclusion.

2 = necessity.

1. 2 You must have a passport to travel abroad.
2. 1 You must like to read. You have such a large library.
3. 1 Ellen must like fish. She buys it several times a week.
4. 2 You must take off your shoes before entering this room.
5. 2 The dessert must be good. It's almost gone.
6. 2 You must try this dessert. It's wonderful.
7. 2 Children must stay seated during the flight.
8. 2 You must pay in advance if you want a guaranteed seat for the performance.
9. 2 The cat must be afraid. She's hiding in the flower garden again.

◇练习 21 祈使句(表 7-12)

假设有人对你说了下面的话，哪个动词给你指令？用下划线划出祈使动词。

1. I'll be right back. Wait here.
2. Don't wait for Rebecca. She's not going to come.
3. Read pages thirty-nine to fifty-five before class tomorrow.
4. What are you doing? Don't put those magazines in the trash. I haven't read them yet.
5. Come in and have a seat. I'll be right with you.



6. Don't just stand there! Do something!
7. A: Call me around eight, okay?
B: Okay.
8. Here, little Mike. Take this apple to Daddy. That's good. Go ahead. Walk toward Daddy. That's great! Now give him the apple. Wonderful!
9. Capitalize the first word of each sentence. Put a period at the end of a sentence. If the sentence is a question, use a question mark at the end.

◇练习 22 委婉请求和祈使句(表 7-5, 7-6 和 7-12)

根据礼貌程度给句子编号，1=最有礼貌。

1. 1 Could you open the door? 3. 3 Can I borrow your eraser?
2. 3 Open the door. 2 Could I borrow your eraser?
3. 2 Can you open the door? 4. 1 Hand me the calculator.
4. 1 Get the phone, please. 3 Will you hand me the calculator, please?
5. 3 Would you please get the phone? 2 Would you hand me the calculator, please?
6. 2 Get the phone. 1 Please hand me the calculator.
7. 1 Can you get the phone?

◇练习 23 LET'S 和 WHY DON'T(表 7-13)

用下表中的动词完成下列句子，动词可以多次使用。

ask	fly	pick up	see
-----	-----	---------	-----

call	get	play	stop
fill up	go	save	take

1. A: There's a strong wind today. Let's go to the top of the hill on Cascade Avenue and fly our kite.

B: Sounds like fun. Why don't we see if Louie wants to come with us?

A: Okay. I'll call him.

2. A: What should we buy Mom for her birthday?

B: I don't know. Let's buy her some perfume or something.

A: I have a better idea. Why don't we take her out for dinner and a movie?

3. A: My toe hurts. Let's not go dancing tonight.

B: Okay. Why don't we play chess instead?

4. A: Let's take a taxi from the airport to the hotel.

B: Why don't we rent a bus and save ourselves some money?

5. A: We're almost out of gas. Why don't we stop at a gas station and fill up before we drive the rest of the way to the beach?

B: Okay. Are you hungry? I am. Let's buy something to eat too.

A: Great.

6. A: Let's go to a movie at the mall tonight.

B: I've already seen all the good movies there. What else can we do?

A: Well, Marika has a car. Why don't we ask her and see if she wants to drive us into the city?

B: Okay. What's her number?

◇练习 24 表示优先选择 (表 7-14)

用 prefer, like 或 would rather 完成下列句子。

1. I prefer cold weather to hot weather.

2. A: What's your favorite fruit?

B: I like strawberries better than any other fruit.

3. Mary would rather save money than enjoy herself.

4. Unfortunately, many children prefer candy to vegetables.

5. A: Why isn't your brother going with us to the movie?

B: He would rather stay home and read than go out on a Saturday night.

6. A: Does Peter like football better than baseball?

B: No. I think he likes baseball better than football.

3. "What do you like the most about your promotion?"
"I _____ get up at 5:30 in the morning anymore. I can sleep until 7:00."
A. must not B. would rather C. don't have to
4. "Do you have a minute? I need to talk to you."
"I _____ leave here in ten minutes. Can we make an appointment for another time?"
A. have to B. could C. may
5. "Yes? _____ I help you?"
"Yes. Do you have these sandals in a size eight?"
A. Should B. Can C. Will
6. "Let's go bowling Saturday afternoon." "Bowling? I _____ play golf than go bowling."
A. had better B. should C. would rather
7. "Diane found a library book on a bench at Central Park. Someone had left it there." "She take it to any library in the city. I'm sure they'll be glad to have it back."
A. will B. should C. would rather
8. "Beth got another speeding ticket yesterday."
"Oh? That's not good. She _____ be more careful. She'll end up in serious trouble if she gets any more."
A. would rather B. will C. ought to
9. "Are you going to take the job transfer when the company moves out of town?" "I accept their offer if they are willing to pay all of my moving expenses."
A. must not B. might C. maybe
10. "Are you going to admit your mistake to the boss?"
"Yes. I _____ tell her about it than have her hear about it from someone else."
A. can B. should C. would rather
11. "I just heard that there's an accident on the freeway. Traffic is a mess."
"We _____ leave earlier than we planned."
A. maybe B. had better C. prefer to
12. "Would you like to go with me to the Williams' wedding next month?"
"I'm not sure. I _____ be too busy with school."
A. will B. might C. maybe
13. "Do you need help washing the dishes?"
"Oh, no. You _____ help. There are enough people in the kitchen already."
A. don't have to B. must not C. may not
14. "Why are you working so many evenings and weekends?"
"I _____ increase sales or I'm in danger of losing my job."
A. may B. can C. have got to
15. "Are these gloves necessary?"
"Yes. You _____ use this chemical without gloves. It will burn your skin."
A. must not B. don't have to C. could not

◇练习 27 阶段复习 (第七章)

改错

Had to

1. Before I left on my trip last month, I ~~must~~ get a passport.
2. Could you to bring us more coffee, please?
3. Ben can driving, but he prefers take the bus.
4. My roommate maybe at home this evening.
5. A few of our classmates can't to come to the school picnic.
6. May you take our picture, please?
7. Jane's eyes are red, and she is yawning. She must is sleepy.
8. Jim would rather has Fridays off in the summer than a long vacation.
9. I must reading several lengthy books for my literature class.
10. Take your warm clothes with you. It will maybe snow.
11. When the baby went to the doctor last week, she must has several shots.
12. It's very cool in here. Please you turn up the heat.
13. You had better to call us before you come over. We're often away during the day.
14. The children would rather to see the circus than a baseball game.
15. It's such a gorgeous day. Why we don't go to a park or the beach?

◇练习 28 阶段复习 (第七章)

文章标题“writing a Composition”。通读文章找出中心思想，再细读一遍，选出正确的加粗斜体词。

Writing a Composition

(1) "What? Not another composition! I hate writing compositions. I'm not good at it." Do you ever complain about having to write compositions in English class? A lot of students do. You many cannot find it difficult and time-consuming, but you are learning a useful skill. The ability to write clearly is, must be important. It can, must affect your success in school and in your job. You may, can learn to write effectively by practicing. One of the best ways to practice your writing skills is to prepare compositions in a thoughtful, step-by-step process.

(2) The first step in writing a composition is to choose a subject that interests you. You maybe, should write about a subject you already know about or can, have to find out about through

research. Writers might, should never pretend to be experts. For example, if you have never bought a car and are not knowledgeable about automobiles, you should, should not write an essay on what to look for when buying a car-unless, of course, you plan to research the subject in books and magazines and make yourself an expert. There is one topic about which you are the most knowledgeable expert in the world, and that topic is, may be yourself and your experiences. Many of the most interesting and informative compositions are based simply on a writer's personal experience and observations. The questions you should ask yourself when choosing a topic are "Do I have any expertise in this subject?" and if not, "Will, Can I be able to find information about this subject?"

(3) After you have a topic and have researched it if necessary, start writing down your thoughts. These notes must not, do not have to be in any particular order. You do not have to, could not worry about grammar at this time. You can, may pay special attention to that later.

(4) Next, you have to, may organize your thoughts. You cannot, might not say everything possible about a subject in one composition. Therefore, you may, must carefully choose the ideas and information you want to include. Look over your notes, think hard about your topic, and find a central idea. Answer these questions: "What am, do I want my readers to understand? What is, does my main idea? How can, am I put this idea into one sentence?" Good writing depends on clear thinking. Writers should, had better spend more time thinking than actually writing. After you have a clearly formed main idea, choose relevant information from your notes to include in your composition.

(5) Before you begin to write the actual composition, you ought to, can know exactly what you want to say and how you are going to develop your ideas. Many good writers prepare, prepared an outline before they start. An outline is like a road map to keep you headed toward your destination without getting lost or sidetracked.

(6) There are, ought to be many ways to begin a composition. For example, you might, must begin with a story that leads up to your main idea. Or you may, ought to start with a question that you want your reader to think about, and then suggest an answer. Maybe, May be you could, have to introduce your topic by defining a key word. Simply presenting factual information is, will be another common way of beginning a composition. Your goals in your first paragraph is, are to catch your reader's attention and then state your main idea clearly and concisely. By the end of the first paragraph, your reader may, should understand what you are going to cover in the composition.

(7) If possible, write the entire first draft of your composition in a single sitting. After you have a first draft, the next step is rewriting. Every composition could, should go through several drafts. Rewriting is a natural part of the process of writing. You will, do not have to find many things that you can change, changed and improve when you reread your first draft. As you revise, you will, should be careful to include connecting words such as then, next, for example, after, and therefore. These words connect one idea to another so that your reader will not get lost. Also pay attention to grammar, punctuation, and spelling as you revise and rewrite. Your dictionary should, can be next to you, or if you are working on a computer, you should, must use the "spell checker."

(8) Writing is, may be a skill. It improves as you gain experience with the process of choosing a subject, jotting down thoughts, organizing them into a first draft, and then rewriting and polishing. At the end of this process, you should, must have a clear and well-written composition.

第八章

概念之间的连接

◇练习1 用 AND 连接概念(表 8-1)

用下划线划出由 and 连接的词语, 标出这些词的词性: 名词(noun)、动词(verb)或形容词(adjective)。

- | | | | | |
|----|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------|--|
| | noun+ | noun+ | | noun |
| 1. | The farmer has a | <u>cow</u> , | a | <u>goat</u> , and a black <u>horse</u> . |
| | | Adjective | + | adjective |
| 2. | Danny is a | <u>bright</u> and | <u>happy</u> | child. |
| | | verb | + | verb |
| 3. | I | <u>picked</u> up the telephone and | <u>dialed</u> | Steve's number. |
| 4. | The cook washed the vegetables and | put them in | boiling | water. |

5. My feet were cold and wet.
6. Anita is responsible, considerate, and trustworthy.
7. The three largest land animals are the elephant, the rhinoceros, and the hippopotamus.
8. A hippopotamus rests in water during the day and feeds on land at night.



◇练习 2 与 AND 连用的标点符号(表 8-1)

在需要的地方加逗号。

1. I opened the door and walked into the room. (no commas)
2. I opened the door, walked into the room, and sat down at my desk.
3. Their flag is green and black.
4. Their flag is green black and yellow.
5. Tom ate a sandwich and drank a glass of juice.
6. Tom made a sandwich poured a glass of juice and sat down to eat his lunch.
7. Ms. Parker is intelligent friendly and kind.
8. Mr. Parker is grouchy and unhappy.
9. Did you bring copies of the annual report for Sue Dan Joe and Mary?
10. I always read the newspaper and watch the TV news in the morning.
11. Can you watch television listen to the radio and read the newspaper at the same time?
12. Doctors save lives and relieve suffering.
13. Doctors save lives relieve suffering and cure diseases.
14. The restaurant served a five-course dinner: soup fish entree salad and dessert.
15. I had fish and a salad for dinner last night.
16. An invitation should include your name address the date the time the purpose of the party and any special activities such as swimming or dancing.

◇练习 3 在句中使用正确的标点符号(表 8-1)

下面每个句子都包含两个独立的分句，找出每个分句中的主语(S)和谓语(V)，必要时将字母大写。

S V, S V

1. Birds fly, and fish swim.
S V, S V
2. Birds fly • Fish swim.
3. Dogs bark lions roar.
4. Dogs bark and lions roar.
5. A week has seven days a year has 365 days.
6. A week has seven days and a year has 365 days.
7. Ahmed raised his hand and the teacher pointed at him.
8. Ahmed raised his hand the teacher pointed at him.

◇练习 4 在句中使用正确的标点符号(表 8-1)

如果标点符号正确，写 C；如果不正确，写 I。

1. I Amy jogged along the road I rode my bicycle.
2. C Amy stopped after 20 minutes.I continued on for an hour.
3. Trained dogs can lie down and perform other tricks on command.
4. My mother trained our dog to get the newspaper, my father trained it to bark at strangers.
5. The river rose, it flooded the towns in the valley.
6. The river and streams rose.They flooded the towns and farms in the valley.
7. Astrology is the study of the planets and their effect on our lives.
8. sharon reads her horoscope every day.She believes her life is shaped by the positions of the stars and planets.
9. sharon's children don't believe in astrology, they dismiss the information she gives

◇练习 5 AND, BUT 和 OR 的用法(表 8-2)

在合适的地方加逗号。

- 1.I talked to Amy for a long time, but she didn't listen.
2. I talked to Tom for a long time and asked him many questions.(no change)
3. Please call Jane or Ted.
4. Please call Jane and Ted.
5. Please call Jane Ted or Anna.
6. Please call Jane Ted and Anna.
7. I waved at my friend but she didn't see me.
8. I waved at my friend and she waved back.
9. I waved at my friend and smiled at her.
- 10.Was the test hard or easy?
11. My test was short and easy but Ali's test was hard.

◇练习 6 AND, BUT,OR 和 SO 的用法(表 8-1→8-3)

选出正确选项完成下列句子。

1. I was tired, _____ I went to bed.
A. but B. or C. so
2. I sat down on the sofa _____ opened the newspaper.
A.but B.and C.so
3. The students were on time, _____ the teacher was late.
A.but B.or C.so
4. I would like one pet.I'd like to have a dog _____ a cat.
A.but B.and C.or
5. Our children are happy _____ healthy.
A.but B.and C.or
6. I wanted a cup of tea, _____ I heated some water.
A.but B.and C.so
7. The phone rang, _____ I didn't answer it.
A.but B.and C.so
8. You can have an apple _____ an orange.Choose one.
A. but B. and C or

◇练习 7 AND, BUT,OR 和 SO 的用法(表 8-1→8-3)

在适当的地方加逗号，注意有些句子不需要加逗号。

1. I washed and dried the dishes.(no change)
2. I washed the dishes, and my son dried them.
3. I called their house but no one answered the phone.
4. He offered me an apple or a peach.
5. I bought some apples peaches and bananas.
6. I was hungry so I ate an apple.

7. Carlos was hungry and ate two apples.
8. My sister is generous and kind-hearted.
9. My daughter is affectionate shy independent and smart.
10. It started to rain so we went inside and watched television

◇练习 8 AND, BUT, OR 和 SO 的用法(表 8-1→8-3)

在适当的地方加逗号，注意有些句子不需要加逗号。

1. Gina wants a job as an air traffic controller. Every air traffic controller worldwide uses English so it is important for Gina to become fluent in the language.
2. Gina has decided to take some intensive English courses at a private language institute but she isn't sure which one to attend. There are many schools available and they offer many different kinds of classes.
3. Gina has also heard of air traffic control schools that include English as part of their coursework but she needs to have a fairly high level of English to attend.
4. Gina needs to decide soon or the classes will be full. She's planning to visit her top three choices this summer and decide on the best one for her

◇练习 9 AND, BUT, OR 和 SO 的用法(表 8-1→8-3)

在必要的地方加句号，并将下一个单词的首字母大写。

1. There are over 1 00, 000 kinds of flies they live throughout the world. → There are over 100,000 kinds of flies. They live throughout the world.
2. I like to get mail from my friends and family mail is important to me.
3. We are all connected by our humanity we need to help each other we can all live in peace.
4. There was a bad flood in Hong Kong the streets became raging streams luckily no one died in the flood.
5. People have used needles since prehistoric times the first buttons appeared almost two thousand years ago zippers are a relatively recent invention the zipper was invented in 1 890.



◇练习 10 AND, BUT, OR 和 SO 的用法(表 8-1→8-3)

在必要的地方加句号、加逗号、将字母大写。不要改动其他的词或者语序。

1. James has a cold. He needs to rest and drink plenty of fluids, so he should go to bed and drink water, fruit juices, or soda pop. he needs to sleep a lot, so he shouldn't drink fluids with caffeine, such as tea or coffee.
2. My friend and I were tired so we went home early we wanted to stay until the end of the game but it got too late for us both of us had to get up early in the morning and go to our jobs.
3. The normal pulse for an adult is between 60 and 80 beats per minute but exercise nervousness excitement and a fever will all make a pulse beat faster the normal pulse for a child is around 80 to 90.
4. Many famous explorers throughout history set out on their hazardous journeys in search of gold silver jewels or other treasures but some explorers wanted only to discover information about their world.
5. Edward Fox was a park ranger for thirty-five years during that time, he was hit by lightning

eight times the lightning never killed him but it severely burned his skin and damaged his hearing.
 6. The Indian Ocean is bordered on four sides by the continents of Africa Asia Australia and Antarctica some of the important ports are Aden Bombay Calcutta and Rangoon.
 7. The Indian Ocean has many fish and shellfish but it has less commercial fishing than the Atlantic or the Pacific the climate of the Indian Ocean is tropical so fish spoil quickly out of the water it is difficult and expensive for commercial fishing boats to keep fish flesh.

◇练习 11 在 BUT 和 AND 之后使用助动词(表 8-4)

练习在 but 和 and 之后使用助动词。

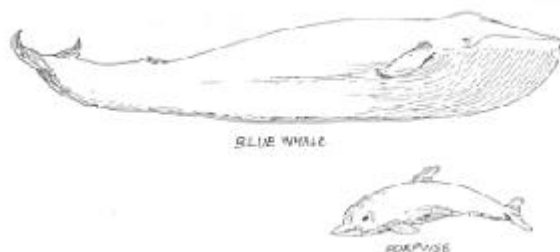
1. Dan didn't study for the test, but Amy _____.
2. Alice doesn't come to class every day, but Julie _____.
3. Jack went to the movie last night, but I _____.
4. I don't live in the dorm, but Rob and Jim _____.
5. Rob lives in the dorm, and Jim _____ too.
6. I don't live in the dorm, and Carol _____ either.
7. My roommate was at home last night, but I _____.
8. Mr. Wong isn't here today, but Miss Choki _____.
9. Ted isn't here today, and Linda _____ either.
10. The teacher is listening to the tape, and the students _____ too.
11. Susan Won't be at the meeting tonight, but I _____.
12. Susan isn't going to go to the meeting tonight, but I _____.
13. I'll be there, but she _____.
14. I'll be there, and Mike _____ too.
15. I can speak French, and my wife _____ too.
16. I haven't finished my work yet, but Erica _____.
17. I didn't finish my work last night, but Erica _____.
18. Jane would like a cup of coffee, and I _____ too.
19. I like rock music, and my roommate _____ too.
20. My son enjoys monster movies, but I _____.
21. Paul can't speak Spanish, and Larry _____ either.
22. My neighbor walks to work every morning, but I _____.
23. I am exhausted from the long-trip, and my mother _____ too.
24. I don't have a dimple in my chin, but my brother _____.
25. I visited the museum yesterday, and my friend _____ too.
26. Water isn't solid, but ice _____.
27. Clouds aren't solid, and steam _____ either.

◇练习 12 BUT 和 AND 之后的助动词(表 8-4)

用斜体词和合适的助动词完成下列句子。

1. Tom Jack has a mustache, and so does Tom.
 Jack has a mustache, and Tom does too.
2. Brian Alex doesn't have a mustache, and neither
 Alex doesn't have a mustache, and _____ either.
3. I Mary was at home last night, and so _____.
 Mary was at home last night, and _____ too.
4. Oregon California is on the West Coast, and so _____.
 California is on the West Coast, and _____ too.
5. Jean I went to a movie last night, and so _____.
 I went to a movie last night, and _____ too.
6. Jason I didn't study last night, and neither _____.

- I didn't study last night, and _____ either.
7. Rick Jim can't speak Arabic, and neither _____.
Jim can't speak Arabic, and _____ either.
8. Laura I like to go to science fiction movies, and so _____.
I like to go to science fiction movies, and _____ too.
9. Alice I don't like horror movies, and neither _____.
I don't like horror movies, and _____ either.
10. porpoises Whales are mammals, and so _____.
Whales are mammals, and _____ too.



11. I Karen hasn't seen that movie yet, and neither _____.
Karen hasn't seen that movie yet, and _____ either.
12. my brother I have a call, and so _____.
I have a car, and _____ too.
13. Erin Rob won't join US for lunch, and neither _____.
Rob won't join US for lunch, and _____ either.

◇ 练习 13 在 AND 之后使用 Too, So, EITHER 或 NEITHER (表 8-5)

I. 用助动词+Too 或 EITHER 完成下列句子。

- I can't cook, and my roommate can't either _____.
- I like movies, and my wife _____.
- I don't like salty food, and my wife _____.
- Sugar is sweet, and honey _____.
- Rosa Gomez wasn't in class yesterday, and Mr. Nazari _____.
- Andy didn't know the answer to the question, and Tina _____.
- I couldn't understand the substitute teacher, and Yoko _____.
- Everyone in the room laughed at my foolish mistake, and I _____.
- Fish can't walk, and snakes _____.
- I like to fix things around the house, and Ted _____.
- I'd rather stay home this evening, and my husband _____.

II. 用 so 或 NEITHER+助动词完成下列句子。

- Pasta is a famous Italian dish, and _____ so is _____ pizza.
- Anteaters don't have teeth, and _____ neither do _____ most birds.
- I didn't go to the bank, and _____ my husband.
- Turtles are reptiles, and _____ snakes.
- My sister has dark hair, and _____ I.
- I'm studying English, and _____ Mr. Chu.
- I'm not a native speaker of English, and _____ Mr. Chu.
- Wood burns, and _____ paper.
- Mountain climbing is dangerous, and _____ auto racing.
- I've never seen a monkey in the wild, and _____ my children.
- When we heard the hurricane warning, I nailed boards over my windows, and _____ all

of my neighbors.
23. My brother and I studied chemistry together. I didn't pass the course, and _____ he.

◇练习 14 BECAUSE 引导的状语从句(表 8-6)

用下划线划出状语从句，并找出状语从句的主语(s)和谓语(V)。

1. Mr. Tanaka was late for work because ^s [he] ^v [missed] the bus.
2. I closed the door because the room was cold.
3. Because I lost my umbrella, I got wet on the way home.
4. Joe didn't bring his book to class because he couldn't find it.
5. The teacher couldn't hear the question because the class was so noisy.
6. Because the ice cream was beginning to melt, I put it back in the freezer.

◇练习 15 BECAUSE 引导的状语从句(表 8-6)

1. I opened the window because the room was hot. we felt more comfortable then.
2. Because his coffee was cold, Jack didn't finish it. He left it on the table and walked away.
3. Because the weather was bad we canceled our trip into the city we stayed home and watched TV.
4. Debbie is a cheerleader she woke up in the morning with a sore throat because she had cheered loudly at the basketball game.
5. Francisco is an intelligent and ambitious young man because he hopes to get a good job later in life he is working hard to get a good education now.

◇练习 16 BECAUSE 引导的状语从句 (表 8-6)

1. go on a diet

lose weight

_____ Eric went on a diet because he wanted to lose weight.

_____ Because Eric went on a diet, he wanted to lose weight.

2. didn't have money

couldn't buy food

_____ The family couldn't buy food because they didn't have money.

_____ Because the family couldn't buy food, they didn't have money.

3. have several children

be very busy

_____ Because our neighbors are very busy, they have several children.

_____ Our neighbors are very busy because they have several children.

4. go to bed

be tired

_____ I am tired because I am going to bed.

_____ Because I am tired, I am going to bed.

5. be in great shape

exercise every day

_____ Because Susan exercises every day, she is in great shape.

_____ Susan exercises every day because she is in great shape.

6. have a high fever

go to the doctor

_____ Because Jennifer has a high fever, she is going to the doctor.

_____ Jennifer has a high fever because she is going to the doctor.

◇练习 17 BECAUSE 引导的状语从句(表 8-6)

用 so 或 because 完成下列句子，在适当的地方加逗号。必要时将字母大写。

1. a. He was hungry ,So _____ he ate a sandwich.

- b. Because he was hungry, he ate a sandwich.
- c. He ate a sandwich because he was hungry.
2. a. _____ my sister was tired she went to bed.
- b. My sister went to bed _____ she was tired.
- c. My sister was tired _____ she went to bed.
3. a. _____ human beings have opposable thumbs they can easily pick things up and hold them.
- b. Human beings have opposable thumbs _____ they can easily pick things up and hold them.
- c. Human beings can easily pick things up and hold them _____ they have opposable thumbs.
4. a. Schoolchildren can usually identify Italy easily on a world map _____ it is shaped like a boot.
- b. _____ Italy has the distinctive shape of a boot schoolchildren can usually identify it easily.
- c. Italy has the distinctive shape of a boot _____ schoolchildren can usually identify it easily on a map.



◇练习 18 EVEN THOUGH 和 ALTHOUGH 引导的状语从句(表 8-6)

用斜体动词的正确形式完成下列句子。有动语要用否定式。

1. Even though I (like) _____ like _____ fish, I don't eat it much.
2. Even though I (like) _____ don't like _____ vegetables, I eat them every day.
3. Although my hairdresser (be) _____ expensive, I go to her once a week.
4. Even though the basketball game was over, the fans (stay) _____ in their seats cheering.
5. Although my clothes were wet from the rain, I (change) _____ them
6. Even though Po studied for weeks, he (pass) _____ his exams.
7. Even though the soup was salty, everyone (eat) _____ it.
8. Although the roads (be) _____ icy, no one got in an accident.

◇ 练习9 BECAUSE 和 EVEN THOUGH 的用法 (表 8-6 和 8-7)

选出正确选项完成列句子。

1. Even though I was hungry, I ____ a lot at dinner.
A. ate B. didn't eat
2. Because I was hungry, I ____ a lot at dinner.
A. ate B. didn't eat
3. Because I was cold, I ____ my coat.
A. put on B. didn't put on

4. Even though I was cold, I ____ my coat.
A. put on B. didn't put on
5. Even though Mike ____ sleepy, he stayed up to watch the end of the game on TV.
A. was B. wasn't



6. Because Linda _____ sleepy, she went to bed.
A. was B. wasn't
7. Because Kate ran too slowly, she _____ the race.
A. won B. didn't win
8. Even though Jessica ran fast, she _____ the race.
A. won B. didn't win
9. I _____ the test for my driver's license because I wasn't prepared.
A. failed B. didn't fail
10. I went to my daughter's school play because she _____ me to be there.
A. wanted B. didn't want
11. I bought a new suit for the business trip even though I _____ it.
A. could afford B. couldn't afford
12. Even though I had a broken leg, I _____ to the conference in New York.
A. went B. didn't go

◇ 练习 20 BECAUSE 引导的状语从句 (表 8-6)

用 even though 或 because 完成下列句子。

1. Yuko went to a dentist _____ because _____ she had a toothache.
2. Colette didn't go to a dentist _____ she had a toothache.
3. Jennifer went to a dentist _____ she didn't have a toothache. She just wanted a checkup.
4. _____ Dan is fairly tall, he can't reach the ceiling.
5. _____ Matt is very tall, he can reach the ceiling.
6. _____ Tim isn't as tall as Matt, he can't reach the ceiling.
7. _____ Nick isn't tall, he can reach the ceiling by standing on a chair.



8. Louie didn't iron his shirt _____ it was wrinkled.
9. Eric ironed his shirt _____ it was wrinkled.
10. I would like to raise tropical fish _____ it's difficult to maintain a fish tank in good condition.

11. The baby shoved the pills into his mouth _____ they looked like candy.
_____ he ingested several pills, he didn't get sick. Today many pill bottles
have child-proof caps _____ children may think pills are candy and poison
themselves.

◇ 练习 21 EVEN THOUGH/ALTHOUGH 和 BECAUSE 的用法 (表 8-6 和 8-7)

选出最佳选项完成下列句子。

Example: I gave him the money because _____.

- A. I didn't have any
- B. he had a lot of money
- © owed it to him

1. Although _____, the hungry man ate every bit of it.
 - A. an apple is both nutritious and delicious
 - B. the cheese tasted good to him
 - C. the bread was old and stale
2. The nurse didn't bring Mr. Hill a glass of water even though _____.
 - A. she was very busy
 - B. she forgot
 - C. he asked her three times
3. When she heard the loud crash, Marge ran outside in the snow although _____.
 - A. her mother ran out with her
 - B. she wasn't wearing any shoes
 - C. she ran as fast as she could
4. Even though his shoes were wet and muddy, Brian _____.
 - A. took them off at the front door
 - B. walked right into the house and across the carpet
 - C. wore wool socks
5. Robert ate dinner with us at our home last night. Although _____, he left right after dinner.
 - A. he washed the dishes
 - B. there was a good movie at the local theater
 - C. I expected him to stay and help with the dishes
6. Alex boarded the bus in front of his hotel. He was on his way to the art museum. Because he _____, he asked the bus driver to tell him where to get off.
 - A. was late for work and didn't want his boss to get mad
 - B. was carrying a heavy suitcase
 - C. was a tourist and didn't know the city streets very well
7. Although _____, Eric got on the plane.
 - A. he is married
 - B. he is afraid of flying
 - C. the flight attendant welcomed him aboard
8. Foxes can use their noses to find their dinners because _____.
 - A. they have a keen sense of smell
 - B. mice and other small rodents move very quickly
 - C. they have keen vision
9. Cats can't see red even though _____.
 - A. it's a bright color
 - B. many animals are color-blind
 - C. mice aren't red
10. When I attended my first business conference out of town, I felt very uncomfortable during the social events because _____.
 - A. we were all having a good time
 - B. I didn't know anyone there
 - C. I am very knowledgeable in my field

11. Although _____, Sue drives to work every day in the middle of rush hour.
 A. her car is in good condition
 B. she isn't in a hurry
 C. traffic is always heavy
12. Everyone listened carefully to what the speaker was saying even though _____.
 A. they had printed copies of the speech in their hands
 B. she spoke loudly and clearly
 C. the speech was very interesting
13. Talil works in the city, but once a month he visits his mother, who lives in the country. He must rent a car for these trips because _____.
 A. he rides the local bus
 B. his mother doesn't drive
 C. he doesn't own a car

◇ 练习 20 错误分析(第八章)

改错。

doesn't

1. I don't drink coffee, and my roommate isn't either.
2. The flight was overbooked, I had to fly on another airline.
3. Many people use computers for e-mail the Internet and word processing.
4. The room was stuffy and hot but I didn't close the window.
5. The baby woke up crying. Because her diaper was wet.
6. Even my father works two jobs, he always has time to play soccer or baseball on weekends with his family.
7. I saw a bad accident and my sister too.
8. Oscar always pays his bills on time but his brother wasn't.
9. Because my mother is afraid of heights, I took her up to the observation deck at the top of the building.
10. Janey doesn't like to get up early and either Joe.
11. Although it was raining quite hard, but we decided to go for a bike ride.
12. My mother and my father. They immigrated to this country 30 years ago.
13. Even though Maya is very intelligent, her parents want to put her in an advanced program at school.

第九章 比较

◇ 练习 1 AS...AS(表 9-1)

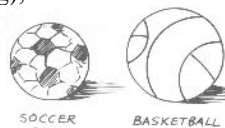
用 as...as 进行比较。

1. Rita is very busy. Jason is very busy.
 → Rita is (just) as bossy as jason(is).
2. Rita is not very busy at all. Jason is very, very busy.
 → Rita isn't (nearly) as busy as jason(is).
3. I was tired. Susan was very tired.
 → I was _____.
4. Adam wasn't tired at all. Susan was very tired.
 → Adam wasn't _____.
5. My apartment has two rooms. Po's apartment has two rooms.
 → My apartment is _____.
6. My apartment has two rooms. Anna's apartment has six rooms.
 → My apartment is not _____.

◇ 练习 2 AS...AS (表 9-1)

用所给的信息, 括号中的词语及 as...as(表 9-1)

- Dogs make more noise than cats do. (be noisy)
→ Cats aren't as noisy as dogs.
- Both Anne and her sister Amanda are lazy. (be lazy)
→ Anne is as lazy as her sister Amanda.
- Adults have more strength than children. (be strong)
→ Children are not as strong as adults.
- Tom and Jerry are the same height. (be tall)
→ Tom is as tall as Jerry.
- It's more comfortable to live at home than in a dormitory. (be comfortable)
→ Living in a dormitory is not as comfortable as living at home.
- A basketball is bigger than a soccer ball. (be big),

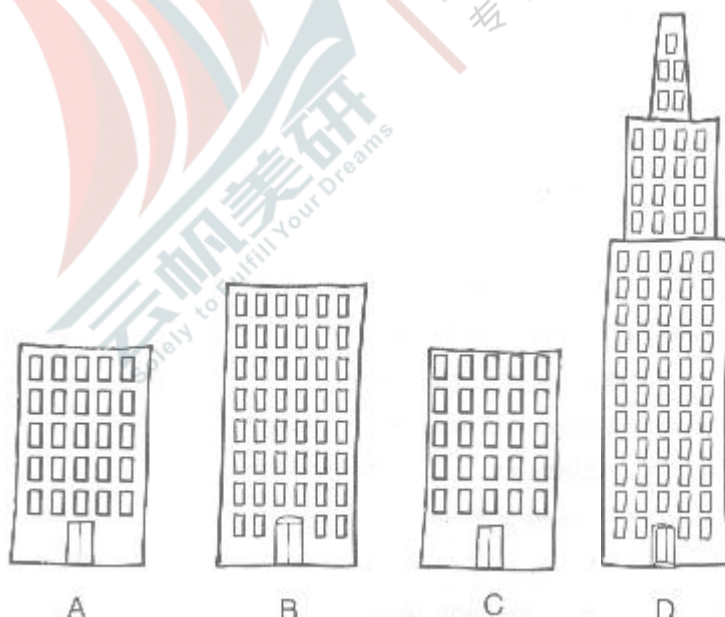


- A soccer ball is smaller than a basketball.
- The bride and the groom were equally nervous before the wedding. (be nervous)
→ The bride was as nervous as the groom.
 - The air in a big city is more polluted than the air in the countryside. (be fresh and clean)
→ The air in a big city is not as fresh and clean as the air in the countryside.
 - My sister wants to be a successful businesswoman. I don't have any plans for my future. (be ambitious)
→ I am not as ambitious as my sister.
 - Some school subjects interest me, and others don't. (be interesting)
→ Some school subjects are as interesting as others.

◇ 练习 3 AS...AS (表 9-1)

用下列表达完成句子。

- just as...as
- almost as...as/not quite as...as
- not nearly as... as



I.

- Building B is not nearly as high as Building D.
- Building A is almost as high as Building B.

3. Building C is _____ high as Building D.
 4. Building A is _____ high as Building C.
- II. 见面时间：早晨 9：30。收、与到达时间进行比较。

Arrival times:

David 9:01 A.M.
 Julia 9:14 A.M.
 Laura 9:15 A.M.
 Paul 9:15 A.M.
 James 9:25 A.M.

5. Paul was _____ just as _____ late as Laura.
 6. David was _____ late as James.
 7. Julia was _____ late as Laura and Paul.
 8. Julia was _____ late as James.

III. 比较世界气温。

Bangkok 92°F 33°C
 Cairo 85°F / 30°C
 Madrid 90°F / 32°C
 Moscow 68°F / 20°C
 Tokyo 85°F / 30°C

9. Tokyo is _____ hot as Cairo.
 10. Moscow is _____ hot as Bangkok.
 11. Madrid is _____ hot as Bangkok.

IV. 比较今天和昨天的世界气温。

	Yesterday	Today
Bangkok	95°F / 35°C	92°F / 33°C
Cairo	95°F / 35°C	85°F / 30°C
Madrid	90°F / 32°C	90°F / 32°C
Moscow	70°F / 21°C	68°F / 20°C
Tokyo	81°F / 27°C	85°F / 30°C

12. Cairo was _____ hot as Bangkok yesterday.
 13. It's _____ warm in Moscow today as yesterday.
 14. Madrid is _____ hot today as yesterday.
 15. It was _____ hot in Tokyo yesterday as in Bangkok.
 16. It's _____ hot in Bangkok today as yesterday.

◇练习 4 AS...AS (表 9-1)

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| A. as bad as she said it was | ✓ E. as much as possible |
| B. as easy as it looks | F. as often as I can |
| C. as fast as I could | G. as often as I used to |
| D. as good as they looked | H. as soon as possible |

- I have a lot of homework. I will finish E before I go to bed.
- I'm sorry I'm late. I drove _____.
- I saw some chocolates at the candy store. They looked delicious, so I bought some. They tasted just _____.
- When I was in college, I went to at least two movies every week. Now I'm very busy with my job and family, so I don't go to movies _____.
- It took Julie years of lessons to be able to play the piano well. She makes it look easy, but we all know that playing a musical instrument isn't _____.
- I need to finish working on this report, so go ahead and start the meeting without me. I'll be there _____.
- Even though I'm very busy, I'm usually just sitting at my desk all day. I need more exercise, so I try to walk to and from work _____.

8. My friend told me the movie was terrible, but I went anyway. My friend was right. The movie was just _____.

◇练习5 AS...AS (表 9-1)

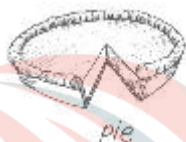
填空完成下列句子。

I. 用正确的短语使表达完整。

as a bat	as ice	as a pillow
as a bird	as a mouse	✓ as snow
as a bone	as a picture	as a wink
as pie		



1. very white: as white as snow.
2. very cold: as cold _____.
3. very pretty: as pretty _____.
4. can't see anything: as blind _____.
5. very dry: as dry _____.
6. very soft: as soft _____.
7. very quick: as quick _____.
8. very quiet: as quiet _____.
9. very free: as free _____.
10. very easy: as easy _____.



II. 用下表中所给的形容词和第 I 部分中的短语完成句子。

lind	dry	free	quick	soft
✓ cold	easy	pretty	quiet	white

11. Brrrr! Come inside. Your hands are freezing. They are as cold as ice.
12. I'm just running down to the corner store. I'll be back in a few minutes. I'll be as _____.
13. I can't see anything without my glasses on. I'm as _____.
14. What laundry detergent do you use? Your white shirts were covered with dirt, and now they're so clean and bright. They're as _____.
15. Shhhh! Don't wake up Janet. She's sleeping on the couch. Be as _____.
16. Your little girl looks darling in that pink dress and hat. She looks as _____.
17. Don't worry. You'll pass the swimming test. It's not hard at all. It'll be as _____ for you.
18. Charles looks so relaxed since he quit his job. He has no responsibilities for the next month. He must feel as _____.
19. I have back problems and need to sleep on a bed that has a very firm mattress. My husband can sleep on anything, even something that is as _____.

20. It hasn't rained in weeks. The grass is brown, and the flowers are dead. The ground is as _____.

◇练习 6 比较级和最高级形式(表 9-2 和 9-3)

写出下列这词的比较级和最高级形式。

1. strong stronger than the strongest of all
2. important more important than the most important of all
3. soft _____ than _____ of all
4. lazy _____ than _____ of all
5. wonderful _____ than _____ of all
6. calm _____ than _____ of all
7. tame _____ than _____ of all
8. dim _____ than _____ of all
9. convenient _____ than _____ of all
10. clever _____ than _____ of all
11. good _____ than _____ of all
12. bad _____ than _____ of all
13. far _____ than _____ of all
14. slow _____ than _____ of all
15. slowly _____ than _____ of all

◇练习 7 比较级形式 (表 9-2 和 9-3)

用括号中的单词的正确形式完成下列句子。

1. Siberia is (cold) colder than South Africa.
2. My mother is a few years (old) _____ my father.
3. An airplane is (expensive) _____ a car.
4. Which is (large) _____ : Greenland or Iceland?
5. Red or cayenne pepper tastes (hot) _____ black pepper.
6. A typewriter is (slow) _____ a computer.
7. White chocolate is (creamy) _____ dark chocolate because it has more fat.
8. Is smoking (bad) _____ alcohol for your health?
9. A jaguar is (fast) _____ a lion.
10. Which is (important) _____ : happiness or wealth?
11. For long-distance trips, flying is (quick) _____ driving or taking a train.
12. Which is (heavy) _____ : a kilo of wood or a kilo of rocks?*
13. Driving in a car equipped with a seatbelt and an airbag is (safe) _____ driving in a car with just a seatbelt.
14. Calculus is (difficult) _____ arithmetic.

◇练习 8 比较级(表 9-2 和 9-3)

用下表所给形容词和副词的正确比较级形式(more/er)完成下列句子。

careful	✓ generous	soft
✓ cold	lazy	softly
comfortable	pretty	slowly
friendly		

1. The average temperature in Moscow is colder than the average temperature in Hong Kong.
2. Your father seems to give you plenty of money for living expenses. He is more generous than mine.
3. Children seem to be able to appear out of nowhere. When I'm near a school, I always

- drive _____ than I have to.
4. In my experience, old shoes are usually a lot _____ than new shoes.
5. People in villages often seem to enjoy talking to strangers. They seem to be _____ than people in large cities.
6. Babies don't like loud noises. Most people speak _____ than usual when they're talking to a baby.
7. I like to sit on pillows. They are a lot _____ than a hardwood seat.
8. Sandy, when you drive to the airport today, you have to be _____ than you were the last time you went. You almost had an accident because you weren't paying attention to your driving.
9. I like to grow flowers in my garden. They're a lot _____ than bushes.
10. I don't like to work hard, but my sister does. I'm a lot _____ than my sister.

★这是一个脑筋急转弯题。答案： They weigh the same.

◇练习 9 比较级和最高级(表 9-2 和 9-3)

用 better, the best, worse 和 the worst 完成下列句子。

- I just finished a terrible book. It's the worst book I've ever read.
- The weather was bad yesterday, but it's terrible today. The weather is worse today than it was yesterday.
- This cake is really good. It's _____ cake I've ever eaten.
- My grades this term are great. They're much _____ than last term.
- Being separated from my family in time of war is one of _____ experiences I can imagine.
- I broke my nose in a football game yesterday. Today it's very painful. For some reason, the pain is _____ today than it was yesterday.
- The fire spread and burned down an entire city block. It was _____ fire we've ever had in our town.
- I think my cold is almost over. I feel a lot _____ than I did yesterday. I can finally breathe again.

◇练习 10 FARTHER 和 FURTHER (表 9-3)

选出正确答案。正确答案可能不止一个。

- The planet Earth is _____ from the sun than the planet Mercury is.
 Ⓐ farther Ⓑ further
- I have no _____ need of this equipment. I'm going to sell it.
 A. farther Ⓑ further
- I'm tired. I walked _____ than I should have.
 A. farther B. further
- A: Tell us more.
 B: I have no _____ comment.
 A. farther B. further
- I'll be available by phone if you have any _____ questions.
 A. farther B. further
- A: I heard that you and Tom are engaged to be married.
 B: Nothing could be _____ from the truth!
 A. farther B. further

◇练习 11 形容词和副词的比较级(9-3)

用正确的形容词或副词比较级完成下列句子，如果是形容词，选 ADJ，如果是副词，选 ADV。

1. slow I like to drive fast, but my brother William doesn't. As a rule, he drives slowly more slowly than I do. ADJ ADV
2. slow Alex is a slower driver than I am. ADJ ADV
3. serious Some workers are _____ about their jobs seriously ADJ ADV
4. serious Some workers approach their jobs _____ than seriously ADJ ADV
5. polite Why is it that my children behave _____ at politely other people's houses than at home? ADJ ADV
6. polite Why are they _____ at Mrs. Miranda's politely house than at home? ADJ ADV
7. careful I'm a cautious person when I express my opinions, but my sister will say carefully anything _____ to anyone. I'm much when I speak to others than my sister is. ADJ ADV
8. careful I always speak _____ in public than my carefully sister does. ADJ ADV
9. clear I can't understand Mark's father very well when he talks, but I can clearly understand Mark. He speaks much _____ than his father. ADJ ADV
10. clear Mark is a much _____ speaker than his clearly father. ADJ ADV

◇练习 12 完成比较级(表 9-4)

1. Bob arrived at ten. I arrived at eleven.
→ He arrived earlier than I did
2. Linda is a good painter. Steven is better.
He is a better painter than she is
3. Alex knows a lot of
→ He knows a lot more people than
4. I won the race. Anna came in second.
→ I ran faster than
5. My parents were nervous about my motorcycle ride. I was just a little nervous.
→ They were a lot more nervous than
6. My aunt will stay with us for two weeks. My uncle has to return home to his job after a couple of days.
→ She will be here with us a lot longer than
7. Ms. Ross speaks clearly. Mr. Mudd mumbles.
→ She speaks a lot more clearly than
8. I've been here for two years. Sam has been here for two months.
→ I've been here a lot longer than
9. I had a good time at the picnic yesterday. Mary didn't enjoy it.
→ I had a lot more fun at the picnic than
10. I can reach the top shelf of the bookcase. Tim can only reach the shelf next to the top.
→ I can reach higher than

◇练习 13 使用代词完成比较 (表 9-4)

1. I have a brother. His name David. He's really tall. I'm just medium height.
He's taller than I am (formal) OR me (informal)
2. My brother is sixteen. I'm seventeen.

- I'm older than _____
3. My sister is really pretty. I've never thought I was pretty.
→ She's a lot prettier than _____
4. I'm pretty smart, though. My sister isn't interested in school.
→ I'm smarter than _____
5. My morn tells me that I shouldn't compare myself to my sister. She says we are both individuals in our own right and have many fine qualities. My morn is wise. I don't think I'm wise yet.
→ My room is much wiser than _____
6. My cousin Rita was born two days after I was.
→ She is two days younger than _____

◇练习 14 VERY 与 A LOT/MUCH/FAR 的比较 (表 9-5)

选出正确的答案。正确答案可能不止一个。

1. This watch is not ___ expensive.
④ very B. a lot C. much D. far
2. That watch is ___ more expensive than this one.
A. very ⑥ a lot ③ much ⑤ far
3. My nephew is ___ polite.
A. very B. a lot C. much D. far
4. My nephew is ___ more polite than my niece.
A. very B. a lot C. much D. far
5. Ted is ___ taller than his brother.
A. very B. a lot C. much D. far
6. Ted is ___ tall.
A. very B. a lot C. much D. far
7. I think astronomy is ___ more interesting than geology.
A. very B. a lot C. much D. far
8. I think astronomy is ___ interesting.
A. very B. a lot C. much D. far
9. It took me a lot longer to get over my cold than it took you to get over your cold. My cold was ___ worse than yours.
A. very B. a lot C. much D. far

◇练习 15 NOT AS...AS 和 LESS...THAN (表 9-6)

1. I don't live as close to my brother as I do to my sister.
→ (no change possible using less)
2. I don't visit my brother as often as I visit my sister.
→ I visit my brother less often than I visit my sister.
3. Sam isn't as nice as his brother.
4. Sam isn't as generous as his brother.
5. I'm not as eager to go to the circus as the children are.
6. A notebook isn't as expensive as a textbook.
7. Wood isn't as hard as metal.
8. Some people think that life in a city isn't as peaceful as life in a small town.
9. The moon isn't nearly as far away from the earth as the sun is.
10. I don't travel to Europe on business as frequently as I used to. people. I don't know many people at all.

◇练习 16 模糊比较(表 9-7)

选出模糊比较的句子，并进行必要的改正。

1. ___√___ Sam enjoys football more than his best friend does.

2. Ok Andy writes better financial reports than his boss.
3. The coach helped Anna more than Nancy.
4. Sara likes tennis more than her husband
5. Cathy leaves more generous tips at restaurants than her husband.
6. Kelly eats more organic food than his roommate.
7. Charles knows Judy better than Kevin.

◇练习 17 MORE 与名词连用(表 9-3 和 9-8)

从下表中选出合适的词语, 用其比较级形式(morel-er)完成下列句子, 如果是形容词选 ADJ;

如果是副词, 选 ADV; 如果是名词, 选 NOUN。

books	friends	✓ newspapers
carefully	homework	pleasant
loud	snow	easily

1. My husband always wants to know everything that is going on in the world. He reads many more newspapers than I do. ADJ ADV NOUN
2. University students study hard. They have a lot than high school Students. ADJ ADV NOUN
3. There is far in winter in Alaska than there is in Texas. ADJ ADV NOUN
4. I'm lonely. I wish I had to go places with and spend time with. ADJ ADV NOUN
5. A warm, sunny day is than a cold windy day. ADJ ADV NOUN
6. Rob picks up languages with little difficulty. For me, learning a second language is slow and difficult. I guess some people just learn languages a lot than others. ADJ ADV NOUN
7. The New York City Public Library has many than the public library in Sweetwater, Oregon. ADJ ADV NOUN
8. I have been driving since my accident. ADJ ADV NOUN
9. Karen doesn't need a microphone when she speaks to the audience. She's the only person I know whose voice is than mine. ADJ ADV NOUN

◇练习 18 重复比较级(表 9-9)

用下表中的词完成句子。重复比较级。

angry	expensive	cold	long
sleepy	friendly	fast	
big	✓ good	loud	

1. His health is improving. He's getting better and better.
2. They just had their sixth child. Their family is getting .
3. As we continued traveling north, the weather got .
Eventually, everything we saw was frozen.
4. As the soccer game progressed, the crowd became .
My ears started ringing!
5. I was really mad! I got until my brother touched my arm and told me to calm down.

6. We were so glad we had arrived early at the ticket office. As we waited for it to open, the line
Got _____.
7. Textbooks are costly. They are getting _____ every year.
8. We stayed up all night to work on our geology project. We became _____ as the night wore on, but we stayed awake and finally finished in time for class.
9. The people I met in my new job became _____.we became better acquainted. Soon I began spending time with them after work.
10. When Joan was training for the marathon race, she was pretty slow in the beginning, but she
got _____ as time went by. Eventually her time was so good that her coach thought she might have a chance to win.

◇练习 19 双重比较级(表 9-10)

用双重比较级完成下列句子。

1. I exercise every day. Exercise makes me strong. the more I exercise, the stronger I get.
2. If butter is soft, it is easy to spread on bread. The the butter is, the it is to spread on bread.
3. I know many things now that I wasn't aware of when I was younger. It seems that the I get, the I get.
4. I'm trying to make my life simpler. It makes me feel more relaxed. the my life, the I feel.
5. I spend a long time each day looking at a computer screen. My eyes get very tired. The I look at a computer Screen, the my eyes get.
6. when the wind blows hard, it whistles through the trees a lot. The the wind blows, the it whistles through the trees.

◇练习 20 双重比较级(表 9-10)

用括号中的信息和双重比较级完成下列句子。

1. (I became bored. He talked.)
I met a man at a party last night. I tried to be interested in what he was saying, but the more he talked, the more bored I became.
2. (You understand more. You are old.)
I here are many advantages to being young, but the _____.
3. (I became confused. I thought about it.)
At first I thought I understood what she'd said, but the _____.
4. (The air is very pollution. The chances of developing respiratory diseases are great.)
Pollution poses many dangers. For example, the _____.
5. (Bill talked very fast. I became confused.)
Bill was trying to explain some complicated physics problems to help me prepare for an exam.
He kept talking faster and faster.
The _____.
6. (the fans clapped and cheered. The basketball team made more shorts.)
The fans in the stadium were excited and noisy and it seemed to make their team play better.
The _____.

◇练习 21 最高级的用法 (表 9-11)

用下表中所给信息和最高级完成下列句子。如果你不知道正确答案，可以猜测。

✓ familiar	large eyes	long necks
intelligent	large	ears

- Kangaroos are the most familiar of all Australian grassland animals.
- Giraffes have _____ of all animals.
- African elephants have _____ of all animals.
- Horses have _____ of all four-legged animals.
- Bottle-nosed dolphins are _____ animals that live in water. Apes and monkeys are _____ animals that live on land(besides human beings).

◇练习 22 最高级的用法(表 9-11)

比较。

I. 用最高级和合适的词: in, of 或 ever 完成句子。

- Physics is(difficult) the most difficult course I have ever taken.
- Isn't my hometown(friendly) the friendliest place of all the towns you have visited?
- What is(embarrassing) the most embarrassing experience you have had in your life?
- My friends say that my grandmother is(wise) _____ person they have _____ met.
- My wire is(good) _____ cook _____ the world.
- My three children all have artistic talent, but Jimmy is(artistic) _____ all.
- My bedroom on the third floor is(hot) _____ room _____ the house.
- July is (warm) _____ month _____ the year.
- Min-Sok is one of (bright) _____ students I've _____ taught.
- Which is(high) _____ mountain _____ the World, K2 or Mt. Everest?
- My mother found Dr. John to be (knowledgeable) _____ doctor _____ all the doctors she has gone to.
- What is (important) _____ tiling you could do _____ your life?

II. 用 least 和合适的词: in, of 或 ever 完成句子。

- Ed is not lazy, but he is certainly (ambitious) the least ambitious of all the people I have worked with.
- That painting didn't cost much. It is (expensive) _____ work of art we have _____ bought.
- Antarctica is (populated) _____ continent _____ the world.
- Kim seems addicted to the Internet. I think (amount) _____ of time she has _____ spent on it is four hours.

◇练习 23 AS.....AS, MORE/-ER 和 MOST/-EST(表 9-1→9-11)

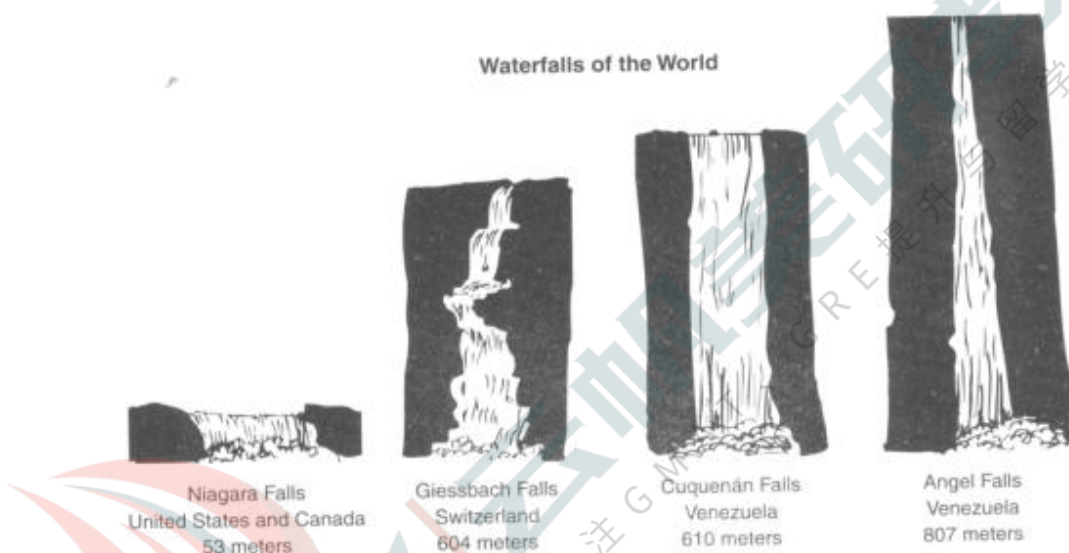
I. 用所给的表达比较括号中物品的成本

- (a pencil vs. a telephone)
A pencil is less expensive than a telephone.
- (a paper clip vs. a diamond ring)
_____ Is much more expensive than _____.

3. (a cup of coffee vs. a can of coffee beans)
_____ is not as expensive as _____.
4. (radios vs. CD players vs. big screen TVs)
_____ and _____ are both less expensive than _____.
5. (a compact car vs. a house)
_____ is not nearly as expensive as _____.
6. (footballs vs. soccer balls vs. ping-pong balls vs. basketballs)
_____, _____, and _____ are all more expensive than _____.

II. 用所给的表达比较瀑布。

7. Angel falls is much higher than niagara falls*.
8. is almost as high _____.
9. is the highest _____.
10. _____ is not nearly as high _____.
11. _____ is not quite as high _____.



III. 用所给的表达比较括号中物品的重量。

12. (air, iron) air _____ is lighter _____ than iron _____.
13. (iron, wood) _____ is heavier _____.
14. (water, iron, wood, air) Of the four elements, _____ is the heaviest
15. (water, air) _____ is not as heavy _____.
16. (water, iron, wood, air) Of the four elements, _____ is the lightest
17. (water, air) _____ is not nearly as light _____.
18. (water, iron, wood) _____ and _____ are both heavier _____.

◇练习 24 在比较级中使用 NEVER(表 9-4)

选出与所给句子的意思最接近的句子。

1. I've never taken a harder test in this class.
 - a. The test was hard.
 - b. The test wasn't hard.
2. I've never taken a hard test in this class.
 - a. The tests in this class are hard.
 - b. The tests in this class aren't hard.
3. Professor Jones has never given a difficult test.

- a. The test was difficult.
 - b. The test wasn't difficult.
4. Professor Smith has never given a more difficult test.
 - a. His tests are difficult.
 - b. His tests aren't difficult.
 5. I've never heard of a worse economic situation in Leadville.
 - a. Leadville has a bad economic situation.
 - b. Leadville doesn't have a bad economic situation.
 6. I've never heard of a bad economic situation in Leadville.
 - a. Leadville has bad economic situations.
 - b. Leadville doesn't have bad economic situations.
 7. We've never stayed in a more comfortable hotel room.
 - a. The room was comfortable.
 - b. The room wasn't comfortable.
 8. We've never stayed in a comfortable room at that hotel.
 - a. The rooms are comfortable.
 - b. The rooms aren't comfortable.

◇练习 25 适用 NEVER 和 EVER 表达比较 (表 9-4 和 9-11)

1. Pierre told a really funny story. It is the funniest story I've ever heard (in my life). I've never heard a funnier story (than that one).
2. John felt very sad when he saw the child begging for money. In fact, he has never felt _____ (than he did then). That is _____ he has ever felt (in his life).
3. Jan just finished a really good book. She thinks it was _____ book she has ever read. She says that she has never read a _____.
4. The villagers fought the rising flood all through the night. They were exhausted when the river finally crested. They have never had a _____ experience. That _____ was _____ experience they have ever had.
5. When her daughter was born, Rachel felt extremely happy. In fact, she has never felt _____ (than she did then). That was _____ she has ever felt (in her life).
6. Oscar told a very entertaining story after dinner. In fact, he has never told a _____ story. It is one of _____ stories I have ever heard in my life.
7. Mari studied very hard for her college entrance exams. In fact, she has never studied _____. That _____ was _____ she has ever studied in her life.
8. The weather is really hot today! In fact, so far this year the weather has never been _____. This is _____ weather we've had so far this year.

◇练习 26 复习比较级和最高级(表 9-1→9-11)

使用括号中词语的适当形式和其他必要的词完成下列句子。

1. Sometimes I feel like all of my friends are (intelligent) more intelligent than I am, and yet, sometimes they tell me that they think I am (smart) the smartest person in the class.
2. One of (popular) _____ holidays _____ Japan is New Year's.
3. A mouse is (small) _____ a rat.
4. Europe is first in agricultural production of potatoes, (potatoes) _____
are grown in Europe _____ on any other continent.
5. Mercury is (close) _____ planet to the sun. It moves around the sun (fast) _____ any other planet in the solar system.
6. In terms of area, (large) _____ state _____ the United States is Alaska, but it has one of (small) _____ populations _____ all the states.
7. Nothing is (important) _____ good health. Certainly, gaining wealth is much (important) _____ enjoying good health.
8. I need more facts. I can't make my decision until I get (information) _____
9. Rebecca is a wonderful person. I don't think I've ever met a (kind) _____ and (generous) _____ person.
10. You can trust her. You will never meet a (honest) person _____ she is.
11. I'm leaving! This is (bad) _____ movie I've ever seen! I won't sit through another second of it.
12. One of (safe) _____ places to be during a lightning storm is inside a car.
13. Small birds have a much (fast) _____ heartbeat _____ large birds.
14. Are your feet exactly the same size? Almost everyone's left foot is (big) _____ their right foot.*
15. Both Bangkok and Venice are famous for their waterways, but Bangkok has (extensive) _____ canals _____ Venice has.

◇练习 27 复习比较级和最高级 (表 9-1→9-11)

1. I feel (safe) safer in a plane than I do in a car.
2. Jakarta is (large) city _____ Indonesia.
3. Mountain climbing takes (strength) _____ walking on a level path.
4. Cheese usually tastes (good) _____ at room temperature than it does just after you take it out of the refrigerator.
5. The (short) _____ distance between two points is a straight line.

6. The (thin) _____ a lemon's rind is, the (juicy) _____ the lemon is.
7. Mr. Hochingnauong feels (comfortable) _____ speaking his native language _____ he does speaking English.
8. My friend has studied many languages. He thinks Japanese is (difficult) _____ all the languages he has studied.
9. One of the (bad) _____ nuclear accidents _____ the world occurred at Chernobyl in 1986.
10. I think learning a second language is (hard) _____ learning chemistry or mathematics.
11. The (low) _____ temperature ever recorded in Alaska was minus 80°F (-27°C) in 1971.
12. Computers are complicated machines, but probably (complex) _____ thing _____ the universe is the human brain.
13. I've seen a lot of funny movies over the years, but the one I saw last night was (funny) _____ all.
14. Riding a bicycle can be dangerous, (people) _____ were killed in bicycle accidents last year _____ have been killed in airplane accidents in the last four years.
15. Some people build their own boats from parts that they order from a manufacturer. They save money that way. It is (expensive) _____ to build your own boat _____ to buy a boat.

◇练习 28 LIKE, ALIKE(表 9-12)

用 like 或 alike 完成下列句子。

1. My mother and my father rarely argue because they think alike.
2. The Browns designed their summer cabin to look like the inside of a boat.
3. Joe and John are twins, but they don't look _____.
4. They dress _____ because they have the same taste in clothes.
5. This lamp doesn't look _____ the one I ordered.
6. Mike is 30, but he continually acts _____ a child.
7. Professor Miller's lectures are all _____: repetitive and boring.
8. This coffee doesn't taste _____ the coffee we sampled at the store.
9. The clouds to the east look _____ rain clouds.
10. My grandmother and mother sound _____ on the phone.

◇练习 29 THE SAME AS, SIMILAR TO, DIFFERENT FROM(表 9-12)

用正确的介词: as, to 或 from 完成下列句子。

1. My coat is different from yours.
2. Our apartment is similar to my cousin's.
3. The news report was the same as the report we heard on Channel Six last night.
4. How is the North Pole different _____ the South Pole?
5. Your jacket is exactly the same _____ mine.

6. I enjoyed reading your letters from China. My experiences in Beijing were similar _____ yours.
7. For many students, their grades in college are similar _____ their grades in high school.
8. The movie on our flight to London was the same _____ the movie on our flight to Paris.
9. Some herbal teas are somewhat similar _____ green tea.
10. Courtship and dating patterns in Europe are very different _____ those in many Middle Eastern and Asian countries.
11. Except for a few minor differences in grammar, spelling, and vocabulary, American English is the same _____ British English.
12. The English spoken in the United States is only slightly different _____ the English spoken in Britain, Canada, and Australia.

◇ 练习 30 LIKE, ALIKE, SIMILAR (TO), DIFFERENT (FROM) (表 9-12)

I. 用括号中的词比较下列图形。



1. like A is like D.
 2. alike _____.
 3. similar (to) _____ and _____.
 4. different (from) _____, _____, and _____.
- II. 用 the same (as), similar (to) 或 different (from) 比较这图形。



5. All of the triangles are _____ each other.
6. A and D are _____ each other.
7. A and C are _____.
8. A isn't _____ C.
9. B and C are _____ D.

◇ 练习 31 THE SAME, SIMILAR, DIFFERENT, LIKE, ALIKE (表 9-12)

用 the same, similar, different, like 或 alike 完成下列句子。

1. Dana swims _____ like _____ a fish. She never wants to come out of the water.
2. The lake doesn't have a ripple on it. It looks _____ glass.
3. There are six girls in our family, but none of us look _____. Our brothers also look different.
4. A: Some people can tell we're sisters. Do you think we look _____?
B: Somewhat. The color of your hair is not _____, but your eyes are exactly _____ color. You also have shaped face.
5. A: I'm sorry, but I believe you have my umbrella.
B: Oh? Yes, I see. It looks almost exactly _____ mine, doesn't it?
6. A: How do you like the spaghetti sauce I made? I tried to make it exactly _____

yours.

B: I can tell. Your sauce is very _____ the one I make, but I think it's _____ missing one spice.

A: Oh? What's that?

B: That's a secret! But I'll tell if you promise to keep it a secret.

7. Some people think my sister and I are twins. We look _____ and talk _____, but our personalities are quite _____.

8. Homonyms are words that have _____ pronunciation but different spelling, such as "pair" and "pear" or "sea" and "see." For many people, "been" and "bean" are homonyms and have _____ pronunciation. For other people, however, "been" and "bean" are _____ words with different pronunciations. These people pronounce "been" like "bin" or "ben."

◇练习 32 错误分析（第九章）

改错。

1. My brother is older than me.
2. A sea is more deeper than a lake.
3. A donkey isn't as big to a horse.
4. Ellen is happiest person I've ever met.
5. When I feel embarrassed, my face gets red and more red.
6. One of a largest animal in the world is the hippopotamus.
7. The traffic on the highway is more bad from than it was a few months ago.
8. Jack is the same old from Jerry.
9. Peas are similar from beans, but they have several differences.
10. Last winter was pretty mild. This winter is cold and rainy. It's much rain than last winter.
11. Mrs. Peters, the substitute teacher, is very friendly than the regular instructor.
12. Although alligators and crocodiles are similar, alligators are less big than crocodiles.
13. Mohammed and Tarek come from different countries, but they became friends easily because they speak a same language, Arabic.
14. Mothers of young children are busier than mothers of teenagers.
15. We'd like to go sailing, but the wind is not as strong today that it was yesterday.
16. We asked for a non-smoking room, but the air and furniture in our hotel room smelled cigarette smoke.

第十章 被动语态

◇练习 1 主动语态与被动语态的比较（表 10-1）

如果句子是主动，选 ACTIVE；如果是被动语态，选 PASSIVE. 用下划线划出动词。

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. ACTIVE <u>PASSIVE</u> | Farmers grow rice. |
| 2. ACTIVE <u>PASSIVE</u> | Rice is grown by farmers. |
| 3. ACTIVE <u>PASSIVE</u> | Sara wrote the letter. |
| 4. ACTIVE <u>PASSIVE</u> | The letter was written by Sara. |
| 5. ACTIVE <u>PASSIVE</u> | The teacher explained the lesson. |
| 6. ACTIVE <u>PASSIVE</u> | The lesson was explained by the teacher. |
| 7. ACTIVE <u>PASSIVE</u> | Bridges are designed by engineers. |
| 8. ACTIVE <u>PASSIVE</u> | Engineers design bridges. |

◇练习 2 主动语态与被动语态的比较（表 10-1）

将斜体的主动语态动词改写成被动语态。

1. Mr. Catt *delivers* our mail. Our mail is delivered by Mr. Catt.

2. The children *have* the cake _____

by the children.
eaten the cake.

3. Linda *wrote* that letter. That letter _____
by Linda.
letter.

4. The jeweler *is going* to fix my watch. My watch _____
by the jeweler.
to fix my watch.

5. Ms. Bond *will teach* our class. Our class _____
by Ms. Bond.
our class.

6. Anne *is going to* bring dinner. Dinner _____
by Anne.
bring dinner.

7. Our team *won* the final game. The final game _____
by our team.
final game.

8. Dr. Pitt *will treat* the patient. The patient _____
by Dr. Pitt.
patient.

9. Ms. Davis *has* planted several trees. Several trees _____
by Ms. Davis.
planted several trees.

10. The police *catch* criminals. Criminals _____
by the police.
criminals.

◇练习 3 复习：过去分词 (表 2-6 和 2-7)

写出所给动词过去分词，下表中的动词有规则的也有不规则的。

原形	过去式	过去分词	原形	过去式	过去分词
1. bring	brought	brouaht	14. play	played	
2. build	built		15. read	read	
3. buy	bought		16. save	saved	
4. eat	ate		17. send	sent	
5. plan	planned		18. speak	spoke	
6. give	gave		19. spend	spent	
7. grow	grew		20. take	took	
8. hit	hit		21. teach	taught	
9. hurt	hurt		22. go	went	
10. leave	left		23. visit	visited	
11. lose	lost		24. wear	wore	
12. make	made		25. write	wrote	
13. find	found		26. do	did	

◇练习 4 被动语态形式(表 10-1, 10-2 和 10-5)

用 be 的所给形式 (was, is, going to be 等)和练习 2 中动词的过去分词完成下列句子。

1. was There's no more candy. All the candy was eaten by the children.

2. is Arabic _____ by the people of Syria and Iraq.
3. are Books _____ by authors.
4. was My friend _____ in an accident. He broke his nose.
5. is going to be Bombay, India, _____ by thousands of tourists this year.
6. has been _____ War and Peace is a famous book It by millions of people.
7. will be The championship game _____ in Milan next week.
8. can be Everyone _____ to read. I'll teach you if you'd like.
9. are going to be Our pictures _____ by a professional photographer at the wedding.
10. have been Oranges _____ by farmers in Jordan since ancient times.
11. is Special fire-resistant clothing _____ by firefighters.
12. will be A new bridge across the White River _____ by the city government next year.

◇练习 5 被动含义与主动含义的比较(表 10-1 和 10-2)

选出与所给句子意思相同的句子。

1. My grandmother makes her own bread.
 - a. This bread is made by my grandmother.
 - b. Someone makes my grandmother's bread.
2. Bob was taken to the hospital by car.
 - a. Bob drove to the hospital.
 - b. Someone drove Bob to the hospital.
3. Suzanne has just been asked to her first dance.
 - a. Suzanne has asked someone to the dance.
 - b. Someone has asked Suzanne to the dance.
4. You will be informed of the test results.
 - a. You will inform someone of the test results.
 - b. Someone will inform you of the test results.
5. You are not allowed to enter.
 - a. You do not allow people to enter.
 - b. Someone says you cannot enter.
6. The child was saved after five minutes in the water.
 - a. Someone saved the child.
 - b. The child saved herself.

◇练习 6 被动语态的时态形式 (表 10-1 和 10-2)

用所给动词的被动语态完成下列句子。

✓ collect	grow	understand
eat	pay	write

I. 用一般现在时

1. Taxes _____ are collected _____ by the government.
2. Books _____ by authors.
3. Rice _____ by farmers in Korea.
4. Small fish _____ by big fish.
5. I _____ for my work by my boss.

6. The meaning of a smile _____ by everyone.

build	collect	destroy	write
-------	---------	---------	-------

II. 用一般过去时

7. Yesterday the students' papers _____ weve _____ by the teacher at the end of the test.

8. The Great Wall of China _____ by Chinese emperors more than 2500 years ago.

9. The book War and Peace _____ by Leo Tolstoy, a famous Russian novelist.

10. Several small buildings _____ by the earthquake in Los Angeles.

read	speak	visit	wear
------	-------	-------	------

III. 用现在完成时

11. The pyramids in Egypt have _____ by millions of tourists.

12. Spanish _____ by people in Latin America for nearly 600 years.

13. Mark Twain's books _____ by millions of people through the years.

14. Perfume _____ by both men and women since ancient times.

IV. 用 will

discover	visit	save
----------	-------	------

15. New information about the universe _____ will _____ by scientists in the twenty-first century.

16. Hawaii _____ by thousands of tourists this year.

17. Tigers _____ from extinction by people who care.

V. 用 be going to

elect	hurt	offer
-------	------	-------

18. Your friend is going _____ by your unkind remark when she hears about it.

19. New computer courses _____ by the university next year.

20. A new leader _____ by the people in my country next month.

◇练习 7 被动语态变为主动语态 (表 10-1 和 10-2)

将句子由于被动语态变为主动语态，保持动词的时态不变。

1. Taxes are collected by the government.

→ The government collects taxes.

2. Small fish are eaten by big fish.

3. The meaning of a smile is understood by everyone.

4. War and Peace was written by Leo Tolstoy.

5. The cat was chased by the dog.

6. ABC Corporation is going to be bought by XYZ Inc.

7. The pyramids in Egypt have been visited by millions of tourists.

8. New information about the universe will be discovered by scientists in the twenty-first century.

◇练习 8 被动语态变为主动语态(表 5-2, 10-1 和 10-2)

终句子由被动语态变为主动语态，保持动词的时态不变。有些句子是疑问句。

1. The letter was signed by Mr. Rice.

→ Mr. Rice signed the letter.

2. Was the letter signed by Mr. Foster?

→ Did Mr. Foster sign the letter?

3. The fax was sent by Ms. Owens.

4. Was the other fax sent by Mr. Chu?

5. Will Adam be met at the airport by Mr. Berg?

6. Have you been invited to the reception by Mrs. Jordan?
7. I have been invited to the reception by Mr. Lee.
8. Is the homework going to be collected by the teacher?

◇ 练习 9 及物动词与不及物动词的比较(表 10-3)

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE | Alex wrote a letter. |
| 2. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE | Alex waited for Amy. (There is no object off he verb.) |
| 3. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE | Rita lives in Mexico. |
| 4. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE | Sam walked to his office. |
| 5. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE | Kate caught the ball. |
| 6. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE | My plane arrived at six-thirty. |
| 7. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE | Emily is crying. |
| 8. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE | A falling tree hit my car. |
| 9. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE | I returned the book to the library yesterday. |
| 10. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE | A bolt of lightning appeared in the sky last night. |

◇ 练习 10 主动语态和被动语态(表 10-1→10-3)

如果动词带有宾语，用下划线划出宾语，然后将句子变为被动语态，有些句子不能变为被动语态。

- | 主动 | 被动 |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. A noise awakened me. | <u>I was awakened by a noise.</u> |
| 2. It rained hard yesterday. | <u>(no change)</u> |
| 3. Alice discovered the mistake. | _____ |
| 4. We stayed at a hotel last night. | _____ |
| 主动 | 被动 |
| 5. I slept only four hours last night. | _____ |
| 6. Anita fixed the chair. | _____ |
| 7. Did Susan agree with Prof. Hill? | _____ |
| 8. Ann's cat died last week. | _____ |
| 9. That book belongs to me. | _____ |
| 10. The airplane arrived twenty minutes late. | _____ |
| 11. The teacher announced a quiz. | _____ |
| 12. I agree with Larry. | _____ |
| 13. Do you agree with me? | _____ |
| 14. Jack went to the doctor's office. | _____ |

◇ 练习 11 复习：用及物动词和不及物动词判定被动语态(表 10-1→10-3)

选出被动语态的句子。

1. _____ I came by plane.
2. ☒ I was invited to the party by Alex.
3. _____ Many people died during the earthquake.
4. _____ Many people were killed by collapsing buildings.
5. _____ The earthquake has killed many people.
6. _____ The game will be won by the Bulls.
7. _____ The Bulls will win the game.
8. _____ Gina's baby cried for more than an hour.
9. _____ Most of the fresh fruit at the market was bought by customers.
10. _____ Some customers bought boxes full of fresh fruit.
11. _____ Accidents always occur at that intersection.

◇ 练习 12 BY 短语 (表 10-4)

用下划线划出被动语态的动词，回答问题，如果不知道动者，写上“unknown”。

1. Soft duck feathers are used to make pillows.
Who uses duck feathers to make pillows? unknown
2. The mail was opened by Shelley.
Who opened the mail? shelley
3. Eric Wong's new book will be translated into many languages.
Who will translate Eric Wong's new book? _____
4. Rebecca's bicycle was stolen yesterday from in front of the library. Who stole Rebecca's bicycle? _____
5. Our wedding photos were taken by a professional photographer. Who took our wedding photos? _____
6. Malawi is a small country in southeastern Africa. A new highway is going to be built in Malawi next year.
Who is going to build the new highway? _____
7. There are no more empty apartments in our building. The apartment next to ours has been rented by a young family with two small children.
Who rented the apartment next to ours? _____
8. The apartment directly above ours was empty for two months, but now it has also been rented.
Who rented the apartment directly above ours? _____

◇ 练习 13 BY 短语 (表 I0-4)

删除不必要（没有提供重要的信息）的 by 短语。

1. We were helped right away at the appliance store by someone.
2. We were helped at the appliance store by a friendly and knowledgeable salesperson. (no change)
3. Our mail was delivered early today by someone.
4. My favorite lamp was broken by the children when they were playing ball in the house.
5. Our house was built just last year by Baker Construction Company.
6. Our neighbors' house was built ten years ago by someone who builds houses.
7. The child will be operated on tomorrow by three specialists at Hope Hospital.
8. The child will be operated on tomorrow by someone.

◇ 练习 14 主动语态变为被动语态 (表 I0-I→I0-4)

将句子由主动态变为被动语态，如果有必要，可以使用 by 短语。

1. Someone has canceled the soccer game.
→ The soccer game has been canceled.
2. The president has canceled the meeting.
→ The meeting has been canceled by the president.
3. Someone serves beer and wine at that restaurant.
4. Something confused me in class yesterday.
5. The teacher's directions confused me..
6. No one has washed the dishes yet.
7. Someone should wash them soon.



8. Did someone wash this sweater in hot water?
9. No one should wash wool sweaters in hot water.
10. Luis invited me to the party.

11. Has anyone invited you to the party?

◇练习 15 复习：主动语态与被动语态的比较（表 10-1→10-4）

用所给词语和一般现在时造句。有些句子是被动语态，有些则不是。

1. Sometimes keys / hide / under cars
→ Sometimes keys are hidden under cars.
2. Cats / hide / under cars
→ Cats hide under cars.
3. Students / teach / by teachers
4. Students / study / a lot
5. Cereal / often eat / at breakfast
6. Cats / eat / cat food
7. Mice / eat / by cats
8. Songs / sing / to children / by their mothers
9. Children / sing / songs / in school
10. Thai food / cook / in Thai restaurants
11. Chefs / cook / in restaurants

◇练习 16 被动语态的进行时态（表 10-5）

用下划线划出进行时态的动词，然后用正确的被动语态形式完成下列句子。

1. Some people are considering a new plan.
→ A new plan is being considered
2. The grandparents are watching the children.
→ The children _____ by their grandparents.
3. Some painters are painting Mr. Rivera's apartment this week.
→ Mr. Rivera's apartment _____ this week.
4. We can't use the language lab today because someone is fixing the equipment.
→ We can't use the language lab today because the equipment _____
5. We couldn't use the language lab yesterday because someone was fixing the equipment.
→ We couldn't use the language lab yesterday because the equipment _____
6. Eric's cousins are meeting him at the airport this afternoon.
→ Eric _____ by his cousins at the airport this afternoon.
7. I watched while the movers were moving the furniture from my apartment to a truck.
→ I watched while the furniture _____ from my apartment to a truck.
8. Everyone looked at the flag while they were singing the national anthem.
→ Everyone looked at the flag while the national anthem _____
9. Scientists are still discovering new species of plants and animals.
→ New species of plants and animals _____

◇练习 17 进行时态动词的被动形式（表 10-5）

用下表所给动词和现在进行时或过去时完成下列句子。所有的句子都是被动语态。

build	clean	fly	✓ play	read	watch
-------	-------	-----	--------	------	-------

1. A soccer game _____ is being played _____ in Wellstone Arena today.
2. The office _____ was _____ by the janitor when I got there early this morning.
3. A new house _____ in our neighborhood right now.
4. The book _____ aloud to the children by the teacher in the first grade class right now.
5. The protestors _____ by the police during the anti-war demonstration.

6. The small plane _____ by the co-pilot when it crashed.

◇练习 18 进行时态动词的被动形式 (表 10-5)

选出与所给句子意思相同的句子。

1. A mouse is being chased.
a. A mouse is trying to catch something.
⑤ Something is trying to catch a mouse.
2. The soldiers are being trained.
a. The soldiers are training someone.
b. Someone is training the soldiers.
3. The earthquake victims are being helped by the medics.
a. The medics are receiving help.
b. The victims are receiving help.
4. The children were trying to find their parents after the school play.
a. The children were looking for their parents.
b. The parents were looking for their children.
5. The airline passengers were being asked to wait while the plane was cleaned.
a. The passengers made a request.
b. Someone asked the passengers to wait.

◇练习 19 复习： 主动语态与被动语态的比较 (表 10-1→10-5)

如果句子正确，写“C”；如果不正确，写“I”，并进行必要的改正。

1. I It was happened many years ago.
2. C Rice is grown in California.
3. _____ I was go to school yesterday.
4. _____ Two firefighters have injured while they were fighting the fire.
5. _____ Sara was accidentally broken the window.
6. _____ Kara was eaten a snack when she got home from school.
7. _____ Timmy was eating when the phone rang.
8. _____ I am agree with you.
9. _____ The little boy was fallen down while he was running in the park.
10. _____ The swimmer was died from a shark attack.
11. _____ The swimmer was killed by a shark.
12. _____ I was slept for nine hours last night.

◇练习 20 情态动词的被动语态 (表 10-6)

1. Someone might cancel class.
→ Class might be canceled.
2. A doctor can prescribe medicine.
3. Mr. Hook must sign this report.
4. Someone may build a new post office on First Street.
5. People have to place stamps in the upper right-hand corner of an envelope.
6. Someone ought to paint that fence.
7. All of the students must do the assignment

◇练习 21 情态动词的被动语态 (表 10-6)

build	kill	✓ put off	teach	write
divide	know	sell	tear down	

1. Don't postpone things you need to do. Important work _____ shouldn't be put off until the last minute. (should not)
2. Your application letter _____ in ink, not pencil. (must)
3. Dogs _____ to do tricks. (can)

4. Mrs. Papadopolous didn't want her son to go to war because he _____
_____ (could)
5. My son's class is too big. It _____ into two
classes. (ought to)
6. A: Hey, Tony. These bananas are getting too ripe. They _____
today. Reduce the price. (must)
B: Right away, Mr. Rice.
7. It takes time to correct an examination that is taken by ten thousand students nationwide.
The test results _____ for at least four weeks. (will not)
8. The big bank building on Main Street was severely damaged in the earthquake. The
structure is no longer safe. The building _____ (has to)
Then a new bank _____ in the same place. (can)

◇练习 22 情态动词的被动语态 (表 10-6)

将情态动词从主动语态变为被动语态，完成下列句子。

- This book (have to return) has to be returned to the library today.
- That book (should return) _____ tomorrow.
- This letter (must send) _____ today.
- This package (could send) _____ tomorrow.
- That package (should send) _____ by express mail.
- That box (can put away) _____ now.
- The boxes (may throw away) _____ soon.
- Those boxes (might pick up) _____ this
afternoon.
- This room (will clean up) _____ soon.

◇练习 23 总结:主动语态与被动语态的比较 (表 10-1 → 10-6)

如果句子是主动语态，选 ACTIVE；如果是被动语态，选 PASSIVE。用下划线划出动词。

1. ACTIVE PASSIVE People have used sundials since ancient times.

2. ACTIVE (PASSIVE) Sundials have been used for almost three
thousand years.



3. ACTIVE PASSIVE Sundials, clocks, and watches are used to
tell time.

4. ACTIVE PASSIVE Some watches show the date as well as
the time.

5. ACTIVE PASSIVE On digital watches, the time is shown by lighted
numbers.

6. ACTIVE PASSIVE The first watches were made in Europe six hundred years ago.

7. ACTIVE PASSIVE The earliest watches were worn around a person's neck.

8. ACTIVE PASSIVE Pocket watches became popular in the 1600s.

9. ACTIVE PASSIVE Today most people wear wristwatches.

10. ACTIVE PASSIVE Close to seventy million watches are sold in the United States
each year.

11. ACTIVE PASSIVE How many watches are made and sold throughout the world in
one year?

12. ACTIVE PASSIVE Somewhere in the world, a watch is being sold at this very

- | | | |
|------------|---------|---|
| | | moment. |
| 13. ACTIVE | PASSIVE | Many different styles of watches can be bought today. |
| 14. ACTIVE | PASSIVE | Do you own a watch? |
| 15. ACTIVE | PASSIVE | Where was it made? |

◇练习 24 总结：主动语态与被动语态的比较 (表 10-1→10-6)

- I don't have my car today. It's in the garage. It (repair)_____ is being repaired right now.
- Kate didn't have her car last week because it was in the garage. While it (repair)_____, she took the bus to work.
- The mechanic (repair)_____ Tina's car last week.
- Glass (make)_____ from sand.
- You (should carry, not)_____ large sums of money with you.
- Large sums of money (ought to keep) _____ in a bank, don't you think?
- At our high school, the students' grades (send)_____ to their parents four times each year.
- I'm sorry, but the computer job is no longer available. A new computer programmer (hire, already) _____
- Household cleaning agents (must use)_____ with care. For example, mixing chlorine bleach with ammonium (can produce)_____ toxic gases.
- What products (manufacture)_____ in your country?
- Aluminum* is a valuable metal that (can use)_____ again and again. Because this metal (can recycle)_____, aluminum cans (should throw away, not)_____
- Endangered wildlife (must protect)_____ from extinction.
- People with the moral courage to fight against injustices (can find) in every corner of the world.

*aluminum (美国英语) = aluminium (英国英语)

◇练习 25 总结：主动语态与被动语态的比较 (表 10-1→10-6)

用括号中的词语完成句子，用主动语态或被动语态。

- Flowers (love) _____ are loved _____ throughout the world. Their beauty (bring) _____ brings _____ joy to people's lives. Flowers (use, often) _____ to decorate homes or tables in restaurants. Public gardens (can find) _____ in almost every country in the world.
- Around 250,000 different kinds of flowers (exist) _____ in the world. The majority of these species (find) _____ only in the tropics. Nontropical areas (have) many fewer kinds of flowering plants than tropical regions.
- Flowers may spread from their native region to other similar regions. Sometimes seeds (carry) _____ by birds or animals. The wind also (carry) _____ some seeds. In many cases throughout history, flowering plants (introduce) _____ into new areas by humans.
- Flowers (appreciate) _____ mostly for their beauty, but they can also be a source of food. For example, honey (make) _____ from the nectar which (gather) _____ from flowers by bees. And some flower buds (eat) _____ as food; for example, broccoli and cauliflower are actually flower buds.
- Some very expensive perfumes (make) _____ from the petals of

flowers.

Most perfumes today, however, (come, not) _____ from natural fragrances. Instead, they are synthetic; they (make) _____ from chemicals in a laboratory.

6. Some kinds of flowers (may plant) _____ in pots and (grow) _____ indoors. Most flowers, however, (survive) best outdoors in their usual environment.

◇练习 26 过去分词用作形容词 (表 10-7)

用正确的介词完成下列句子。

I. Jack is...

1. married _____ to _____ Katie.
2. excited _____ vacation.
3. exhausted _____ work.
4. frightened _____ heights.
5. disappointed _____ his new car.
6. tired _____ rain.
7. pleased _____ his new boss.
8. involved _____ charity work.
9. worried _____ his elderly parents.
10. acquainted _____ a famous movie star.

II. Jack's friend is ...

11. interested _____ sports.
12. done _____ final exams.
13. terrified _____ spiders.
14. related _____ a famous movie star.
15. opposed _____ private gun ownership.
16. pleased _____ his part-time job.
17. divorced _____ his Wife.

III. Jack's house is ...

18. made _____ wood.
19. located _____ the suburbs.
20. crowded _____ antique furniture.
21. prepared _____ emergencies.

◇练习 27 过去分词用作形容词 (表 10-7)

下面每个句子都有错误的过去分词用作形容词的情况，找出并将其改正。

- excited about
1. The little girl is excite in her coming birthday party.
 2. Mr. and Mrs. Rose devoted each other.
 3. Could you please help me? I need directions. I lost.
 4. The students are boring in their chemistry project.
 5. The paper bags at this store is composed in recycled products.
 6. Your friend needs a doctor. He hurt.
 7. How well are you prepare the driver's license test?
 8. Mary has been engaging with Paul for five years. Will they ever get married?

◇练习 28 -ED 与 ING 的比较 (表 10-8)

用括号中适当的词语的-en 或-ing 形式完成下列句子。



Ben is reading a book. He really likes it. He can't put it down. He has to keep reading.

1. The book is really interesting (interest)
2. Ben is really interested (interest)
3. The story is exciting (excite)
4. Ben is excited about the story. (excite)
5. Ben is fascinated by the characters in the book. (fascinate)
6. The people in the story are fascinating (fascinate)
7. Ben doesn't like to read books when he is bored and confused (bore, confuse)
8. Ben didn't finish the last book he started because it was boring and confusing (bore, confuse)
9. What is the most interesting book you've read lately? (interest)
10. I just finished a mystery story that had a very ending. (fascinate, surprise)

◇练习 29 -ED 与 ING 的比较 (表 10-8)

选出正确的形容词。

1. bother to read that book. It's boring bored.
2. The students are interested, interested in learning more about the subject.
3. Ms. Green doesn't explain things well. The students are confused, confusing.
4. Have you heard the latest news? It's really exciting, excited.
5. I don't understand these directions. I'm confused, confusing.
6. I read an interesting, interested article in the newspaper this morning.
7. I heard some surprising, surprised news on the radio.
8. I'm bored, boring. Let's do something. How about going to a movie?
9. Mr. Sawyer bored me. I think he is a boring, bored person.
10. Mr. Ball fascinates me. I think he is a fascinating, fascinated person.
11. Most young children are fascinated, fascinating by animals.
12. Young children think that animals are fascinating, fascinated.
13. That was an embarrassing, embarrassed experience.
14. I read a shocking, shocked report yesterday on the number of children who die from starvation in the world every day. I was really shocked, shocking.
15. The children went to a circus. For them, the circus was exciting, excited. The exciting,



Excited children jumped up and down.

◇练习 30 -ED 与-INGI 的比较 (表 10-8)

选出正确的形容词。

1. The street signs in our city are confused, confusing.
2. The drivers are frustrated, frustrating.
3. The professor's lecture on anatomy was confused, confusing for the students.
4. The student was very embarrassed, embarrassing by all the attention she got for her high test scores.
5. Sophie said it was embarrassed, embarrassing to have so many people congratulate her.
6. I am really interested, interesting in eighteenth-century art.
7. Eighteenth-century art is really interested, interesting.
8. What an exhausted, exhausting day! I am so tired, tiring from picking strawberries.
9. Some of the new horror movies are frightened, frightening because they are so realistic.
10. Young children shouldn't see them. They would become too frightened, frightening.

◇练习 31 -ED 与-ING 的比较 (表 10-8)

下列每组句子中有一个是错的，在错误的句子旁写：“I”

1. a. ☐ Science fascinates me.
b. ☐ Science is fascinating to me.
c. I Science is fascinated to me.
2. a. ☐ The baby is exciting about her new toy.
b. ☐ The baby is excited about her new toy.
c. ☐ The new toy is exciting to the baby.
3. a. ☐ The book is really interesting.
b. ☐ The book is really interested.
c. ☐ The book interests me.
4. a. ☐ I am exhausting from working in the fields.
b. ☐ I am exhausted from working in the fields.
c. ☐ Working in the fields exhausts me.
d. ☐ Working in the fields is exhausting.
5. a. ☐ Your grandmother is amazing to me.
b. ☐ Your grandmother amazes me.
c. ☐ Your grandmother is amazed to me.
d. ☐ I am amazed by your grandmother.

◇练习 32 GET+ 形容词和过去分词 (表 10-9)

用下表中的词语完成下列句子。

arrested	dressed	invited	lost	stolen
bored	hungry	late	rich	wet
✓ sick	dizzy			

- Just a few days before the Jensens were going to leave for a family reunion in Hawaii, everyone got Sick with the flu. They had to cancel their trip.
- When Jane gave us directions to her house, I got _____. So I asked her to explain again how to get there.
- Some people are afraid of heights. They get _____ and have trouble keeping their balance.
- I didn't like the movie last night. It wasn't interesting. I got _____ and wanted to leave early.
- When's dinner? I'm getting _____.
- We should leave for the concert soon. It's getting _____. We should leave in the next five minutes if we want to be on time.
- I want to make a lot of money. Do you know a good way to get _____ quick?

8. Jake got _____ for stealing a car yesterday. He's in jail now.



9. I overslept this morning. When I finally woke up, I jumped out of



bed, got _____, picked up my books, and ran to class.

10. Anita got _____ when she stood near the pool of dolphins. They splashed her more than once.

11. Yes, I have an invitation to Joan and Paul's wedding. Don't worry, You'll get _____ to the wedding, too.

12. Tarik was afraid his important papers or his wife's jewelry might get _____, so he had a wall safe installed in his home.

◇练习 33 GET+ 形容词和过去分词 (表 10-9)

用 get 的适当形式完成下列句子。

- Shake a leg! Step on it! Get busy. There's no time to waste.
- Tom and Sue got married last month.
- Let's stop working for a while. I am getting tired.
- I don't want to get old, but I guess it happens to everybody.
- I _____ interested in biology when I was in high school, so I decided to major in it in college.
- My father started _____ bald when he was in his twenties. I'm in my twenties, and I'm starting _____ bald. It must be in the genes.
- Brrr. It _____ cold in here. Maybe we should turn on the furnace.
- When I was in the hospital, I got a card from my aunt and uncle. It said, "_____ well soon."
- When I went downtown yesterday, I _____ lost. I didn't remember to take my map of the city with me.
- A: Why did you leave the party early?

- B: I _____ bored.
11. A: I _____ hungry. Let's eat soon.
B: Okay.
12. A: What happened?
B: I don't know. Suddenly I _____ dizzy, but I'm okay now.
13. A: Do you want to go for a walk?
B: Well, I don't know. It _____ dark outside right now. Let's wait and go for a walk tomorrow.
14. I always _____ nervous when I have to give a speech.
15. A: Where's Bud? He was supposed to be home two hours ago. He always calls when he's late. I _____ worried. Maybe we should call the police.
B: Relax. He'll be home soon.
16. A: Hurry up and _____ dressed. We have to leave in ten minutes.
B: I'm almost ready.
17. A: I'm going on a diet.
B: Oh?
A: See? This shirt is too tight. I _____ fat.
18. A: Janice and I are thinking about _____ married in June.
B: That's a nice month for a wedding.

◇练习 34 BE USED/ACCUSTOMED TO (表 2-11 表 10-10)

1. Frank has lived alone for twenty years. He _____ alone.
A. used to live (B) is used to living (C) is accustomed to living
2. I _____ with my family, but now I live alone.
(A) used to live B. am used to living C. am accustomed to living
3. Rita rides her bike to work every day. She _____ her bike to work.
A. used to ride B. is used to riding C. is accustomed to riding
4. Tom rode his bike to work for many years, but now he takes the bus. Tom _____ his bike accustomed to riding
A. used to ride B. is used to riding C. is
5. Carl showers every day. He _____ a shower every day.
A. used to take B. is used to taking C. is accustomed to taking
6. Carl _____ a bath only once a week, but now he showers every day.
A. used to take B. is used to taking C. is accustomed to taking
7. Ari _____ a small breakfast every day because he was always in a hurry.
A. used to eat B. is used to eating C. is accustomed to eating
8. Maria _____ a large breakfast because she likes to take her time in the morning.
A. used to eat B. is used to eating C. is accustomed to eating

◇练习 35 USED TO 与 BE USED TO 的比较 (表 10-11)

在需要的地方用 be 的适当形式填空。如果不需要, 则写 ϕ

1. Trains ϕ used to be the main means of cross-continental travel. Today, most people take airplanes for long-distance travel.
2. Ms. Stanton's job requires her to travel extensively throughout the world. She _____ is used to traveling by plane.
3. You and I are from different cultures. You _____ used to having fish for breakfast. I used to having cheese and bread for breakfast.
4. People _____ used to throw away or burn their newspapers after reading them, but now many people recycle them.
5. Jeremy wakes up at 5:00 every morning for work. After a year of doing this, he _____ used to getting up early, even on weekends.
6. Mrs. Hansen _____ used to do all of the laundry and cooking for her family. Now the

children are older and Mrs. Hansen has gone back to teaching, so the whole family shares these household chores.

7. Before modern dentistry, people _____ used to pull painful teeth.

8. Cindy swims only in swimming pools. She _____ used to swim in lakes and rivers, but now she finds them too cold

◇练习 36 USED TO 与 BE USED TO 的比较 (表 10-11)

用 used to/be used to 及括号中动词的正确形式完成下列句子。

1. Kate grew up on a farm. She (get) used to get up at dawn and go to bed as soon as the sun went down. Now she works in the city at an advertising agency and has different sleeping hours.

2. Hiroki's workweek is seven days long. He (work) _____ on Saturdays and Sundays.

3. Luis spends weekends with his family now. He (attend) _____ soccer games before he was married, but now he enjoys staying home with his young children.

4. Sally went back to school to become a computer programmer. She (work) _____ as a typist, but now she has a job that she likes better.

5. Joan has taught kindergarten for eight years. She (teach) _____ small children and uses many creative techniques with them.

6. Before I went overseas, I had a very simple, uninteresting diet. After visiting many different countries, however, I (eat) _____ much spicier, tastier dishes now.

◇练习 37 BE SUPPOSED TO (表 10-12)

用 be supposed to 写出与原句意思相近的句子。

1. Someone expected me to return this book to the library yesterday, but I didn't.

→ I was supposed to return this book to the library.

2. Our professor expects us to read Chapter 9 before class tomorrow.

3. Someone expected me to go to a party last night, but I stayed home.

4. The teacher expects us to do Exercise 10 for homework.

5. The weather bureau has predicted rain for tomorrow. According to the weather bureau, it

6. The directions on the pill bottle say, "Take one pill every six hours." According to the directions on the bottle, I...

7. My mother expects me to dust the furniture and (to) vacuum the carpet.

◇练习 38 BE SUPPOSED TO (310-12)

用 be supposed to 和下表中动词的适当形式完成下列句子。

take off	register	sweep	give
be	clean	cook	send

1. A: What are you doing home? You are supposed to be at work.

B: I called in sick.

2. A: The floor is still dirty. You _____ it this morning before you left for school, weren't you?

B: I know. I forgot.

3. Sarah's late paying her taxes. She _____ her check to the government last month.

4. When you eat in a restaurant, you _____ your order to the waitress or waiter.

5. I know you'd rather be playing tennis, but you _____ the house today. The house is dirty, and it's your turn.

6. A: Where am I for my English class?

I'm new here.

B: Down the hall to your right.

7. Jack _____ dinner tonight, but he didn't get home until 9:00 P.M.
 8. A: You're tracking mud all over the house.
 B: Sorry. We _____ our shoes at the door, aren't we?

◇练习 39 错误分析(第十章)

改错。

were

1. The moving boxes ^ packed by Pierre.
2. My uncle was died in the war.
3. Miami located in Florida.
4. I was very worried about my son.
5. Mr. Rivera interested in finding a new career.
6. Did you tell everyone the shocked news?
7. After ten years, I finally used to this wet and rainy climate.
8. The newspaper suppose to come every morning before eight.
9. The Millers have been marry with each other for 60 years.
10. I am use to drink coffee with cream, but now I drink it black.
11. What was happen at the party last night?
12. Several people almost get kill when the fireworks exploded over them.
13. A new parking garage being build for our office.
14. I have been living in England for several years, so I accustom driving on the left side of the road.

第十一章

可数/不可数名词与冠词

◇练习 1 A 与 AN 的比较: 单数可数名词(表 11-1)

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <u>a</u> game | 14. ___ hour |
| 2. <u>an</u> office | 15. ___ star |
| 3. ___ car | 16. ___ eye |
| 4. ___ friend | 17. ___ new car |
| 5. ___ mountain | 18. ___ old car |
| 6. ___ rock | 19. ___ used car |
| 7. ___ army | 20. ___ uncle |
| 8. ___ egg | 21. ___ house |
| 9. ___ island | 22. ___ honest mistake |
| 10. ___ ocean | 23. ___ hospital |
| 11. ___ umbrella | 24. ___ hand |
| 12. ___ university | 25. ___ ant |
| 13. ___ horse | 26. ___ neighbor |

◇练习 2 预习: 可数与不可数名词 (表 11-2→11-5)

用横线划掉不能用于定成句子的量词

不可数名词: fruit, mail, traffic

可数名词: apples, letters, cars

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. I ate ___ fruit. | 2. I ate ___ apples. |
| a. some | a. some |
| b. several | b. several |
| c. a little | c. a little |
| d. a few | d. a few |
| e. too many | e. too many |
| f. too much | f. too much |

g. a lot of
h. two

3. I get ___ mail every day.

- a. a lot of
- b. some
- c. a little
- d. a few
- e. too much
- f. too many
- g. several
- h. three

4. I get ___ letters every day.

- a. a lot of
- b. some
- c. a little
- d. a few
- e. too much
- f. too many
- g. several
- h. three

g. a lot of
h. two

5. There is ___ traffic in the street.

- a. several
- b. some
- c. too many
- d. a little
- e. a lot of
- f. a few
- g. too much
- h. five

6. There are ___ cars in the street.

- a. several
- b. some
- c. too many
- d. a little
- e. a lot of
- f. a few
- g. too much
- h. five

◇练习3 可数与不可数名词(表 11-2→11-4)

下列词语中哪可以用于 one 之后, 哪可以用于 some 之后? 将名词的正确形式写在空格处如果名词没有单数形式, 写 ϕ

	one . . .	some...
1. word	<u>word</u>	<u>words</u>
2. vocabulary	<u>ϕ</u>	<u>vocabulary</u>
3. slang	<u></u>	<u></u>
4. homework	<u></u>	<u></u>
5. assignment	<u></u>	<u></u>
6. grammar	<u></u>	<u></u>
7. dress	<u></u>	<u></u>
8. clothes	<u></u>	<u></u>
9. clothing	<u></u>	<u></u>
10. parent	<u></u>	<u></u>
11. family	<u></u>	<u></u>
12. knowledge	<u></u>	<u></u>
13. information	<u></u>	<u></u>
14. fact	<u></u>	<u></u>
15. luck	<u></u>	<u></u>
16. garbage	<u></u>	<u></u>

◇练习4 可数与不可数名词(表 11-2+11-4)

用下表中的词语完成句子, 必要时用复数形式。

√apple trees	grass	machine	rice
√bracelets	hardware	machinery	ring
√bread	jewel	mountain	sandwich
√corn	jewelry	pea	scenery
equipment	lake	plant	tool

1. I went to the grocery store and bought some bread, corn,

2. I stood on a hill in the countryside and saw some apple trees , _____

3. I went to a jewelry store and saw some bracelets , _____

4. At the auto repair shop, I saw some _____

◇练习5 可数与不可数名词(表11-2+11-5)

用one, much或many填空。

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <u>one</u> chair | 14. _____ games |
| 2. <u>much</u> furniture | 15. _____ water |
| 3. <u>many</u> vegetables | 16. _____ parent |
| 4. _____ clothing | 17. _____ sand |
| 5. _____ vegetable | 18. _____ professors |
| 6. _____ clothes | 19. _____ dust |
| 7. _____ fruit | 20. _____ money |
| 8. _____ facts | 21. _____ stuff |
| 9. _____ grammar | 22. _____ thing |
| 10. _____ word | 23. _____ things |
| 11. _____ idioms | 24. _____ English |
| 12. _____ vocabulary | 25. _____ toast |
| 13. _____ cars | |

◇练习6 可数与不可数名词 (表 11-2→11-4)

用所给名词的单数或复数形式完成下列句子, 如果需要用动词, 选出括号中正确的动词。

1. snow In Alaska in tie winter, there (is, are) a lot of snow on the ground.
2. weather There (is, are) a lot of cold _____ in Alaska.
3. sunshine _____ (is, are) a source of vitamin D.
4. knowledge Prof. Nash has a lot of _____ about that subject.
5. fun We had a lot of _____ on the picnic.
6. factory,* Sometimes _____ cause _____ pollution
7. pride, child** Parents take _____ in the success of their _____.
8. people, intelligence I admire _____ who use their _____ to the fullest extent.
9. peace There have been many conflicts and wars throughout the history of the

world, but almost all people prefer_____.

10. hospitality Thank you for your _____.

11. beef The_____ we had for dinner last night (was, were)
very good.

12. fog During the winter months along the coast, there (is, are) usually a lot of
_____ in the morning.



◇练习 7 MANY 与 MUCH 的比较 (表 11-5)

用 much/many 和所给名词的单数或复数形式完成下列句子, 如果需要用动词, 选出括号中正确的动词。

1. apple How many apples did you buy?

2. fruit How much fruit did you buy?

3. mail How _____ did you get yesterday?

4. letter How _____ did you get yesterday?

5. English Anna's husband doesn't know _____.

6. slang Sometimes I can't understand my roommate because he uses
too _____.

7. word How _____ (is, are) there in your dictionary?

8. coffee Louise drinks too _____.

9. sandwich Billy has a stomach ache. He ate too _____.

10. sugar You shouldn't eat too _____.

11. course How _____ are you taking this semester?

12. homework How _____ do you have to do tonight?

13. news There (isn't, aren't) _____ in the paper today.
14. article How _____ (is, are) there on the front page of today's paper?
15. fun I didn't have _____ at the party. It was boring.
16. star How _____ (is, are) there in the universe?
17. sunshine There (isn't, aren't) _____ in Seattle in winter.
18. pollution (Is, Are) there _____ in Miami?
19. luck We didn't have _____ when we went fishing.
20. kind There (is, are) _____ of flowers.
21. violence I think there (is, are) too _____ 22. on television
23. makeup I think that Mary wears too _____
24. car How _____ pass in front of this building in 30 seconds?
25. traffic (Is, A re) there _____ in front of your apartment building?

◇练习 8 HOW MANY 和 HOW MUCH (表 11 -5)

用 much/many 完成问句，如果必要，给名词加-s/-es。(有些可数名词的复数形式是不规则的。) 如果需要用动词，选出括号中正确的动词。如果没必要给名词加-s/-es,则在空白处画上斜线 (/)

- How many letter s (is, are) there in the English alphabet?*
- How much mail / did you get yesterday?
- How many man men (has, have) a full beard at least once in their life?
- How many family ies (is, are) there in your apartment building?
- How sentence (is, are) there in this exercise?
- How chalk (is, are) there in the classroom?
- How English does Stefan know?
- How English literature have you studied?
- How English word do you know?
- How gasoline does it take to fill the tank in your car?
(British: How petrol does it take to fill the tank?)
- How homework did the teacher assign?

12. How grandchild does Mrs. Cunningham have?
13. How page (is, are) there in this book?
14. How library (is, are) there in the United States?*
15. How glass of water do you drink every day?
16. How fun did you have at the amusement park?
17. How education does Ms. Martinez have?
18. How soap should I use in the dishwasher?
19. How island (is, are) there in Indonesia?***
20. How people will there be by the year 2050?++
21. How zero (is, are) there in a billion?***

◇练习 9 复习：可数与不可数名词（表 11-2→11-5）

选出所有和名词搭配正确的词。

- | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|---|----|--------|------|--------|
| 1. flower | a | an | some | much | many |
| 2. flowers | a | an | (some) | much | (many) |
| 3. coin | a | an | some | much | many |
| 4. money | a | an | some | much | many |
| 5. coins | a | an | some | much | many |
| 6. salt | a | an | some | much | many |
| 7. error | a | an | some | much | many |
| 8. mistake | a | an | some | much | many |
| 9. honest mistake | a | an | some | much | many |
| 10. mistakes | a | an | some | much | many |
| 11. dream | a | an | some | much | many |
| 12. interesting dream | a | an | some | much | many |
| 13. questions | a | an | some | much | many |
| 14. soap | a | an | some | much | many |
| 15. bar of soap | a | an | some | much | many |
| 16. beauty | a | an | some | much | many |
| 17. cup of tea | a | an | some | much | many |
| 18. unsafe place | a | an | some | much | many |
| 19. fruit | a | an | some | much | many |
| 20. pieces of fruit | a | an | some | much | many |

◇练习10 A FEW与A LITTLE的比较 (表11-5)

用 a few 或 a little 完成下列句子。如果有必要,给名词加-s;如果没必要,则在空白处画上斜线(/)。

1. Let's listen to a little **music** / during dinner.
2. Let's sing a few **song_s** around the campfire.
3. We all need help at times.
4. Ingrid is from Sweden, but she knows English.
5. I need more apple to make a pie.
6. I like honey in my coffee.
7. I have a problem. Could you give me advice ?
8. I need suggestion.
9. He asked question.
10. We talked to people on the plane.
11. Please give me more minute.
12. Ann opened the curtains to let in light from outdoors.
13. I have **homework** to do tonight.
14. Pedro already knew English grammar before he took this course.
15. I picked flower from my garden.
16. I've made progress in the last couple of weeks

◇练习11 错误分析 (表11-1→11-5)

1. Kim has applied to an- university in England.
2. For Anita's wedding anniversary, her husband gave her a jewelry and a poetry he wrote.
3. The politician wanted specific suggestion for her speech on the economy.
4. Some of the homeworks for my English class was easy, but many of the assignment

were unclear.

5. Diane has been to Rome several time recently. She always has wonderful time.

6. Many parents need advices about raising children.

7. The boys played together in the sands and dirt for hours.

8. A person doesn't need many equipment to play baseball: just ball and a bat.

9. Many happiness can come from enjoying the simple thing in life.

◇练习 12 可数与不可数名词 (表 6-2, 和 11-1→11-6)

如果必要, 则给名词加-s/-es, 不要做其他改动。括号中的数字是需要加-s/-es 的名词的数量。

1. Plants are the oldest living things on earth. (2) = [2 nouns need final -s/-es.]

2. Scientist divide living thing into two group: plant and animal. Generally speaking, plant stay in one place, but animal move around. (7)

3. Flower, grass, and tree grow every place where people live. Plant also grow in desert, in ocean, on mountaintop, and in polar region. (7)

4. Plant are useful to people. We eat them. We use them for clothing. We build house from them. Plant are also important to our health. We get many kind of beneficial drug from plant. In addition, plant provide beauty and enjoyment to all our lives. (7)

5. Crop are plant that people grow for food. Nature can ruin crop. Bad weather—such as too much rain or too little rain—can destroy field of corn or wheat. Natural disaster such as flood and storm have caused farmer many problem since people first began to grow their own food. (9)

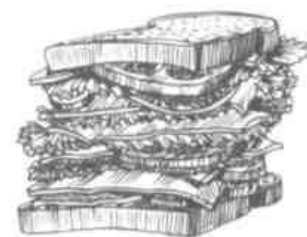
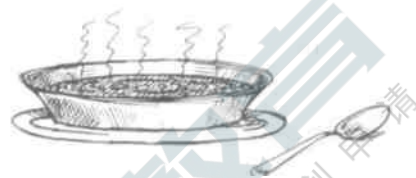
6. Food is a necessity for all living thing. All animal and plant need to eat. Most plant take what they need through their root and their leaf. The majority of insect live solely on plant. Many bird have a diet of worm and insect. Reptile eat small animal, egg, and insect. (15)

◇练习 13 不可数名词的度量单位 (表 11-7)

用下表中的词完成下列句子, 必要时用复数形式。有些句子有多种完成方法。

bar	gallon	piece	sheet
bottle	glass	pound	spoonful
bowl	loaf	quart	tube
cup	kilo		

1. I drank a _____ cup of coffee.
2. I bought two _____ pounds of cheese.
3. I had a _____ of soup for lunch.
4. I drank a _____ of orange juice.
5. I had a _____ of toast and an egg for breakfast.
6. I put ten _____ of gas in my car.
7. I bought a _____ of milk at the supermarket.
8. I need a _____ of chalk.
9. I drank a _____ of beer.
10. I used two _____ of bread to make a sandwich.
11. There is a _____ of fruit on the table.
12. There are 200 _____ of lined paper in my notebook.
13. I bought one _____ of bread at the store.
14. I put a _____ of honey in my tea.
15. I need to buy a new _____ of toothpaste.
16. There is a _____ of soap in the bathroom.
17. Let me give you a _____ of advice.
18. I just learned an interesting _____ of information.
19. There were a dozen* _____ of mail in my mailbox today.
20. A three-piece suit is made up of three _____ of clothing: slacks, a jacket, and a vest.



◇练习 14 不可数名词的度量单位 (表 11-7)

下表中的名词通常可以和哪些度量单位搭配? 有些名词能和多种度量单位搭配。

	bag	bottle	box	can/tin**	jar	
1. _____						a
jar _____ of pickles.						6. _____ a _____ of sugar

2. a _____ of aspirin.
3. a _____ of laundry detergent
4. a _____ of instant coffee
5. a _____ of sardines
7. a _____ of peanut butter
8. a _____ of soy sauce
9. a _____ of uncooked noodles
10. a _____ of retried beans

◇练习 15 MUCH 与 MANY 的比较 (表 11-5→11-7)

用 much 或 many 完成下列疑问句。

1. A: How many suit cases did you take with you on the plane to Tahiti?
B: Three. (I took three suitcases on the plane to Tahiti.)
2. A: How much suntain oil did you take with you?
B: A lot. (I took a lot of suntan oil with me.)
3. A: How _____ did you take?
B: Two pairs. (I took two pairs of sandals.)
4. A: How _____ did you take?
B: One tube. (I took one tube of toothpaste.)
5. A: How _____ did you have?
B: Twenty. (I had twenty kilos of luggage.)
6. A: How _____ did you pay in overweight baggage charges?
B: A lot. (I paid of lot of money for overweight baggage.)

◇练习 16 A/AN 与 SOME 的比较 (表 11-8)

用 a/an 或 some 完成下列句子。

1. I wrote _____ a _____ letter.
2. I got _____ some _____ mail.
3. We bought _____ equipment for our camping trip.
4. You need _____ tool to cut wood.
5. I ate _____ food.
6. I had _____ apple.
7. I wore _____ old clothing.
8. I wore _____ old shirt.
9. Jim asked me for _____ advice.

10. I gave Jim _____ suggestion.
11. I read _____ interesting story in the paper.
12. The paper has _____ interesting news today.
13. I read _____ poem after dinner.
14. I read _____ poetry after dinner.
15. I know _____ song from India.
16. I know _____ Indian music.
17. I learned _____ new word.
18. I learned _____ new slang.

◇练习17 A与SOME的比较 (表11-8)

在单数名词前填写 a 或 some, 如果可以的话, 用名词的复数形式造一个句子。

Singular Objects

I saw _____ a _____ bird.

1. I ate _____ some _____ corn.

2. Would you like _____ tea?

3. I picked _____ flower.

4. I drank _____ water.

5. I fed grass to _____ horse.

6. Pat is wearing _____ jewelry.

7. I bought _____ honey.

8. Tom bought _____ new shirt.

10. I need _____ soap to wash the dishes.

Plural Objects

I saw some birds

or (none possible)

◇练习18 A/AN 与 THE 的比较: 单数可数名词 (表 11-8)

用 a/an 或 the 完成下列句子。

1. A: _____ A _____ dog makes a good pet.

B: I agree.

2. A: Did you feed _____ the _____ dog?

B: Yes, I did.

3. My dorm room has _____ desk, _____ bed, _____ chest of drawers, and two chairs.

4. A: Jessica, where's the stapler?

B: On _____ desk. If it's not there, look in _____ top drawer.

5. A: Sara, put your bike in _____ basement before dark.

B: Okay, Dad.

6. Our apartment building has _____ basement. Sara keeps her bike there at night.

7. Almost every sentence has _____ subject and _____ verb.

8. Look at this sentence: *Jack lives in Miami*. What is _____ subject, and what is _____ verb?

9. A: I can't see you at four. I'll be in _____ meeting then. How about four-thirty?

B: Fine.

10. A: What time does _____ meeting start Tuesday?

B: Eight.

11. Jack's car ran out of gas. He had to walk _____ long distance to find telephone and call his brother for help.

12. distance from _____ sun to _____ earth is 93,000,000 miles.

13. A: Jake, _____ telephone is ringing. Can you get it?

B: Sure.

14. A: Did you feed _____ cat?

B: Yes. I fed him a couple of hours ago.

15. A: Does Jane have _____ cat?

B: No, she has _____ dog. She doesn't like cats.

16. A: I wrote _____ poem. Would you like to read it?

B: Sure. What's it about?

17. A: Was _____ lecture interesting?

B: Yes. _____ speaker gave _____ interesting talk.

18. A: Where should we go for _____ cup of coffee after class?

B: Let's go to _____ cafe around _____ corner from the First National Bank.

19. A: Where do you live?

B: We live on _____ quiet street in the suburbs.

20. A: I'm hungry, and I'm tired of walking. How much farther is it to _____

restaurant?

B: Just a couple of blocks. Let's cross _____ street here.

A: Are you sure you know where you're going?

21. A: Did Bob find _____ job?

B: Yes. He's working at _____ restaurant.

A: Oh? Which one?

◇练习 19 零冠词(ϕ)与 THE 的比较(表 11-8)

在空白处填写 ϕ 或 the, 必要时可将字母大写。

1. A: ϕ _____ D dogs make good pets.

B: I agree.

2. A: Did you feed _____ the _____ dogs? B: Yes, I did.

3. A: ϕ _____ F fruit is good for you.

B: I agree.

4. A: _____ The _____ fruit in this bowl is ripe.

B: Good. I think I'll have a piece.

5. John, where's _____ milk? Is it in _____ refrigerator or on _____ table?

6. _____ milk comes from cows and goats.

7. Tom usually has _____ wine with dinner.

8. Dinner's ready. Shall I pour _____ wine?

9. We usually have _____ meat for dinner.

10. _____ meat we had for dinner last night was tough.

11. A: Mom, please pass _____ potatoes.

B: Here you are. Anything else? Want some more chicken, too?

12. _____ potatoes are _____ vegetables.

13. _____ frogs are _____ small animals without _____ tails that live on land or in water. _____ turtles also live on land or in water, but they have tails and _____ hard shells.

14. A: Nicole, what are those animals doing in here!?

B: We're playing. _____ frogs belong to Jason. _____ turtles are mine.



15. Do you like ___ weather in this city?
16. _____ copper is used in electrical wiring.
17. People used to use _____ candles for _____ light, but now they use electricity.
18. There are many kinds of _____ books. We use _____ textbooks and workbooks in school. We use _____ dictionaries and _____ encyclopedias for reference. For _____ entertainment, we read _____ novels and _____ poetry.
19. _____ books on this desk are mine.

◇练习 20 用 THE 表达第二次提到的概念(表 11-6→11-8)

用 *alan*, *some* 或 *the* 完成下列句子。提示：当名词第二次被提到时，前面 *the*。

1. I drank _____ coffee and _____ milk. _____ The _____ coffee was hot. The _____ milk was cold.
2. I had _____ soup and _____ sandwich for lunch. _____ soup was too salty, but sandwich was pretty good.
3. Yesterday I bought _____ clothes. I bought _____ suit, _____ shirt, and _____ tie. _____ suit is gray and comes with a vest. _____ shirt is pale blue, and _____ tie has black and gray stripes.
4. A: I saw _____ accident yesterday.
 B: Oh? Where?
 A: On Grand Avenue. _____ man in _____ Volkswagen drove through a stop sign and hit _____ bus.
 B: Was anyone hurt in _____ accident?
 A: I don't think so. _____ man who was driving _____ Volkswagen got out of his car and seemed to be okay. His car was only slightly damaged. No one in _____ bus was hurt.

5. Yesterday I saw _____ man and _____ woman. They were having _____ argument. _____ man was yelling at _____ woman, and _____ woman was shouting at _____ man. I don't know what _____ argument was about.
6. Yesterday while I was walking to work, I saw _____ birds in _____ tree. I also saw _____ cat under _____ tree. _____ birds didn't pay any attention to _____ cat, but _____ cat was watching _____ birds intently.



◇练习 21 用 THE 表达第二次提到的概念(表 11-6→11-8)

用 a/an, some 或 the 填空。

One day last month while I was driving through the countryside, I saw a¹ man and a² truck next to a³ covered bridge. The⁴ bridge crossed a⁵ small river. I stopped and asked a⁶ man, "What's the matter? Can I be of help?" "Well," said a⁷ man, "my truck is about a half-inch* too tall. Or the⁸ top of a⁹ bridge is a half-inch too short. Either Way, my truck won't fit under the¹⁰ bridge."



"Hmmm. There must be _____ solution to this problem," I said.

"I don't know. I guess I'll have to turn around and take another route," he replied.

After a few moments of thought, I said, "Aha! I have _____ solution!"

"What is it?" asked the man.

"Let a little air out of your tires. Then _____ truck won't be too tall and you can cross

13

_____ bridge over _____ river."

14

15

"Hey, that's _____ great idea. Let's try it!" So _____ man let a little air out of

16

17

_____ tires and was able to cross _____ river and go on his way.

18

19

◇练习 22 总结: A/AN、THE 与零冠词(Φ)的比较(表 11-8)

用 a/an, the 或者 Φ 完成下列句子。必要时可将字母大写。

1. A: What would you like for breakfast?

B: An egg and some toast.

A: How would you like the

egg? B: Fried, sunny side up.

2. _____ eggs are nutritious.

3. It is _____ scientific fact: _____ steam rises when _____ water boils.

4. _____ gas is expensive nowadays.

5. _____ gas I got yesterday cost more than I've ever paid.

6. _____ newspapers are _____ important source of _____ information.

7. _____ sun is _____ star. We need _____ sun for _____ heat, _____ light, and

8. _____ ducks are my favorite farm animals.

9. _____ pizza originated in Italy. It is a pie with _____ cheese, _____ tomatoes,

and other things on top. _____ "pizza" means "pie" in _____ Italian.



10. A: Hey, Nick. Pass _____ pizza. I want another piece.
B: There are only two pieces left. You take _____ big piece, and I'll take _____ small one.
11. _____ gold is _____ excellent conductor of _____ electricity. It is used in many _____ of the electrical circuits on _____ spaceship.
12. A: Where's Alice?
B: She's in _____ kitchen making _____ sandwich.
13. A: Where'd _____ plumber go? _____ sink's still leaking!
B: Relax. He went to shut off _____ water supply to _____ house. He'll fix _____ leak when he gets back.
14. A: Do you see _____ man who is standing next to Janet?
B: Yes. Who is he?
A: He's _____ president of this university.
15. A one-dollar bill has a picture of _____ president of the United States. It's a picture of _____ George Washington.
16. A: What did you buy when you went shopping?
B: I bought _____ blouse and _____ jewelry.
A: What color is _____ blouse?
B: Red.
17. A: Where's my bookbag?
B: It's on _____ floor over there, in _____ corner next to _____ sofa.
18. We need to buy _____ furniture. I'd like to get _____ sofa and _____ easy chair.
19. _____ furniture is expensive these days.

20. _____ vegetarian doesn't eat _____ meat.
21. Only one of _____ continents in _____ world is uninhabited. Which one?
22. Last week, I took _____ easy exam. It was in my economics class. I had _____ right answers for all of _____ questions on _____ exam. My score was 100%.
23. Anyone who goes to _____ job interview should wear _____ nice clothes.
24. A mouse has _____ long, thin, almost hairless tail. _____ rats also have _____ long, skinny tails.
25. Years ago, people used _____ wood or _____ coal for _____ heat, but now most people use _____ gas, _____ oil, or _____ electricity.
26. I had _____ interesting experience yesterday. _____ man in _____ blue suit came into my office and handed me _____ bouquet of _____ flowers. I had never seen _____ man before in my life, but I thanked him for _____ flowers. Then he walked out _____ door.
27. A: What is your favorite food?
B: _____ ice cream—it's cold, sweet, and smooth.
28. We had _____ steamed rice, _____ fish, and _____ vegetables for lunch yesterday. _____ rice was cooked just right. _____ fish was very tasty. _____ vegetables were fresh.
29. Karen is _____ exceptionally talented person.
30. A: Where's _____ letter I wrote to Ted?
B: It's gone. _____ strong wind blew it on _____ floor, and _____ dog tore it up. I threw _____ scraps in _____ wastebasket.
31. A: I'm looking for _____ tape player. Where is it?
B: It's on one of _____ shelves next to my desk.
A: Ah! There it is. Thanks.
B: You're welcome.
A: Hmmm. I don't think it works. Maybe _____ batteries are dead.
32. _____ chalk is _____ necessity in a classroom.
33. _____ efficient transportation system is _____ essential part of a healthy

economy.

◇练习 23 用 THE 或零冠词(Φ)表达名称(表 11-9)

用 the 或 Φ 完成下列句子。

1. Although Ingrid has been to Orly Airport several times, she has never visited _____ Paris.
 2. _____ The _____ Atlantic Ocean is smaller than _____ the _____ Pacific.
 3. Dr. James was the youngest person at her university to get a Ph.D.
 4. Mt. Rainier in Washington State is in _____ Cascade Mountain Range.
 5. Nile is the longest river in _____ Africa.
 6. Is _____ Toronto or _____ Montreal the largest city in Canada?
 7. During her tour of Africa, Helen climbed _____ Mt. Kilimanjaro and visited several national parks in _____ Kenya.
 8. _____ New Zealand is made up of two islands: North Island and South Island.
 9. _____ Himalayas extend through several countries: _____ Pakistan, _____ India, _____ Tibet, and _____ Nepal.
 10. _____ President Davis was surprised to be elected to a fourth term.
 11. _____ Ho Chi Minh City in _____ Vietnam was formerly called _____ Saigon.
- Andes Mountains in South America extend for 5000 miles.

◇练习 24 用 THE 或零冠词(Φ)表达名称(表 11-9)

用下表中的词语回答问题，必要时可加 the。(有些词用不上)

Africa	Europe	Mont Blanc	Shanghai
Alps	Gobi Desert	Mr. Vesuvius	South America
Amazon River	Indian Ocean	Netherlands	Taipei
Beijing	Lagos	Nile River	Thames River
Black Sea	Lake Baikal	North America	Tibet
Dead Sea	Lake Tanganyika	Sahara Desert	United Arab
Emirates			
Elbe River	Lake Titicaca	Saudi Arabia	Urals

GEOGRAPHY TRIVIA

Question

Answer

- What is the lowest point on Earth? the Dead sea
- What is the second-longest river in the world? _____
- What is the most populated city in China? _____
- What is the largest desert in the world? _____
- What river runs through London? _____
- On what continent is the Volga River? _____
- What mountains border France and Italy? _____
- What lake is in East Central Africa? _____
- On what continent is Mexico? _____
- What is the third-largest ocean in the world? _____
- What country is also known as Holland? _____
- What is the third-largest continent in the world? _____
- What country is located in the Himalayas? _____
- What mountains are part of the boundary between Europe and Asia? _____
- What is the capital of Nigeria? _____
- What country consists of seven kingdoms? _____

◇练习 25 字母大写(表 11-10)

将下列句子中需要大写的字母大写。

1. I'm taking B iology 101 this semester.
2. I'm taking history, biology, english, and calculus this semester.
3. Some lab classes meet on Saturday.
4. Marta lives on a busy street. Marta lives at 2358 olive street.
5. We went to Canada last summer, we went to montreal in july.
6. My roommate likes Vietnamese food, and i like thai food.
7. The religion of saudi arabia is islam.
8. Shelia works for the xerox corporation, it is a very large corporation.
9. Pedro is from latin america.
10. My uncle lives in st. louis. I'm going to visit uncle bill next spring.
11. We went to a park, we went to waterfall park.
12. Are you going to the university of oregon or oregon state university?
13. Alice goes to a university in oregon.
14. The next assignment in literature class is to read *the adventures of torn sawyer*.
15. Many countries have holidays to celebrate the date they became independent. In france, they call it "bastille day."

◇练习 26 字母大写(表 11-10)

将下列句子中需要大写的字母大写。

R J

1. Do you know r obert j ones?
2. Do you know my uncle? (no change)
3. I like uncle joe and aunt sara.
4. I'd like you to meet my aunt.
5. susan w. miller is a professor.
6. I am in prof, miller's class.

7. The weather is cold in january.
8. The weather is cold in winter.
9. I have three classes on monday.
10. I would like to visit los angeles.
11. It's the largest city in California.
12. I like to visit large cities in foreign countries.
13. There are fifty states in the united states of america.
14. It used to take weeks or months to cross an ocean.
15. Today we can fly across the atlantic ocean in hours.
16. Mark lives on a busy street near the local high school.
17. Mark lives on market street near Washington high school.
18. Our family stayed at a very comfortable hotel.
19. Our family stayed at the hilton hotel in bangkok.
20. Yoko is japanese, but she can also speak german.

◇练习 27 错误分析(第十一章)

改错。

letter

1. The mail carrier brought only one ~~mail~~ today.
2. Mr. Dale gave his class long history assignment for the weekend.
3. Tariq speaks several language, including Arabic and Spanish.
4. Dr. kim gives all her patients toothbrush and toothpaste at their dental appointments.
5. I usually have glass water with my lunch.
6. A helpful policeman gave us an information about the city.
7. This cookie recipe calls for two cup of nut.
8. Much vegetable are believed to have cancer-fighting ingredients.

9. Only applicants with the necessary experiences should apply for the computer position.

10. When Vicki likes a movie, she sees it several time.

11. A popular children's story is *Snow White And The Seven Dwarfs*.

12. Is it possible to stop all violences in the world?

第十二章 定语从句

◇练习 1 定语从句中 WHO 的用法(表 12-1 和 12-2)

用下划线划出长句中的定语从句,然后将长句改写成两个短句。

1. 长句: I thanked the man who helped me move the refrigerator.

短句 1: I thanked the man.

短句 2: He helped me move the refrigerator.

2. 长句: A woman who was wearing a gray suit asked me for directions.

短句 1: me for directions.

短句 2: a gray suit.

3. 长句: The woman who aided the rebels put her life in danger.

短句 1: her life in danger.

短句 2: the rebels.



4. 长句: I saw a man who was wearing a blue coat.

短句 1: a man.

短句 2: a blue coat.

5. 长句: The girl who broke the vase apologized to Mrs. Cook.

短句 1: to Mrs. Cook.

短句 2: the vase.

◇练习 2 定语从句中 WHO 的用法(表 12-2)

1. 短句 1: The woman was polite.

短句 2: She answered the phone.

长句: The woman who answered the phone was polite.

2. 短句 1: The man has a good voice.

短句 2: He sang at the concert.

长句:

3. 短句 1: We enjoyed the actors.

短句 2: They played the leading roles.

长句:

4. 短句 1: The girl is hurt.

短句 2: She fell down the stairs.

长句:

5. 短句 1: read about the soccer player.

短句 2: He was injured in the game yesterday.

长句:

◇练习 3 定语从句中 WHO 和 WHOM 的用法 (表 12-2)

用下划线划出定语从句。标出定语从句的主语的谓语,然后将长句改写成两个短句,标出第二个短句的主语和谓语。

S V

1. 长句: The people who live next to me are nice.

短句 1: The people are nice.

S V

短句 2: They live next to me.

S V

2. 长句: The people whom Kate visited yesterday were French.

短句 1: The people were French.

S V

短句 2: Kate visited them yesterday.

3. 长句: The people whom I saw at the park were having a picnic.

短句 1: The people were having a picnic.

短句 2:

4. 长句: The students who go to this school are friendly.

短句 1: The students are friendly.

短句 2:

5. 长句: The woman whom you met last week lives in Mexico.

短句 1: The woman lives in Mexico.

短句 2:

练习 4 定语从句中 WHO 和 WHOM 的用法(表 12-2)

用 who 或 whom 将两个短句改写成一个长的定语从句,并用下划线划出定语从句

1. 短句 1: The woman was polite.

短句 2: Jack met her.

长句: The woman whom Jack met was polite.

2. 短句 1: I like the woman.

短句 2: She manages my uncle's store.

长句: I like the woman who manages my uncle's store.

3. 短句 1: The singer was wonderful.

短句 2: We heard him at the concert.

长句:

4. 短句 1: The people brought a small gift.

短句 2: They came to dinner.

长句:

5. 短句 1: What is the name of the woman?

短句 2: Tom invited her to the dance.

长句:

◇练习 5 定语从句中 WHO 和 WHOM 的用法 (表 12-2)

用 who 或 whom 完成下列句子:

1. I know a man who works at the post office.

2. One of the people who(m) I watched at the race track lost a huge amount of money.

3. My neighbor is a kind person who is always willing to help people in trouble.

4. My mother is a woman whom I admire tremendously.

5. I thanked the man who helped me.

6. The woman whom I helped thanked me.

7. The doctor who lives on my street is a surgeon.

8. I talked to the people who were sitting next to me.

9. I saw the woman who was walking her dog.

10. Do you like the mechanic ____ fixed your car?
11. Mr. Polanski is a mechanic ____ you can trust.
12. There are many good people in the world ____ you can trust to be honest and honorable.
13. The children ____ live down the street in the yellow house are always polite.
14. The children ____ I watched at the park were feeding ducks in a pond.
15. My husband is a person ____ enjoys good food and good friends.

◇练习 6 定语从句中 THAT 或省略 THAT(Φ) 的用法(表 12-3)

如果定语从句中的 who 或 that 作主语, 则写 S, 如果作宾语, 则写 O, 删掉不必要的 who 或 that。

1. O The secretary that I hired is very efficient.
2. S The secretary who works in the office next door is interviewing for my old job.
3. ____ The students who worked together in study groups got the highest scores on the test.
4. ____ The students who the teacher helped did very well on the test.
5. ____ The man that lives next door is a famous scientist.
6. ____ The children that came to the party wore animal costumes.
7. ____ The teachers who went to the workshop felt encouraged to try new techniques.
8. ____ The teachers that I had for science were very well trained.
9. ____ The policeman who caught the thief had been watching him for days.
10. ____ The policeman that we met on the street told us about several interesting tourist spots.

◇练习 7 定语从句中 THAT 或省略 THAT(Φ) 的用法(表 12-3)

删掉不必要的 that。

1. That man that I saw was wearing a black hat.
2. The people that visited us stayed too long. (no change)
3. The fruit that I bought today at the market is fresh.
4. My high school English teacher is a person that I will never forget.
5. The puppy that barked the loudest got the most attention in the pet store.
6. The girl that sits in front of Richard has long black hair that she wears in a ponytail.
7. The forest that lies below my house provides a home for deer and other wildlife.
8. The animals that live in our neighborhood behaved strangely before the earthquake.



◇练习 8 定语从句中 WHO, WHOM, THAT 或省略代词(Φ) 的用法(表 12-3)

在方框中写出所有可以用于引导定语从句的代词: who, whom 或 that, 如果代词可以省略, 则写 Φ

1. The woman

who
that

 sat next to me on the plane was very nice.
2. The woman

who(m)
that
Φ

 I met on the plane was very nice.
3. Two people

--

 I didn't know walked into the classroom.

4. The people walked into the classroom were strangers.

5. My cousin's wife is the woman is talking to Mr. Horn.

6. I like the woman my brother and I visited.

◇练习9 who 和 whom 与 which 的比较 (表 12-2→12-4)

选择出正确答案:

1. The magazine ___ I read on the plane was interesting.

A. who B. whom C. which

2. The artist ___ drew my picture is very good.

A. who B. whom C. which

3. I really enjoyed the experiences ___ I had on my trip to Nigeria.

A. who B. whom C. which

4. Most of the games ___ we played as children no longer amuse us.

A. who B. whom C. which

5. All of the people ___ I called yesterday can come to the meeting on Monday.

A. who B. whom C. which

6. The teacher ___ was ill canceled her math class.

A. who B. whom C. which

7. The flight ___ I took to Singapore was on time.

A. who B. whom C. which

8. I read an article ___ discussed the current political crisis.

A. who B. whom C. which

◇练习10 定语从句(表 12-2→12-4)

用所给信息和定语从句完成定义。

S/he leaves society and lives completely alone.

It has a hard shell and can live in water or on land.

✓ S/he designs buildings.

It forms when water boils.

S/he doesn't eat meat.

It grows in hot climates and produces large bunches of yellow fruit.

It cannot be understood or explained.

It can be shaped and hardened to form many useful things.

1. An architect is someone who/that designs buildings.

2. A vegetarian is a person _____

3. Steam is a gas _____

4. A turtle is an animal _____

5. A hermit is a person _____

6. A banana tree is a plant _____

7. Plastic is a synthetic material _____

8. A mystery is something _____

◇练习11 WHICH 和 THAT (表 12-4)

如果定语从句中的 which 或 that 作主语, 则写 S, 如果作宾语, 则写 O。删掉不必要的 which 或 that。

1. O The medicine which the doctor prescribed for me was very expensive.

2. S The medicine which is on the shelf is no longer good.

3. S The computer that I bought recently has already crashed several times.

4. S The car which my husband drives is very reliable.

5. S The house which sits on top of the hill has won several architecture awards.

6. S The restaurant that offered low-cost dinners to senior citizens has recently closed.

7. S The baseball which all the players autographed will be donated to charity.

8. ___The windstorm that is moving toward us is very powerful.
9. ___The trees that shade our house are over 300 years old.
10. ___The trees that we planted last year have doubled in size.

◇练习 12 定语从句中 WHICH, THAT 和省略代词 (Φ) 的用法(表 12-4)

写出所有可以用于引导定语从句的代词:which 或者 that,如果代词可以省略,则写 Φ

1. I really enjoyed the show _____ we saw last night.

which
that
Φ

2. Tim liked the show _____ was playing at the Fox Theater.

3. The plane _____ I took to Korea arrived on time.

4. The plane _____ flew to the Gold Coast left on time.

5. The books _____ Jane ordered came in the mail today.

6. Jane was glad to get the books _____ came in the mail today.

◇练习 13 错误分析:定语从句中宾格代词的用法(表 12-3 和 12-4)

删掉定语从句中不正确的代词。

1. I enjoy the relatives I visited them in Mexico City last year.
2. The coffee that I drank it was cold and tasteless.
3. The tennis shoes I was wearing them in the garden got wet and muddy.
4. My cousin Ahmed is a person I've known and loved him since he was born.
5. I have a great deal of respect for the wonderful woman I married her eleven years ago.
6. The dog which we have had him for several years is very gentle with young children.

◇练习 14 定词从句中代词的用法 (表 12-2→12-4)

1. I liked the teacher ___ I had for chemistry in high school.

Ⓐ whom B. which Ⓒ that Ⓓ Φ

2. The university scientist ___ did research in the Amazon River basin found many previously unknown species of plants.

A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Φ

3. The children enjoyed the sandwiches ___ Mr. Rice made for them.

A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Φ

4. Have you ever read any books by the author ___ the teacher mentioned in class this morning?

A. whom B. which C. that D. Φ

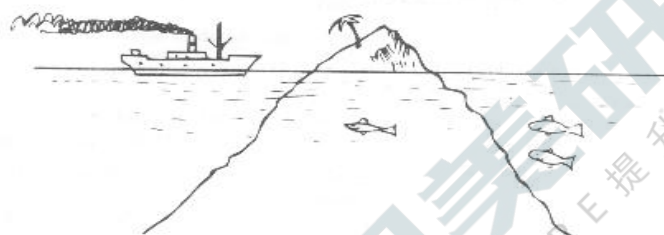
5. The fans ___ crowded the ballpark roared their approval.

A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Φ

6. Have you been to the Clayton Art Gallery? It has a new exhibit ___ includes the work of several local artists.

A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Φ

7. The operation ___ the surgeon performed on my uncle was very dangerous.
A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. ϕ
8. Bricks are made of soil ___ has been placed in molds, pounded down, and dried.
A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. ϕ
9. The actors ___ we saw at Stratford performed out-of-doors.
A. whom B. which C. that D. ϕ
10. Many of the games ___ children play teach them about the adult world.
A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. ϕ
11. When Jason arrived at the reunion, the first person ___ he encountered was Sally Sellers, one of his best friends when he was in high school.
A. whom B. which C. that D. ϕ
12. Fire swept through an old apartment building in the center of town. I know some of the people ___ the firefighters rescued. The people lost all their possessions. They were grateful simply to be alive.
A. whom B. which C. that D. ϕ
13. Most of the islands in the Pacific are the tops of volcanic mountains ___ rise from the floor of the ocean.
A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. ϕ



◇练习 15 定语从句中的主谓一致 (表 12-5)

从斜体词中选出正确的动词形式，使用一般现在时。并用下划线划出决定定语从句中的动词是单数还是复数的名词。

1. The *students* who is are in my class come from many countries.
2. The people who is, are standing in line to get into the theater are cold and wet.
3. Water is a chemical compound that consists, consist of oxygen and hydrogen.
4. There are two students in my class who speaks, speak Portuguese.
5. I met some people who knows, know my brother.
6. The student who is, are talking to the teacher is from Peru.
7. Do you know the people that lives, live in that house?
8. A carpenter is a person who makes, make things out of wood.
9. Sculptors are artists who make, makes things from clay or other materials.



◇练习 16 定语从句中的介词 (表 12-6)

下列句子中的定语从句需要介词。添加介词。并写出所有可能的定语从句形式。如果不需要则写 ϕ 。

1. The bus that we were waiting for was an hour late.
The bus which we were waiting for was an hour late.
The bus ϕ we were waiting for was an hour late.
The bus for which we were waiting ϕ was an hour late.
2. The music _____ I listened _____ was pleasant.

The music ____ I listened ____ was pleasant.
 The music ____ I listened ____ was pleasant.
 The music ____ I listened ____ was pleasant.
 3. Ecology is one of the subjects ____ I am very interested
 Ecology is one of the subjects ____ I am very interested
 Ecology is one of the subjects ____ I am very interested
 Ecology is one of the subjects ____ I am very interested
 4. The man ____ Maria was arguing ____ was very angry.
 The man ____ Maria was arguing ____ was very angry.
 The man ____ Maria was arguing ____ was very angry.
 The man ____ Maria was arguing ____ was very angry.

◇练习 17 定语从句中的介词 (表 12-6 和附录 2)

用所需的代词和介词完成下列句子。写出所有可能的定语从句形式。

Example: The movie..., we went..., was good.

→ The movie that we went to was good.

The movie which we went to was good.

The movie to which we went to was good.

The movie to which we went was good.

1. I enjoyed meeting the people..., you introduced me... yesterday.
2. English grammar is a subject... I am quite familiar.
3. The woman... Mr. Low told us... works for the government.
4. The people... I work..., are very creative.
5. The train..., you are waiting..., is usually late.
6. The job... I am interested..., requires several years of computer experience.

◇练习 18 定语从句中的介词 (表 12-6 和附录 2)

在空格处填入适当的介词。如果不需要介词, 则写 \varnothing 。并将定语从句用括号括起来。

1. I enjoyed the CD [we listened ____ to ____ at Sara's apartment.]
2. I paid the shopkeeper for the glass cup [I accidentally broke ____ \varnothing .]
3. The bus we were waiting ____ was only three minutes late.
4. Mrs. Chan is someone I always enjoy talking ____ about politics.
5. I showed my roommate the letter I had just written
6. One of the subjects I've been interested ____ for a long time is astronomy.
7. The people I talked ____ at the reception were interesting.
8. One of the places I want to visit ____ next year is Mexico City.
9. The book catalogue I was looking ____ had hundreds of interesting titles.
10. The book I wanted ____ wasn't available at the library.
11. I really enjoyed the music we were listening ____ at Jim's yesterday.
12. Botany is a subject I'm not familiar
13. The bags I was carrying ____ were really heavy.
14. My parents are people I can always rely ____ for support and help.
15. Taking out the garbage is one of the chores our fourteen-year-old is responsible
16. The newspaper I was reading ____ had the latest news about the election.
17. The furniture I bought ____ was expensive.
18. English grammar is one of the subjects ____ which I enjoy studying the most.
19. The friend I waved ____ didn't wave back. Maybe he just didn't see me.
20. The people ____ whom Alex was waiting were over an hour late.

◇练习 19 定语从句中 WHOSE 的用法 (表 12-7)

1. 长句: I know a man whose daughter is a pilot.

短句 1: I know a man.

短句 2: his daughter is a pilot.

2. 长句: The woman whose husband is out of work found a job at Mel's Diner.

短句 1:

短句 2:

3. 长句: The man whose wallet I found gave me a reward.

短句 1:

短句 2:

◇练习 20 定语从句中 WHOSE 的用法 (表 12-7)

按照下列步骤做

1. 用下划线划出物主代词。

2. 用箭头标出所指代的名词。

3. 用 whose 替代物主代词。

4. 将两句合并成一个

1. The firefighters are very brave. Their department has won many awards.

→ The fire fighters whose department has won many awards are very brave.

2. I talked to the boy. His kite was caught in a tree.

→ I talked to the boy whose kite was caught in a tree.

3. The family is staying in a motel. Their house burned down.

4. I watched a little girl. Her dog was chasing a ball in the park.

5. The reporter won an award. Her articles explained global warming.

6. I know a man. His daughter entered college at the age of fourteen.

7. We observed a language teacher. Her teaching methods included role-playing.

8. The teachers are very popular. Their methods include role-playing.

◇练习 21 定语从句的意义 (表 12-1 → 12-7)

选出所有正确的句子。

1. The policeman who gave Henry a ticket seemed very nervous.

a. ☒ Henry received a ticket.

b. ☐ Henry seemed nervous.

c. ☒ The policeman seemed nervous.

2. A co-worker of mine whose wife is a pilot is afraid of flying.

a. ☐ My co-worker is a pilot.

b. ☐ My co-worker's wife is afraid of flying.

c. ☐ The pilot is a woman.

3. The man that delivers office supplies to our company bought a Ferrari.

a. ☐ Our company bought a Ferrari.

b. ☐ A man delivers office supplies.

c. ☐ A man bought a Ferrari.

4. The doctor who took care of my father had a heart attack recently.

a. ☐ My father had a heart attack.

b. ☐ The doctor treated a heart attack patient.

c. ☐ The doctor had a heart attack.

5. The forest fire which destroyed two homes in Woodville burned for two weeks across a wide area.

a. ☐ The forest fire burned for two weeks.

b. ☐ Two homes burned for two weeks.

c. ☐ The forest fire destroyed Woodville.

6. The salesman who sold my friend a used car was arrested for changing the mileage on cars.

a. ☐ My friend bought a car.

b. ☐ My friend was arrested.

c. ☐ The salesman changed the mileage on cars.

7. The waiter who took Julie's order is her best friend's cousin.

a. ☐ The waiter is Julie's cousin.

b. ☐ Julie's best friend is the waiter's cousin.

c. ☐ Julie's best friend is a waiter.

◇练习 22 定语从句 (表 12-1 → 12-7)

用所给信息和定语从句完成下列句子, 删掉定语从句中不必要的代词。

I share their views.
 Their children were doing poorly in her class.
 They disrupted the global climate and caused mass extinctions of animal life.
 Ted bought them for his wife on their anniversary.
 I slept on it at the hotel last night.
 They had backbones.
 ✓ it is used to carry boats with goods and/or passengers.

1. A waterway is a river or stream which/that is used to carry boats with goods and/or passengers.
2. The second grade teacher talked to all the parents
3. The flowers _____ wilted in the heat before he got home.
4. The candidates _____ will get my votes.
5. According to scientists, the first animals _____ were fish. They appeared on the earth about 500 million years ago.
6. Approximately 370 million years ago, seventy percent of Earth's marine species mysteriously vanished. Approximately 65 million years ago, the dinosaurs and two-thirds of all marine animal species became extinct. According to some scientific researchers, Earth was struck by speeding objects from space _____.



◇练习 23 定语从句 (表 12-1 → 12-7)

哪些词可以填入空格处: who, whom, which, that, whose 或者 \varnothing ?

1. "What do you say to people who/that ask you personal questions that you don't want to answer?"
2. In my country, any person _____ is twenty-one years old or older can vote. I turned twenty-one last year. The person I voted for in the national election lost. I hope the next candidate for _____ I vote has better luck. I'd like to vote for a winning candidate.
3. Vegetarians are people _____ do not eat meat. True vegetarians do not eat flesh comes from any living creature, including fish. Some vegetarians even exclude any food _____ is made from animal products, such as milk and eggs.
4. People _____ live in New York City are called New Yorkers.
5. Tina likes the present _____ I gave her for her birthday.
6. George Washington is the president _____ picture is on a one-dollar bill.
7. Have you seen the movie _____ is playing at the Fox Theater?
8. Do you know the woman _____ Michael is engaged to?
9. That's Tom Jenkins. He's the boy _____ parents live in Switzerland.
10. A thermometer is an instrument _____ measures temperature.
11. A high-strung person is someone _____ is always nervous.
12. The man _____ I told you about is standing over there.

◇练习 24 情况分析 (第十二章)

改错

s

1. A movie that look[^], interesting opens tomorrow.
2. My family lived in a house which it was built in 1900.
3. The little boy was lost who asked for directions.

4. I don't know people who their lives are carefree.
5. It is important to help people who has no money.
6. At the airport, I was waiting for friends which I hadn't seen them for a long time.
7. The woman live next door likes to relax by doing crossword puzzles every evening.
8. My teacher has two cats who their names are Ping and Pong.
9. A beautiful garden that separates my house from the street,
10. I asked the children who was sitting on the bench to help us.
11. The school that my children attend it is very good academically.
12. I enjoyed the songs which we sang them.
13. One of the places that I like to visit Central Park.
14. The movie we saw it last evening was very exciting.
15. I sent the parents who I hiked with their son a picture of us on Mt. Fuji.
16. Do you know the man who work in that office?
17. A mother who's daughter is in my class often brings cookies for the children.
18. The CD player who I bought can hold several CDs at once.
19. The bed which I sleep is very comfortable.
20. I would like to tell you about several problems which I have had them since I came here

第十三章 动名词和不定式

◇练习 1 动词+动名词 (表 13-1)

用括号中动词的正确形式完成下列句子。

1. Joan often talks about (move) moving overseas.
2. The Browns sometimes discuss (live) living in a smaller town.
3. Christine enjoys (take) taking care of her young niece.
4. Nathan keeps ('buy) buying lottery tickets, but he never wins.
5. My manager considered (give) giving pay raises but decided not to.
6. I always put off (do) doing my math homework.
7. The students finished (review) reviewing for the test at 3:00 A.M.
8. Ann stopped (run) running and walked the rest of the way home.
9. Dana quit (drive) driving after she had a serious car accident.
10. My dentist thinks about (retire) retiring, but he enjoys his work too much.
11. Last week, Joan and David postponed (get married) getting married for the second time.
12. Do you mind (work) working another shift tonight?

◇练习 2 GO+动名词 (表 13-2)

用下列表中的 go 的正确形式完成下列句子。

camp fish sail sightsee skydive
 ✓dance hike shop ski swim

1. I love to dance. Last night, my husband and I danced for hours.
 → Last night, my husband and I went dancing
2. Later this afternoon, Ted is going to take a long walk in the woods.
 → Ted will go hiking later today.
3. Yesterday, Alice visited many stores and bought some clothes and makeup.
 → Yesterday, Alice went shopping
4. Let's go to the beach and jump in the water.
 → Let's go swimming
5. My grandfather takes his fishing pole to a farm pond every Sunday.
 → My grandfather goes fishing every Sunday.
6. When I visit a new city, I like to look around at the sights.
 → When I visit a new city, I like to go sightseeing
7. I love to put up a small tent by a stream, make a fire, and listen to the sounds of the forest during the night.
 → I love to go camping



8. I want to take the sailboat out on the water this afternoon.

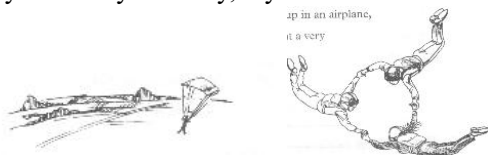
→ I want to _____ this afternoon.

9. Once a year, we take our skis to our favorite mountain resort and enjoy an exciting weekend.

→ Once a year, we _____ at our favorite mountain resort.

10. Last year on my birthday, my friends and I went up in an airplane, put on parachutes, and jumped out of the plane at a very high altitude.

→ Last year on my birthday, my friends and I



◇练习 3 名词和不定式 (表 13-1 和 13-3)

用下划线划出句中的动名词和不定式，动名词选 GER，不定式选 INF。

1. GER (INF) Ann promised to wait for me.
2. (GER) INF I kept walking even though I was tired.
3. GER INF Alex offered to help me.
4. GER INF Karen finished writing a letter and went to bed.
5. GER INF Don't forget to call me tomorrow.
6. GER INF David discussed quitting his job several times.
7. GER INF The police officers planned to work overtime during the conference.
8. GER INF Kevin would like to grow organic vegetables in his garden.

◇练习 4 动名词和不定式 (表 13-1, 13-3 和 13-4)

用所给动词的动名词或不定式完成下列句子。

I. 用 work 完成句子。

1. I agreed _____ to work
2. I put off _____ working
3. I would love _____
4. I thought about _____
5. I promised _____
6. I began _____
7. I decided _____
8. I offered _____
9. I quit _____
10. I refused _____
11. I stopped _____
12. I finished _____

II. 用 leave 完成句子。

13. She expected _____
14. She wanted _____
15. She considered _____
16. She talked about _____
17. She postponed _____
18. She put off _____
19. She refused _____
20. She needed _____
21. She thought about _____
22. She hoped _____

III. 用 know 完成句子。

23. They seemed _____
24. They expected _____
25. They would like _____
26. They don't mind _____
27. They would love _____
28. They want _____
29. They can't stand _____
30. They needed _____
31. They appeared _____
32. They hated _____

◇练习 5 动词+动名词与不定式的比较 (表 13-1→13-3)

选出正确答案完成下列句子。

1. I would like _____ you and some of my other friends for dinner sometime.

- A. inviting B. to invite

2. I enjoyed _____ with my family at the lake last summer.
A. being B. to be
3. Ron agreed me move out of my apartment this weekend.
A. helping B. to help
4. My parents can't afford _____ all of my college expenses.
A. paying B. to pay
5. Liang-Siok, would you mind _____ this letter on your way home?
A. mailing B. to mail
6. Do you expect _____ this course? If so, you'd better work harder.
A. passing B. to pass
7. Adam offered _____ for me tonight because I feel awful.
A. working B. to work
8. I refuse _____ your proposal. I've made up my mind.
A. considering B. to consider
9. I wish you would consider _____ my proposal. I know I can do the job.
A. accepting B. to accept
10. I don't think I'll ever finish _____ this report. It just goes on and on.
A. reading B. to read
11. I would enjoy _____ you in Cairo while you're studying there.
A. visiting B. to visit
12. The children seem _____ why they have to stay home tonight.
A. understanding B. to understand
13. Don't forget _____ all of the doors before you go to bed.
A. locking B. to lock
14. I'm really sorry. I didn't mean _____ your feelings.
A. hurting B. to hurt
15. Why do you keep me the same question over and over again?
A. asking B. to ask
16. I've decided _____ for another job. I'll never be happy here.
A. looking B. to look
17. You need harder if you want to get a promotion.
A. trying B. to try
18. Why do you pretend his company? I know you don't like him.
A. enjoying B. to enjoy
19. Let's get together tonight. I want to talk about a new business.
A. opening B. to open
20. I have a secret. Do you promise no one?
A. telling B. to tell
21. The president plans everyone a bonus at the end of the year.
A. giving B. to give
22. I have a good job, and I hope _____ myself all through school.
A. supporting B. to support
23. I can't wait work today. I'm taking off on vacation tonight.
A. finishing B. to finish
24. My neighbor and I get up at six every morning and go _____.
A. jogging B. to jog

◇练习 6 动词+动名词或不定式 (表 13-1→13-4)

选出正确答案，答案可能不止一个。

1. I want _____ the comedy special on TV tonight.
A. watching B. to watch
2. I'm a people-watcher. I like _____ people in public places.
A. watching B. to watch
3. I've already begun _____ ideas for my new novel.
A. collecting B. to collect
4. A group of Chinese scientists plan _____ their discovery at the conference next spring.
A. presenting B. to present

5. Whenever I wash my car, it starts _____.
A. raining B. to rain
6. Angela and I continued _____ for several hours.
A. talking B. to talk
7. I love _____ on the beach during a storm.
A. walking B. to walk



8. I would love _____ a walk today.
A. taking B. to take
 9. Are you sure you don't mind _____ Johnny for me while I go to the store?
A. watching B. to watch
 10. Annie hates _____ in the rain.
A. driving B. to drive
 11. My roommate can't stand _____ to really loud rock music.
A. listening B. to listen
 12. I don't like _____ in front of other people.
A. singing B. to sing
 13. Would you like _____ to the concert with us?
A. going B. to go
 14. Charlie likes to go _____ when the weather is very windy.
A. sailing B. to sail
 15. Most children can't wait _____ their presents on their birthday.
A. opening B. to open
- ◇练习 7 动词+动名词或不定式(表 13-1, 13-3 和 13-4)
用括号中所给动词的动名词或不定式完成下列句子。
1. Cindy intends (go) _____ to graduate school next year.
 2. Pierre can't afford (buy) _____ a new car.
 3. Janice is thinking about (look) _____ for a new job.
 4. I'm planning (go) _____ (shop) _____ tomorrow.
 5. Would you mind (pass) _____ this note to Joanna? Thanks.
 6. Tim expects (go) _____ (fish) _____ this weekend.
 7. When Tommy broke his toy, he started (cry) _____.
 8. Oscar likes (go) _____ to professional conferences.
 9. Would you like (go) _____ to Sharon's house next Saturday?
 10. Mr. Blake appears (have) _____ a lot of money.
 11. Eric agreed (meet) _____ us at the restaurant at seven.
 12. Have you discussed (change) _____ your major with your academic advisor?
 13. The Wilsons went (camp) _____ in Yellowstone National Park last summer.
 14. What time do you expect (arrive) _____ in Denver?
 15. Don't put off (write) _____ your composition until the last minute.
 16. Ken had to quit (jog) _____ because he hurt his knee.
 17. Don't forget (call) _____ the dentist's office this afternoon.
 18. How do you expect (pass) _____ your courses if you don't study?
 19. I haven't heard from Stacy in a long time. I keep (hope) _____ that I'll get a letter from her soon.

20. Shhh. I'm trying (concentrate)_____ I'm doing a problem for my accounting class, and I can't afford (make)_____ any mistakes.
21. I'm sleepy. I'd like (go)_____ home and take a nap.
22. When are you going to start (do)_____ the research for your term paper?
23. Why did Marcia refuse (help)_____ us?
24. Khalid tries (learn)_____ at least 25 new words every day.
25. I considered (drive)_____ to Minneapolis. Finally I decided (fly)
26. Our teacher agreed (postpone)_____ the test until Friday.
27. I expect (be)_____ in class tomorrow.
28. I enjoy (teach)_____.
29. Mr. Carter continued (read)_____ his book even though the children were making a lot of noise.
30. Would you like (go)_____ (dance)_____ tonight?
31. The Knickerbockers talked about (build)_____ a new house.
32. Children like (play)_____ make-believe games. Yesterday Tommy pretended (be)_____ a doctor, and Bobby pretended (be)_____ a patient.
33. My cousin offered (take)_____ me to the airport.

◇练习 8 介词+动名词(表 13-5)

用正确的介词完成下列句子，并用下划线划出动名词。

I. Liz...

- is afraid_____ of_____ flying.
- apologized_____ hurting her friend's feelings.
- believes_____ helping others.
- is good_____ listening to her friends' concerns.
- is tired_____ working weekends.
- is nervous_____ walking home from work late at night.
- dreams_____ owning a farm with horses, cows, and sheep.

II. Leonard...

- is responsible_____ closing the restaurant where he works at night.
- thanked his father_____ lending him some money.
- plans_____ becoming an accountant.
- forgave his roommate_____ taking his car without asking.
- insists_____ eating only fresh fruits and vegetables.
- is looking forward_____ finishing school.
- stopped his best friend_____ making a bad decision.
- is worried_____ not having enough time for family and friends.

◇练习 9 介词+动名词(表 13-5 和附录 2)

用介词和动名词完成下列句子。

- Bill interrupted me. He apologized_____ for_____ that.
→ Bill apologized_____ for interrupting_____ me.
- I like to learn about other countries and cultures. I'm interested_____ that.
→ I'm interested _____ about other countries and cultures.
- I helped Ann. She thanked me_____ that.
→ Ann thanked me _____ her.
- Nadia wanted to walk to work. She insisted_____ that.
→ We offered Nadia a ride, but she insisted _____ to work.
- Nick lost my car keys. I forgave him_____ that.
→ I forgave Nick _____ my car keys when he borrowed my car.
- Sara wants to go out to eat just because she feels _____ it.
→ She feels _____ out to eat.
- I'm not a good artist. I try to draw faces, but I'm not very good _____ it.
→ I'm not good _____ faces.

8. Mr. and Mrs. Reed have always saved for a rainy day. They believe _____ that.
→ Mr. and Mrs. Reed believe _____ for a rainy day.
9. I may fall on my face and make a fool of myself. I'm worried _____ that.
→ I'm worried _____ on my face and _____ a fool of myself when I walk up the steps to receive my diploma.
10. The children are going to go to Disneyland. They're excited _____ that.
→ The children are excited _____ to Disneyland.
11. Their parents are going to Disneyland, too. They are looking forward _____ that.
→ Their parents are looking forward _____ there too.
12. Max doesn't like to stay in hotels because he is scared of heights. He is afraid that.
→ Max is afraid _____ in hotels.

◇练习 10 复习：动名词与不定式的比较(表 13-1→13-5)

用动词的动名词或不定式完成下列句子，有些动词可能需要介词。

I. 用动词 ask

- Marie is thinking _____ about asking _____ the Petersons over for dinner.
- Yoko intends _____ to ask _____ for a day off from work this week.
- Mika insists _____ questions that have already been answered.
- Chris is excited _____ the new girl in his class to the first school dance.
- Tarik is new at school. He is nervous _____ anyone to the dance.
- My father promised _____ the doctor for more information on his illness.
- Mrs. Kim is responsible _____ parents to help in their children's classroom.
- Jody would love _____ her former boyfriend to her wedding, but her fiancé has said "no."
- Jerry hates _____ for directions when he's lost.
- Mansour is very independent and doesn't like _____ others for help with anything.

II. 用动词 fix

- Hiro agreed _____ the window after he broke it.
- Hiro began _____ it, but he soon needed more parts.
- Janet learned how _____ her bicycle from her mother.
- Her mother learned _____ bicycles from her father.
- My parents talk _____ their sailboat before summer.
- The little boy tried _____ his parent's leaky faucet.
- His father attempted _____ his son's repairs, but couldn't.
- A plumber promised _____ the faucet the next day.
- The plumber finished _____ the faucet in ten minutes.

◇练习 11 复习：动名词与不定式的比较 (表 13-1→13-5)

用下表中的动词完成下列句子，每个动词只能用一次。

adopt	cash	install	stay	use
be	go	lower	take	✓ write

- Ruth puts off _____ writing _____ thank-you notes for gifts because she doesn't know what to say.
- The city intends _____ a new traffic light at its most dangerous intersection.
- I meant _____ my paycheck on the way home, but I forgot.
- Would you mind _____ at the office late tonight so we can finish our budget review?
- The bus drivers are on strike. They refuse _____ back to work until they get a new contract.
- The Adamses want another child. They are discussing _____ a baby from another

country.

7. Sue can't afford _____ a vacation this year because she didn't get a pay raise.

8. My mother is an old-fashioned cook. She doesn't believe _____ frozen or canned foods.

9. Little Daniel pretends _____ a monster whenever someone comes to the door.

10. Politicians always promise _____ taxes, but my taxes keep rising.

◇练习 12 复习: 动名词与不定式的比较(表 13-1→13-5)

用斜体词的动名词或不定式完成下列句子(有句子动名词或不定式都能用),有句子可能还需要介词。

1. Matthew wanted to go to a different doctor for his back pain. He considered going to a specialist.

2. Jim would rather walk than drive to work. Instead of driving, Jim walks along bike trails to his office.

3. I need to drive to the airport, but I don't want to park there. I'm not planning _____ there because it's too expensive.

4. I never watch commercials on TV. In fact, I can't stand _____ TV commercials, so I generally watch videotaped Shows.

5. Joanne's hobby is cooking. She loves _____ gourmet meals for friends and relatives.

6. Here's some fresh bread I just baked. I enjoy _____ a variety of breads. They're so much better than store-bought.

7. Martina is nervous about going to the dentist for a filling. She has been afraid the dentist since she was a little girl.

8. Waiter's dream is to become a doctor in a rural area. He has dreamed _____ a doctor since he was hospitalized as a child.

9. Nathan has a chocolate milkshake every afternoon for a snack. He often feels like two, but he doesn't.

10. Every morning, rain or shine, Debbie rises early and stretches. Then she goes outside and runs for 30 minutes. Every morning, Debbie goes _____ for half an hour.

11. Marta's neighbors watered her plants while she was out of town, and she thanked them with a

bouquet of flowers when she returned. Marta thanked her neighbors _____ her flowers while she was gone.

12. Sandy spoke harshly to her secretary one morning without meaning to. She immediately apologized _____ harshly.

13. Mark washes all his clothes in hot water. Although his roommates tell him hot water could damage some clothes, he doesn't listen. He insists _____ all his clothes in hot water.

14. The little girl didn't see the car rolling slowly toward her. No one was in it, and fortunately a neighbor jumped into the car and stopped it before it could hit her. The neighbor stopped the car _____ the girl.

15. When Rita came to work, her eyes were red and she appeared upset, but she said everything was OK. Later, she was laughing and looked more relaxed. Rita seemed better.

16. If the construction company doesn't complete the highway repairs on time, it will have to pay a fine for every day it is late. Crews are working around the clock to repair the highway. They believe they will finish _____ it on time.

17. Richard's company is reorganizing. Some people will lose their jobs, and others will get new positions. Richard really likes this firm and hopes _____ a new position.

18. Christine grew up in a family of ten children. She enjoys her brothers and sisters, but doesn't want to have such a large family herself. She plans _____ a smaller family.

19. Noelle started her own company and hasn't had a vacation in three years. She doesn't feel she can take a vacation until the company is financially stable. She is looking forward _____ a vacation when the company is more financially secure.

20. Tang has been studying medicine abroad for two years and hasn't seen his family in all that time. He is going home next week and is very excited _____ his family.

◇练习 13 BY+动名词(表 13-6)

用 by+动名词描述人们的行为。

1. MARY: How did you comfort the child?

SUE: I held him in my arms.

→ Sue comforted the child by holding him in her arms.

2. PAT: How did you improve your vocabulary?

NADIA: I read a lot of books.

→ Nadia improved her vocabulary by reading a lot of books.

3. KIRK: How did Grandma amuse the children?

SALLY: She read them a story.

→ Grandma amused the children by reading them a story.

4. MASAKO: How did you improve your English?

PEDRO: I watched TV a lot.

→ Pedro improved his English by watching TV a lot.

5. JEFFREY: How did you catch up with the bus?

JIM: I ran as fast as I could.

→ Jim caught up with the bus by running as fast as he could.

6. MR. LEE: How did you earn your children's respect?

MR. FOX: I treated them with respect at all times.

→ Mr. Smith earned his children's respect by treating them with respect at all times.

◇练习 14 BY+动名词(表 13-6)

用 by+B 栏中合适的信息完成 A 栏中的句子。

Example: I arrived on time

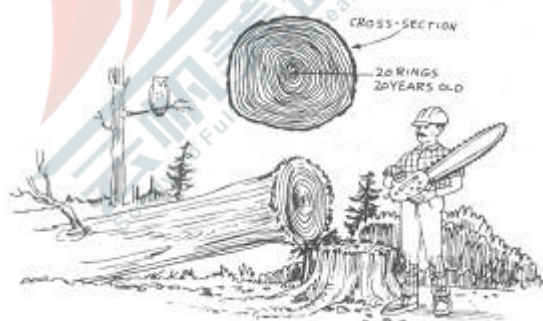
→ I arrived on time by taking a taxi instead of a bus.

A 栏

1. I arrived on time
2. I put out the fire
3. Giraffes can reach the leaves at the tops of trees
4. I fixed the chair
5. Sylvia was able to buy an expensive stereo system
6. A hippopotamus can cross a river
7. I figured out how to cook the noodles
8. Pam finished her project on time
9. You can figure out how old a tree is

B 栏

- A. tighten the loose screws
- B. count its rings
- C. read the directions on the package
- D. walk on the bottom of the riverbed
- E. pour water on it
- F. work all through the night
- G. stretch their long necks
- H. save her money for two years
- ✓ I. take a taxi instead of a bus



◇练习 15 BY 与 WITH 的比较(表 13-6)

用 by 或 with 完成下列句子。

1. Alice greeted me with a smile.
2. Ms. Williams goes to work every day by bus.
3. I pounded the nail into the wood with a hammer.
4. Tom went to the next city by train.

5. I got in touch with Bill _____ phone.
6. Po eats _____ chopsticks.
7. I didn't notice that the envelope wasn't addressed to me. I opened it _____ mistake.
8. I sent a message to Ann _____ fax.
9. Jack protected his eyes from the sun _____ his hand.
10. Janice put out the fire _____ a bucket of water.
11. I pay my bills _____ mail.
12. I solved the math problem _____ a calculator.
13. We traveled to Boston _____ car.
14. The rider kicked the sides of the horse _____ her heels.
15. Jim was extremely angry. He hit the wall _____ his fist.
16. At the beach, Julie wrote her name in the sand _____ her finger.



◇练习 16 动名词作主语；IT+不定式(表 13-7)

用动名词作主语或 it+不定式完成句子，在适当的地方加动词 is，使用列表中的动词。

complete	eat	live
drive	✓ learn	swim

1. a. _____ It is _____ easy for anyone _____ to learn _____ how to cook an egg.
b. _____ Learning _____ how to cook an egg _____ is _____ easy for anyone.
2. a. _____ nutritious food _____ important for your health.
b. _____ important for your health _____ nutritious food.
3. a. _____ on the wrong side of the road _____ against the law.
b. _____ against the law _____ on the wrong side of the road.
4. a. _____ fun for both children and adults _____ in the ocean.
b. _____ in the ocean _____ fun for both children and adults.
5. a. _____ expensive _____ in a dormitory?
b. _____ in a dormitory expensive?
6. a. _____ difficult _____ these sentences correctly?
b. _____ these sentences correctly difficult?

◇练习 17 表目的：TO 与 FOR 的比较(表 13-8)

用 it...for someone+不定式和括号中的形容词改写下列句子。

1. Shy people have a hard time meeting others at social events. (difficult)

it is difficult for shy people to meet _____ others at social events.

2. Babies enjoy looking at black-and-white objects. (interesting) _____ at black-and-white objects.

3. In many cultures, young children sleep in the same room as their parents. (customary)
In many cultures, _____ in
the same
room as their parents.
4. Airline pilots need to have good eyesight. (necessary) _____ good
eyesight.
5. Many teenagers can't wake up early. (hard) _____
early.
6. Elderly people need to keep their minds active. (important) _____ their minds
active.
7. People don't like listening to monotone speakers. (boring) _____ to monotone speakers.
8. Students need to have strategies to remember new information. (necessary)
_____ strategies to remember
new
information.
9. Scientists will never know the origin of every disease in the world. (impossible)
_____ the origin of every
disease in the world.
10. Parents should teach their children by modeling good behavior. (important)
_____ their children by modeling
good behavior.
11. People are often more critical of others than of themselves. (easy)
_____ more critical of others
than of
themselves.
12. Small children shouldn't cross a busy street without help (dangerous)
_____ a busy street without
help.

◇练习 18 表目的：TO 与 FOR 的比较(表 13-9)

用 to 或 for 完成下列句子。

I. Yesterday, I called the doctor's office ...
class ...

II. Yesterday, Chuck stayed after

1. for an appointment.

8. _____ get help from the

teacher.

2. to make an appointment.

3. _____ get a prescription.

4. _____ a prescription.

5. _____ ask a question.

6. _____ get some advice.

9. _____ talk with the teacher.

10. _____ a talk with the teacher.

11. _____ extra help.

12. _____ finish a project.

13. _____ work with other

students.

7. _____ some advice.

14. _____ a meeting with other

students.

15. _____ help plan a class party.

◇ 练习 19 表目的: TO 与 FOR 的比较(表 13-9)

用 to 或 for 完成下列句子

1. We wear coats in the winter to keep warm.

2. We wear coats in the winter for warmth.

3. Mark contacted a lawyer _____ legal advice.

4. Mark contacted a lawyer _____ discuss a legal problem.

5. Sam went to the hospital _____ an operation.

6. I hired a cab _____ take me to the boat dock.

7. Frank went to the library _____ review for the test.

8. I play tennis twice a week _____ exercise and relaxation.

9. Jennifer used some medicine _____ cure an infection on her arm.

10. I lent Yvette money _____ her school expenses.

11. I went to my manager _____ permission to take the rest of the day off.

◇ 练习 20 (IN ORDER)TO(表 13-9)

合并所给斜体短语, 并用(in order)to 完成下列句子。

1. watch the news + turn on the TV

After he got home from work, Jack turned on the TV (in order) to watch the news.

2. wash his clothes + go to the laundromat

Every weekend Martin _____

3. run + get to class on time

Every morning Jeannette _____

4. let in some fresh air + open the bedroom windows

Every night I _____

5. ask them for some money + write a letter to his parents

Sometimes Pierre _____

6. listen to a baseball game + have the radio on

Some afternoons at work, my co-workers _____

7.study in peace and quiet + go to the library

Some evenings, I _____

◇ 练习 21 TOO 与 ENOUGH 的比较(表 13-10)

用括号中所给词语和 too/enough 完成下列句子。

1. I have a tight schedule tomorrow, so I can't go to the park.

a. (time) I don't have enough time to go to the park.

b. (busy) I'm too busy to go to the park.

2. I'm pretty short. I can't touch the ceiling.

a. (tall) I'm not _____ to touch the ceiling.

b. (short) I'm _____ to touch the ceiling.

3. Tom has been out of work for months. He can't pay any of his bills.

a. (money) Tom doesn't have _____ to pay his bills.

b. (poor) Tom is _____ to pay his bills.

4. This tea is very hot. I need to wait a while until I can drink it.

a. (hot) This tea is _____ to drink.

b. (cool) This tea isn't _____ to drink.

5. I feel sick. I don't want to eat anything.

a. (sick) I feel _____.

b. (well) I don't feel _____.

6. Susie is only six years old. She can't stay home by herself.

a. (old) _____.

b. (young) _____.

◇ 练习 22 TOO 与 ENOUGH 的比较(表 13-10)

用 too, enough 或 ϕ 完成下列句子。

1. I think this problem is ϕ important enough to require our immediate attention.

2. Nora is not too tired ϕ to finish the project before she goes home.

3. I can't take the citizenship test next week. I haven't had _____ time to study for it.

4. The sun is _____ bright _____ to look at directly.

5. You can do this math problem by yourself. You're _____ smart _____ to figure it out.

6. Our company is _____ successful _____ to start several new

branches

overseas.

7. My niece doesn't drive yet. She's _____ young _____ to get a driver's

license.

8. Robert is an amazing runner. His coach thinks he is _____ good _____ to begin training for an Olympic marathon.

9. Only one person volunteered to help us. We don't have _____ help _____ to finish this task.

10. Look at the children watching the clowns. They can't sit still. They're _____ excited _____ to stay in their c

11. I would love to go hiking with you in the mountains, but I don't think I have _____ energy or strength _____ to hike for two days.

12. The heat outside is terrible! It's _____ hot _____ to fry an egg on the sidewalk!

◇ 练习 23 动名词与不定式的比较(第十三章)

用下划线划出动名词和不定式。

1. Do you enjoy being alone sometimes, or do you prefer to be with other people all the time?

2. My son isn't old enough to stay home alone.

3. Jim offered to help me with my work.

4. I called my friend to thank her for the lovely gift.

5. Mary talked about going downtown tomorrow, but I'd like to stay home.

6. It is interesting to learn about earthquakes.

7. Approximately one million earthquakes occur around the world in a year's time. Six thousand can be felt by humans. Of those, one hundred and twenty are strong enough to cause serious damage to buildings, and twenty are violent enough to destroy a city.

8. It's important to recognize the power of nature. A recent earthquake destroyed a bridge in California. It took five years for humans to build the bridge. It took nature fifteen seconds to knock it down.

9. Predicting earthquakes is difficult. I read about one scientist who tries to predict earthquakes by reading the daily newspaper's lost-and-found ads for lost pets. He believes that animals can sense an earthquake before it comes. He thinks they then begin to act strangely. Dogs and cats respond to the threat by running away to a safer place. By counting the number of ads for lost pets, he expects to be able to predict when an earthquake will occur.

◇ 练习 24 动名词与不定式的比较(第十三章)

用括号中所给动词的动名词或不定式完成下列句子。

1. (study) studying English is fun.

2. My boss makes a habit of (jot)* taking quick notes to her employees when they're done a good job.

3. From the earth, the sun and the moon appear (be) to be almost the same size.

4. A: I don't like airplanes.

B: Why? Are you afraid of (fly) flying ?

A: No, I'm afraid of (crash) crashing.

5. A: Let's quit (argue) arguing. We're getting nowhere. Let's just agree (disagree)

and still (be) being friends.

B: Sounds good to me. And I apologize for (raise) raising my voice. I

didn't mean (yell) yelling at you.

A: That's okay. I didn't intend (get) getting angry at you either.

6. A: David, why did you want (sneak) sneaking into the movie theater without

(pay) paying ?

B: I don't know, Mom. My friends talked me into (do) doing it, I guess.

A: That's not a very good reason. You are responsible for your actions, not your friends.

B: I know. I'm sorry.

A: How does this make you feel? Do you like yourself for (try) trying (sneak)

into the theater?

B: No. It doesn't make me feel good about myself.

A: You're young. We all have lessons like this to learn as we grow up. Just remember: It's

essential for you (have) having a good opinion of yourself. It's very

important for all of us (like) liking ourselves. When we do something wrong,

we stop (like) liking ourselves, and that doesn't feel good. Do you promise

never (do) doing anything like that again?

B: Yes. I promise! I'm really sorry, Mom.

7. People in the modern world are wasteful of natural resources. For example, every three months, people in North America throw away enough aluminum (build) _____ an entire airplane.

8. I am so busy! I have just enough time (do) _____ what I need (do) _____, but not enough time (do) _____ what I'd like (do) _____.

9. A: What do you feel like (do) _____ this afternoon?

B: I feel like (go) _____ (shop) _____ at the mall.

A: I feel like (go) _____ to a used car lot and (pretend) (be) _____ interested in (buy) _____ a car.

B: You're kidding. Why would you want (do) _____ that?

A: I like cars. Maybe we could even take one out for a test drive. You know I'm planning (get) _____ a car as soon as I can afford (buy) _____ one. I can't wait (have) _____ my own car. Maybe we'll find the car of my dreams at a used

car lot. Come on. It sounds like fun.

B: Nah. Not me. You go ahead. (pretend) _____ (be) interested in (buy) _____ a used car isn't my idea of fun.

10. A: Have you called Amanda yet?

B: _____ No. I keep (put) _____ it off.

A: Why?

B: _____ She's mad at me for (forget) (send) _____ her a card on her birthday.

A: It's silly for her (get) _____ mad about something like that. Just call her and say you are sorry about (remember, not) _____ to wish her a

happy birthday. She can't stay mad at you forever.

11. One of my good friends, Larry, has the bad habit of (interrupt) others while they're talking.

12. In days of old, it was customary for a servant (taste) _____ the king's

food

before the king ate (make) _____ sure it was not poisoned.



◇ 练习 25 错误分析(第十三章)

改错。

1. I decided not to buy a new car.
2. The Johnsons are considering to sell their antique store.
3. Sam finally finished build his vacation home in the mountains.
4. My wife and I go to dancing at the community center every Saturday night.
5. Suddenly, it began to raining and the wind started to blew.
6. The baby is afraid be away from her mother for any length of time.
7. I am excited for start college this September.
8. You can send your application fax.
9. My country is too beautiful.
10. Is exciting a sports car to drive.
11. My grandparents enjoy to traveling across the country in a motor home.
12. Elena made this sweater with her hands.
13. Swimming it is one of the sports we can participate in at school.
14. That was very good, but I'm too full no eat any more.

15. My mother-in-law went to a tourist shop for buying a disposable camera.
16. Instead to get her degree in four years, Michelle decided traveling abroad first.
17. Swim with a group of people is more enjoyable than swim alone.
18. Is interesting meet new people.
19. Is hard me to stay up past 9:00.
20. The professor thanked his students do well on the test.

第十四章 名词性从句

◇ 练习 1 特殊疑问句和名词性从句(表 5-2 和 14-2)

如果句子包含名词性从句，有下划线划出，并选 NOUN CLAUSE，如果疑问词引导问句，选 QUES

TION，在句尾添加适当的标点符号：句号(.)或者问号(?)。

- | | | |
|---|---------------|------------|
| 1. I don't know <u>where Tack bought his boots.</u> | (NOUN CLAUSE) | QUESTION |
| 2. Where did Jack buy his boots? | NOUN CLAUSE | (QUESTION) |
| 3. I don't understand why Ann left | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 4. Why did Ann leave | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 5. I don't know where your book is | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 6. Where is your book | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 7. When did Bob come | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 8. I don't know when Bob came | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 9. What does "calm" mean | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 10. Tarik knows what "calm" means | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 11. I don't know how long the earth has existed | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |
| 12. How long has the earth existed | NOUN CLAUSE | QUESTION |

◇ 练习 2 名词性从句(表 14-2)

用下划线划出句子中的名词性从句，标出名词性从句中的主语(s)和谓语(v)，并用括号括起来。

- S V
1. I don't know where [Patty] [went] last night.

S V

2. Do you know where [Joe's parents] [live]?*

3. I know where Joe lives.

4. Do you know what time the movie begins?

5. She explained where Brazil is.

6. I don't believe what Estefan said.

7. I don't know when the packages will arrive.

8. Please tell me how far it is to the post office.

9. I don't know who knocked on the door.

10. I wonder what happened at the party last night.

◇ 练习 3 特殊疑问句和名词性从句 (表 5-2 和 14-2)

用下划线划出名词性从句, 并将该从句改写成疑问句。

1. 疑问句: why did Tim leave?

名词性从句: I don't know why Tim left.

2. 疑问句: where

名词性从句: I don't know where he went.

3. 疑问句: _____

名词性从句: I don't know where he lives.

4. 疑问句: _____

名词性从句: I don't know where he is now.

5. 疑问句: _____

名词性从句: I don't know what time he will return.

6. 疑问句: _____

名词性从句: I don't know how far it is to his house.

7. 疑问句: _____

名词性从句: I don't know who lives next door to him.

8. 疑问句: _____

名词性从句: I don't know what happened to him.

◇ 练习 4 特殊疑问句和名词性从句(表 5-2 和 14-2)

用所给句子完成疑问句和名词性从句。

1. Marcos left at 11:00.

When did marcos leave?

Could you tell me when marcos left?

2. He said good-bye.

What _____

I didn't hear _____

3. The post office is on Second Street.

Where _____

Could you please tell me _____

4. It's half-past six.

What time _____

Could you please tell me _____

5. David arrived two days ago.

When _____

I don't know _____

6. Anna is from Peru.

What country _____

I'd like to know _____

7. Kathy was absent because she was ill.

Why _____ absent?

Do you know _____ absent?

8. Pedro lives next door.

Who _____ next door?

Do you know _____ next door?

9. Eric invited Sonya to the party.

Who(m) _____ to the party?

Do you know _____ to the party?

10. The Bakers borrowed our camping equipment.

Who _____ our camping equipment?

Do you remember _____ our camping equipment?

11. The restrooms are located down the hall.

Where _____

Could you please tell me _____

◇ 练习 5 名词性从句(表 14-2)

将所给的疑问句改写成名词性从句, 完成下列句子

1. Who(m) did Helen talk to? Do you know who (m) helen talked to?

2. Who lives in that apartment? Do you know _____
3. What did he say? Tell me _____
4. What kind of car does Pat have? I can't remember _____
5. How old are their children? I can't ever remember _____
6. Why did you say that? I don't understand _____
7. Where can I catch the bus? Could you please tell me _____
8. Who did Sara talk to? I don't know _____
9. How long has Ted been living here? Do you know _____
10. What does this word mean? Could you please tell me _____

◇ 练习 6 特殊疑问句和名词性从句(表 5-2 和 14-2)

用括号中的词语完成下列句子。

1. A: Why (you, were) were you late?
B: What?
A: I want to know why (you, were) you were late.
2. A: Where (Tom, go) _____ last night?
B: I'm sorry. I didn't hear what (you, say) _____ .
A: I want to know where (Tom, go) _____ last night.
3. A: What (a bumblebee, is) _____ ?
B: Excuse me?
A: I want to know what (a bumblebee, is) _____
B: It's a big bee.
4. A: Whose car (Oscar, borrow) _____ yesterday?
B: I don't know whose car (Oscar, borrow) _____ yesterday.
5. A: Could you please tell me where (Mr. Gow's office, is) _____
B: I'm sorry. I didn't understand.
A: Where (Mr. Gow's office, is) _____
B: Ah. Down the hall on the right.
6. A: Rachel left the hospital two weeks ago. When (she, come) _____ back to work?
B: I have no idea. I don't know when (she, come) _____ back to work.
A: Why (she, be) _____ in the hospital?
B: don't know that either. I haven't heard. I'll ask Tom. Maybe he knows why (she, be) _____ in the hospital.



◇ 练习 7 WHO, WHAT, WHOSE+BE 的名词性从句(表 14-3)

标出名词性从句中的主语(s)和谓语(V), 并用括号括起来。

1. I don't know who [that man] [is].
2. I don't know [who] [called].
3. I don't know who those people are.
4. I don't know who that person is.
5. I don't know who lives next door to me.
6. I don't know who my teacher will be next semester.
7. I don't know who will teach us next semester.
8. I don't know what a lizard is.
9. I don't know what happened in class yesterday.
11. I don't know whose hat this is.
12. I don't know whose hat is on the table.

◆ 练习 8 WHO, WHAT, WHOSE+BE 的名词性从句(表 14-3)

将 is 填入句中正确的空格处，如果不需要，则用斜线(/)标出。

1. I don't know who _____ / _____ that man is .
2. I don't know who _____ is _____ in that room _____ / .
3. I don't know what _____ a crow _____ .
4. I don't know who _____ in the doctor's office _____ .
5. I don't know who _____ that person _____ .
6. I don't know what _____ our new address _____ .
7. I don't know what _____ on the carpet _____ .
8. I don't know what _____ the date _____ today.
9. I don't know what _____ day it _____ .
10. I don't know whose office _____ at the end of the hall

◇ 练习9 WHO, WHAT, WHOSE+BE 的名词性从句(表14-3)

将所给的疑问句改写成名词性从句，完成下列句子

1. Who is she? I don't know _____
2. Who are they? I don't know _____
3. Whose book is that? I don't know _____
4. Whose glasses are those? Could you tell me _____
5. What is a wrench? Do you know _____
6. Who is that woman? I wonder _____
7. What is a clause? Don't you know _____
8. What is in that drawer? I don't know _____
9. Who is in that room? I don't know _____
10. What is on TV tonight? I wonder _____
11. What is a carrot? Do you know _____
12. Who am I? He doesn't know _____

◇ 练习 10 WHO, WHAT, WHOSE+BE 的名词性从句(表 14-3)

将所给的疑问句改写成名词性从句，完成下列对话。

1. A: Whose car is that?

B: I don't know whose car that is .

2. A: Whose car is in front of Sam's house?

B: I don't know whose car is in front of sam's house .

3. A: Who are the best students?

B: Ask the teacher _____ .

4. A: What time is dinner?

B: I'm not sure

5. A: Who's next in line?

B: I don't know _____ .

6. A: Whose purse is this?

B: Ask the woman in black _____ .

7. A: What are the main ideas of the story?

B: Ask a student _____ .

8. A: Whose shoes are those under the chair?

B: I don't know _____ .

9. A: What causes tornadoes?

B: I'm not sure _____ .

◇ 练习 11 名词性从句和一般疑问句(表 5-2 和 14-4)

将一般疑问句改写成名词性从句。

1. 一般疑问句: Is Tom coming?

名词性从句: I wonder if (whether) Tom is coming.

2. 一般疑问句: Has Jin finished medical school yet?

名词性从句: I don't know _____.

3. 一般疑问句: Does Daniel have any time off soon?

名词性从句: I don't know _____.

4. 一般疑问句: Is the flight on time?

名词性从句: Can you tell me _____?

5. 一般疑问句: Is there enough gas in the car?

名词性从句: Do you know _____?

6. 一般疑问句: Is Yuki married?

名词性从句: I can't remember _____.

7. 一般疑问句: Are the Petersons going to move?

名词性从句: I wonder _____.

8. 一般疑问句: Did Khaled change jobs?

名词性从句: I don't know _____.

◇ 练习 12 名词性从句和一般疑问句(表 5-2 和 14-4)

用 if 引导的名词性从句完成下列句子。

1. A: Are you going to need help moving furniture to your new apartment?

B: I don't know if i'm going to need help. Thanks for asking. I'll let you know.

2. A: Is chicken okay for dinner tonight?

B: I'm sorry. I couldn't hear you with the TV on.

A: I want to know _____ okay for dinner tonight.

3. A: Does the new teaching position include health insurance?

B: Oh, I'm sorry. Were you talking to me? I wasn't listening.

A: Yes. I'd like to know _____ health insurance.

4. A: Will there be a movie on this flight?

B: I'll ask the flight attendant. Excuse me, we're wondering _____ on this flight.

5. A: Does Greg have to come with us?

B: Shhh. Don't ask _____ with us. Of course he does.

He's your brother!

6. A: Do penguins ever get cold?

B: That's an interesting question. I don't know _____ cold.

7. A: Can I drive the car to the store, Dad?

B: Are you serious? Of course not! Why do you ask _____ the car to the store? You haven't passed your driver's test.

8. A: Has Nasser already left the party?

B: Sorry, it's so noisy here. I didn't catch that.

A: I need to know _____ the party.

◇ 练习 13 名词性从句(表 5-2, 14-2 和 14-4)

将下列疑问句改写成名词性从句。

1. Is Karen at home? Do you know if (whether) karen is at home?

2. Where did Karen go? Do you know where karen went?

3. How is Pat feeling today? I wonder _____ today.

4. Is Pat feeling better today? I wonder _____ better today.

5. Does the bus stop here? Do you know _____ here?

6. Where does the bus stop? I wonder _____

7. Why is Elena absent today? The teacher wants to know _____ today.

8. Is Elena going to be absent again tomorrow? I wonder _____ again tomorrow.

9. Should I buy that book? I wonder _____ that book.

10. Which book should I buy? I wonder _____

11. Are we going to have a test tomorrow? Let's ask the teacher _____ a test tomorrow.

12. Is there a Santa Claus? The little boy wants to know _____ a Santa Claus.



◇ 练习 14 名词性从句(表 14-2 和 14-4)

用所给动词的正确形式完成下列句子, 特别注意词尾-sl-es 的用法

1. Does it rain a lot here?

Could you tell me if it rains a lot here?

2. How hot does it get in the summer?

Could you tell me how hot it _____ in the summer?

3. What do people like to do here?

Could you tell me what people _____ to do here?

4. Does Bus #10 run on holidays?

Could you tell me if Bus #10 _____ on holidays?

5. Do the buses run on holidays?

Could you tell me if the buses _____ on holidays?

6. How long does it take to get to the city?

Could you tell me how long it _____ to get to the city?

7. What do people enjoy most about this area?

Could you tell me what people _____ most about this area?

8. Does it seem like an expensive place to live?

Could you tell me if it _____ like an expensive place to live?

◇ 练习 15 THAT 从句(表 14-5 和 14-6)

在适当地方添加 that, 作为名词性从句开始的标志。

1. I'm sorry that you won't be here for Joe's party.

2. I predict Jim and Sue will get married before the end of the year.

3. I'm surprised you sold your bicycle.

4. Are you certain Mr. McVay won't be here tomorrow?

5. Did you notice Marco shaved off his mustache?

6. John is pleased Claudio will be here for the meeting.

7. Anna was convinced I was angry with her, but I wasn't.

8. It's a fact the Nile River flows north.

9. A: Guido is delighted you can speak Italian.

B: I'm surprised he can understand my Italian. It's not very good.

10. A: How do you know it's going to be nice tomorrow?

B: I heard the weather report.

A: So? The weather report is often wrong, you know. I'm still worried it'll rain on our picnic.

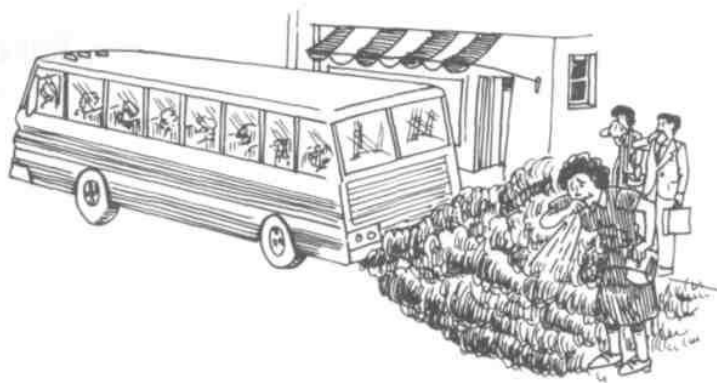
11. A: Mrs. Lane hopes we can go with her to the museum tomorrow.

B: I don't think I can go. I'm supposed to babysit my little brother tomorrow.

A: Oh, too bad. I wish you could join us.

12. A: Do you think technology benefits humankind?

B: Of course. Everyone knows modern inventions make our lives better. A: I'm not sure that's true. For example, cars and buses provide faster transportation, but they pollute our air. Air pollution can cause lung disease and other illnesses.



◇练习 16 THAT 从句(表 14-5 和 14-6)

用下表中的从句完成下列句子。

All people are equal.
 Flying in an airplane is safer than riding in a car.
 He always twirls his mustache when he's nervous.
 High school students in the United States don't study as hard as the students in my country do.
 A huge monster was chasing me.
 I should study tonight.
 I will get married someday.
 I will have a peanut butter sandwich.
 John "Cat Man" Smith stole Mrs. Adams' jewelry.
 More than half of the people in the world go hungry every day.
 People are pretty much the same everywhere.
 Plastic trash kills thousands of marine animals every year.

1. I'm hungry. I guess (that) i will have a peanut butter sandwich

2. I have a test tomorrow. I suppose _____, but I'd rather go to a movie.

3. Why are you afraid to fly in an airplane? Read this report. It proves

4. Right now I'm single. I can't predict my future exactly, but I assume

5. Last night I had a bad dream. In fact, it was a nightmare. I dreamed

6. The police are investigating the burglary. They don't have much evidence, but they suspect

7. My cousin feels that people in the United States are unfriendly, but I disagree with him. I've _____ discovered

8. I've learned many things about life in the United States since I came here. For example, _____ I've _____ learned

9. I always know when Paul is nervous. Have you ever noticed

10. I believe that it is wrong to judge another person on the basis of race, religion, or sex. I believe

11. World hunger is a serious problem. Do you realize

12. Don't throw that plastic bag into the sea! Don't you know

◇ 练习 17 THAT 从句(表 14-5 和 14-6)

用下面各句及括号中所给的动词完成名词性从句。

1. Smoking in public places should be prohibited. (feel / don't feel)
→ I feel (don't feel) that smoking in public places should be prohibited.
2. I'm living in this country. (regret / don't regret)
3. When will I die? (would like to know / wouldn't like to know)
4. There will be peace in the world soon. (doubt / don't doubt)
5. What was I like as a child? (remember/ can't remember)
6. Why does the world exist? (wonder / don't wonder)
7. Someone may make unwise decisions about my future. (am afraid / am not afraid)
8. What do I want to do with my life? (know / don't know)

◇ 练习 18 THAT 从句(表 14-6)

用括号中的词语和名词性从句为每个情景写出两个句子。

1. The Jensens celebrated the graduation of their granddaughter Alice from the university. After graduation, she was offered a good job in chemical research in a nearby town. (be pleased)
→ The Jensens are pleased that their granddaughter graduated from the university. They are pleased that she was offered a good job.
2. Po was asleep. Around one in the morning the smoke alarm in his apartment rang. He woke up and discovered that his apartment building was on fire. (be lucky)
3. Ming Soo didn't study for her math exam. Afterward, she thought she had failed, but got one of the highest grades in the class. Her teacher had known she would do well and praised her for earning such a high grade. (be surprised)
4. Karen lent her cousin Mark some money. She heard that he left town. He owed a lot of people money. She needs the money she gave her cousin. Her children need new shoes, but she can't afford to buy them. (be sorry)

◇ 练习 19 THAT 从句(表 14-7)

用 that 从句写出 so 的意思。

1. A: Does Alice have a car?
B: I don't think so. (= I don't think that Alice has a car .)
2. A: Is the library open on Sunday?
B : I believe so.(=I believe that the library is open on Sunday.)
3. A: Does Ann speak Spanish?
B: I don't think so. (=I don't think that Ann speaks Spanish.)
4. A: Did Alex pass his French course?
B: I think so. (= I think that Alex passed his French course.)
5. A: Is Mr. Kozari going to be at the meeting?
B: I hope so. (=I hope that Mr. Kozari will be at the meeting.)
6. A: Are the photos ready to be picked up at the photo shop?
B: I believe so. (= I believe that the photos are ready to be picked up at the photo shop.)

◇ 练习 20 直接引语(表 14-8)

下列每个句子都包含一个直接引语，给它们添加引号（“”）、逗号、句号和问号，必要时将单词的首字母大写。

Example: My roommate said the door is open could you close it

→ My roommate said, "The door is open. Could you close it?"

1. Alex said do you smell smoke
2. Something is burning he said



3. He said do you smell smoke something is burning
4. Do you smell smoke he said something is burning
5. Rachel said the game starts at seven
6. The game starts at seven we should leave here at six she said
7. She said the game starts at seven we should leave here at six can you be ready to leave then



◇练习 21 直接引语（表 14-8）

下列每个句子都包含一个直接引证，给它们添加引号（“”）、逗号、句号和问号，必要时将单词的首字母大写。

Example: Jack said please wait for me

→ Jack said, "Please wait for me."

1. Mrs. Hill said my children used to take the bus to school
2. She said we moved closer to the school
3. Now my children can walk to school Mrs. Hill said
4. Do you live near the school she asked
5. Yes, we live two blocks away I replied
6. How long have you lived here Mrs. Hill wanted to know
7. I said we've lived here for five years how long have you lived here
8. We've lived here for two years Mrs. Hill said how do you like living here
9. It's a nice community I said it's a good place to raise children

◇练习 22 直接引语(表 14-8)

给直接引语添加引号（“”）、逗号、句号和问号,必要时将单词的首字母大写。



"Why weren't you in class yesterday?" Mr. Garcia asked me.

I had to stay home and take care of my pet bird I said. He wasn't feeling well.

What? Did you miss class because of your pet bird Mr. Garcia demanded to know.

I replied yes, sir. That's correct. I couldn't leave him alone.

He looked so miserable.

Now I've heard every excuse in the world Mr. Garcia said.

Then he threw his arms in the air and walked away.

◇练习 23 直接引语(表 14-8)

给直接引语添加（“”）、逗号、句号和问号，必要时将单词的首字母大写。

One day my friend Laura and I were sitting in her apartment. We were having a cup of tea

together and talking about the terrible earthquake that had just occurred in Iran. Laura asked me, "Have you ever been in an earthquake?"

Yes, I have I replied.

Was it a big earthquake she asked.

I've been in several earthquakes, and they've all been small ones I answered. Have you ever been in an earthquake?

There was an earthquake in my village five years ago Laura said. I was in my house. Suddenly the ground started shaking. I grabbed my little brother and ran outside. Everything was moving. I was scared to death. And then suddenly it was over.

I'm glad you and your brother weren't hurt I said.

Yes, we were very lucky. Has everyone in the world felt an earthquake sometime in their lives Laura wondered. Do earthquakes occur everywhere on the earth?

Those are interesting questions I said but I don't know the answers.

◇练习 24 间接引语：改变代词 (表 14-8)

用正确的代词完成下列句子。

1. Mr. Lee said, "I'm not happy with my new assistant."

Mr. Lee said that he wasn't happy with his new assistant.

2. Tom said to his wife, "My parents invited us over for dinner next weekend."

Tom said that their parents had invited us over for dinner next weekend.

3. The little girl said, "I don't want to wear my raincoat outside."

The little girl said that she didn't want to wear her raincoat outside.

4. Jim said, "A policeman gave Anna and me tickets for jaywalking and told us to cross the street t the pedestrian crosswalk."

Jim said that a policeman had given Anna and me tickets for jaywalking and told us to cross the street at the pedestrian crosswalk.

5. The Johnsons said to me, "We will send you an e-mail when we arrive in Nepal."

The Johnsons said that they would send me an e-mail when arrived in Nepal.

6. Jane said, "I want my daughter to feel good about herself."

Jane said that she wanted her daughter to feel good about herself.

7. Mary and Jack said to me, "We are going to be out of town on the day of your party."

Mary and Jack said that they were going to be out of town on the day of party.

8. Bob said to us, "I will join you after I help my neighbors move some furniture."

Bob told us that he would join us after he helped neighbors move some furniture.

◇练习 25 间接引语：改变代词 (表 14-10)

用动词的正确形式完成下列句子。

1. Juan said, "I will meet you at the corner of 5th and Broadway."

Formal: Juan said (that) he would meet

Informal: Juan said (that) he will meet us at the corner of 5th and Broadway.

2. Maria said, "I'm going to be about 15 minutes late for work."

Formal: Maria said she was going to be

Informal: Maria said she is going to be about 15 minutes late for work.

3. Bob said, "My new car has a dent."

Formal: Bob said his new car has

Informal: Bob said his new car has a dent.

4. Phil said, "I need to borrow some money."

Formal: Phil said he needed to borrow

Informal: Phil said he needs to borrow some money.

5. Sandy said, "I have flown on an airplane only once."

Formal: Sandy said she has flown

Informal: Sandy said she has flown on an airplane only once.

6. Sami and Jun said, "We are planning a surprise party for Naoko."

Formal: Sami and Jun said they were planning

Informal: Sami and Jun said they are planning a surprise party for Naoko.

7. Naoko said, "I don't want any gifts for my birthday."

Formal: Naoko said she _____
Informal: Naoko said she _____ any gifts for her birthday.

8. Ms. Wall said, "I can babysit next weekend."

Formal: Ms. Wall said she _____
Informal: Ms. Wall said she _____ next weekend.

◇练习 26 间接引语(表 14-9 和 14-10)

用直接引语的反义句完成下列句子, 用正式的时态呼应。

1. A: I have a lot of time.
B: Oh? I misunderstood you. I heard you say (that) you didn't have a lot of time.
2. A: I found my credit cards.
B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say _____ your credit cards.
3. A: The Smiths canceled their party.
B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say _____ their party.
4. A: It will rain tomorrow.
B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say _____ tomorrow.
5. A: The Whites got a new dog.
B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say _____ a new dog.
6. A: Mei exercises every day.
B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say _____ every day.
7. A: My computer is working.
B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say _____.
8. A: Ali isn't coming on Friday.
B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say _____ on Friday.

◇练习 27 转述问题 (表 14-9→14-11)

将直接引语变为间接引语, 用正式的时态呼应。

1. Eric said to me, "How old are you?"
Eric asked me how old I was.
2. Ms. Rush said to Mr. Long, "Are you going to be at the meeting?"
→ Ms. Rush asked Mr. Long if he was going to be at the meeting.
3. Larry said to Ms. Ho, "Do you have time to help me?"
→ Larry asked Ms. Ho _____ time to help him.
4. Don said to Robert, "Did you change your mind about going to Reed College?"
→ Don asked Robert _____ mind about going to Reed College.
5. Igor said to me, "How long have you been a teacher?"
→ I got asked me _____ a teacher.
6. I said to Tina, "Can you speak Swahili?"
→ I asked Tina _____ Swahili.
7. Kathy said to Mr. May, "Will you be in your office around three?"
→ Kathy asked Mr. May _____ around three.
8. The teacher said to Ms. Chang, "Why are you laughing?"
→ The teacher asked Ms. Chang _____.
9. My uncle said to me, "Have you ever considered a career in business?"
→ My uncle asked me _____ a career in business.

◇练习 28 引述问题(表 14-8→14-11)

将间接引语变为直接引语, 注意使用引号。

1. Eric asked me if I had ever gone skydiving.
→ Eric said, "Have you ever gone skydiving?"
2. Chris wanted to know if I would be at the meeting.
→ Chris said,
3. Kate wondered whether I was going to quit my job.
→ Kate said,
4. Anna asked her friend where his car was.
→ Anna said,

5. Brian asked me what I had done after class yesterday.
→ Brian said,
6. Luigi asked me if I knew Italian.
→ Luigi said,
7. Debra wanted to know if I could guess what she had in her pocket.
→ Debra asked,
8. My boss wanted to know why I wasn't working at my desk.
→ My boss angrily asked me,

◇练习 29 转述问题(表 14-9→14-11)

看图并用名词性从句完成下列句子, 使用适当的稍后转述动词(不是立即引述)。



A new student, Mr. Sheko, joined an English class. The teacher asked the students to interview him.

Later, Mr. Sheko told his friend about the interview.

1. They asked me where I was from.
2. They asked me _____
3. They asked me _____
4. They asked me _____
5. They asked me _____
6. They asked me _____
7. They asked me _____
8. They asked me _____
9. They asked me _____

◇练习 30 间接引语(表 14-9→14-11)

完成间接引语, 注意使用正式的时态呼应。



1. David said to me, "I'm going to call you on Friday."
→ David said (that) he was going to call me on Friday.
2. John said to Ann, "I have to talk to you."
→ John told Ann to.
3. Diane said to me, "I can meet you after work."
→ Diane said after work.
4. Maria said to Bob, "I wrote you a note."
→ Maria told Bob a note.
5. I said to David, "I need your help to prepare for the exam."
→ a notel told David help to prepare for the exam.
6. Anna asked Mike, "When will I see you again?"
→ Anna asked Mike when again.
7. Mr. Fox said to me, "I'm going to meet Jack and you at the restaurant."

→Mr. Fox said _____ Jack and _____ at the restaurant.

8. Laura said to George, "What are you doing?"

→Laura asked George _____.

9. A strange man looked at me and said, "I'm sure I've met you before."

→A strange man looked at me and said _____ before. I was sure I'd never seen him before in my entire life.

◇练习 31 TELL 与 ASK 的比较(表 14-11)

用 said, told 或 asked 完成下列句子。

1. Ann _____ told _____ me that she was hungry.

2. Ann _____ said _____ that she was hungry.

3. Ann _____ me if I wanted to go out to lunch with her.

4. When the storm began, I _____ the children to come into the house.

5. When I talked to Mr. Grant, he _____ he would be at the meeting.

6. Ali _____ his friends that he had won a scholarship to college. His friends _____ they weren't surprised.

7. My supervisor _____ me if I could postpone my vacation. I _____ him what the reason was. He _____ that our sales department needed me for a project.

8. My neighbor and I had a disagreement. I _____ my neighbor that he was wrong. My neighbor _____ me that I was wrong.

9. Fumiko _____ the teacher that Fatima wasn't going to be in class. 10. Ellen _____ if I could join her for a movie. I _____ I wasn't feeling well, but I _____ her what movie she was going to. The next day, Ellen _____ me she had enjoyed the movie.

◇练习 32 间接引语(第十四章)

用 said, told, asked 或 replied 用将直接引语变为间接引语, 完成下列对话, 练习使用正式的时态呼应。

1. Bob said, "Where do you live?" Bob _____ asked me where I lived.

2. He said, "Do you live in the dorm?" He _____ in the dorm.

3. I said, "I have my own apartment." I _____ my own apartment.

4. He said, "I'm looking for a new apartment." He _____ for a new apartment.

5. He said, "I don't like living in the dorm." He _____ in the dorm.

6. I said, "Do you want to move in with me?" I _____

7. He said, "Where is your apartment?" He _____

8. I said, "I live on Seventh Avenue." I _____ on Seventh Avenue.

9. He said, "I can't move until the end of May." He _____ until the end of May.

10. He said, "I will cancel my dorm contract at the end of May." He _____ dorm contract at the end of May.

11. He said, "Is that okay?" He _____

12. I said, "I'm looking forward to having you _____ as a roommate." I _____ as a roommate.

◇练习 33 间接引语 (第十四章节)

选出所有正确的句子。

1. ___ The teacher asked are you finished?

✓ The teacher asked if I was finished.

___ The teacher asked if was I finished?

___ The teacher asked that I was finished?

✓ The teacher asked, "Are you finished?"

2. ___ Aki said he was finished.

___ Aki said that he was finished,

___ Aki replied that he was finished.

___ Aki answered that he was finished,

___ Aki said whether was he finished.

3. ___ Ann told Tom, she needed more time.

___ Ann told Tom she needed more time.

4. ___ Donna answered that she was ready.

___ Donna answered was she ready.

___ Donna replied she was ready.

___ Donna answered, "I am ready."

___ Donna answered if she was ready

5. ___ Mr. Wong wanted to know if Ted was coming.

___ Mr. Wong wanted to know is Ted coming?

___ Mr. Wong wondered if Ted was coming.

___ Mr. Wong wondered was Ted coming.

Ann told to Tom she needed more time.
Ann told she needed more time.
Ann said Tom she needed more time.
Ann said she needed more time.

Mr. Wong wondered, "Is Ted coming?"

◇ 练习 34 间接引语 (第十四章)

阅读对话完成下列句子。注意使用正式的时态呼应。

1. A: Oh no/ I forgot my briefcase/ What am I going to do?
B: I don't know.
→ When Bill got on the bus, he realized (that) he had forgotten his briefcase.
2. A: Where's your bicycle, Jimmy?
B: I sold it to a friend of mine.
A: You what?!
→ Yesterday I asked my fourteen-year-old son _____ He _____ it to a friend. I was flabbergasted.
3. A: The bus is supposed to be here in three minutes. Hurry up! I'm afraid we'll miss it.
B: I'm ready. Let's go.
→ I told my friend to hurry because I was afraid _____ the bus.
4. A: Can you swim?
B: Yes.
A: Thank heaven.
When the canoe tipped over, I asked my friend _____.
5. A: Do you want to go downtown?
B: I can't. I have to study.
→ When I asked Kathy _____ to go downtown, she said _____ because she _____.
6. A: Ow! My finger really hurts] I'm sure I broke it.
B: Let me see.
→ When Nancy fell down, she was sure _____ her finger.
7. A: Where's Jack? I'm surprised he isn't here.
B: He went to Chicago to visit his sister.
→ When I got to the party, I asked my friend where Jack _____
I was surprised _____ there. My friend told me _____ to Chicago to visit his sister.
8. A: Will you be home in time for dinner?
B: I'll be home around 5:30.
→ My wife asked me _____ home in time for dinner. I told her _____ home around 5:30.
9. A: Have you ever been to Mexico?
B: Yes, I have. Several times.
→ I asked George _____ ever _____ to Mexico. He said _____ there several times.
10. A: Where's my cane?
B: I don't know. Do you need it?
A: I want to walk to the mailbox.
B: I'll find it for you.
→ Grandfather asked me _____. I told him _____. Then I asked him it. He said _____ to the mailbox. I told him _____ for him.



◇ 练习 35 间接引语(表 14-9→14-11)

根据图画写出这些人说的话, 注意使用正式的时态呼应。

BEFORE SCHOOL IN THE MORNING



◇练习 36 错误分析（第十四章）

改错

1. Excuse me. May I ask if how old are you?
2. I wonder did rashed pick up something for dinner?
3. I'm unsure what does Lawrence do for a living.
4. Fernando said, "the best time for me to meet would be Thursday morning.
5. Eriko said to me was I coming to the graduation party. I say her that I wasn't.
6. I hope so that I will do well on my final exams.
7. Antonio asked his mother what does she want for her birthday?
8. I'm not sure if the price include sales tax.
9. My mother said to me that: "How many hours you spent on your homework?"
10. Pedro asked is that okay? (2 answers: direct and indirect speech)
11. Mika told she would going to stay home today.
12. I'd like to know how do you do that.
13. My parents knew what did Sam and I do.
14. Beth said she had working hard all week but now had some time off.
15. Is a fact that life always changes.

附录 1 动词短语

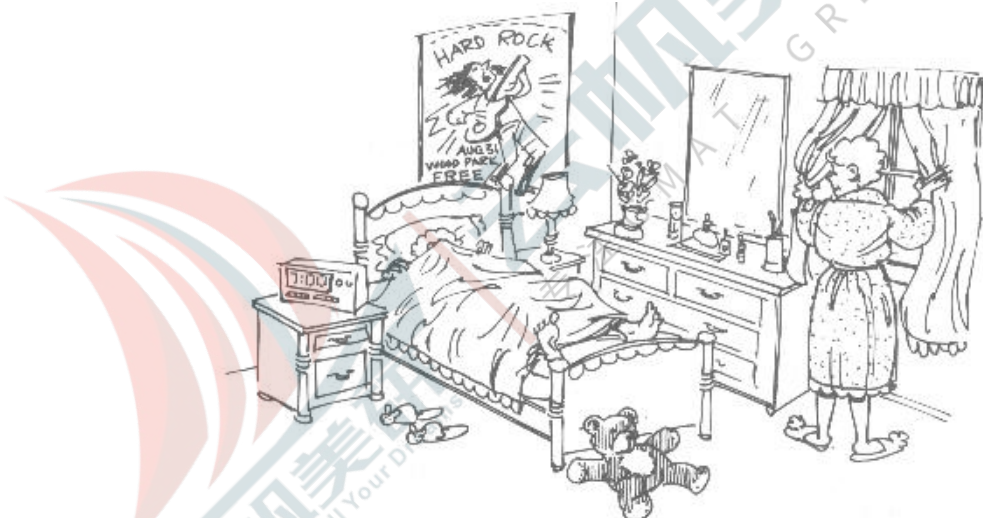
◇练习 1 可分的动词短语（A 组）

用下表中正确的小品词完成句子。

away	in	on	up
down	off	out	

1. I'd like to listen to some music. Would you please turn the radio ____ on.
2. My husband makes _____ bedtime stories for our children.
3. My arms hurt, so I put the baby _____ for a minute. But he started crying right away, so I picked him _____ again.

4. A: We need a plumber to fix our leaky water faucet. You need to call one today.
B: I will.
A: Don't put it
B: I won't. I'll call today. I promise.
5. A: Why are you wearing your new suit?
B: I just put it _____ to see what it looks like.
A: It looks fine. Take it _____ and hang it up before it gets wrinkled.
6. A: I found this notebook in the wastebasket. It's yours, isn't it?
B: Yes. I threw it _____ I don't need it anymore.
A: Okay. I thought maybe it had fallen in the wastebasket accidentally.
7. A: I need Jan's address again.
B: I gave you her address just yesterday."
A: I'm afraid I've lost it. Tell me again, and I'll write it
B: Just a minute. I have to look it _____ in my address book.
8. A: You'll never believe what happened in physics class today!
B: What happened?
A: We had a big test. When I first looked it over, I realized that I couldn't figure any of the answers. Our teacher had handed _____ the wrong test! We hadn't covered that material yet.
9. A: You're all wet!
B: I know. A passing truck went through a big puddle and splashed me.
A: You'd better take those clothes _____ and put _____ something clean and dry before you go to work.
10. A: Wake _____! It's seven o'clock? Rise and shine!
B: What are you doing!? Turn the light _____ and close the window curtain!
A: My goodness but we're grumpy this morning. Come on. It's time to get up, dear. You don't want to be late.



◇练习2 可分的动词短语 (A组)

选出所有可以完成下列句子的正确选项。

- Lisa took off her toys her socks her notebooks.
- Akiko turned off the TV the butter the stove
- Jonas put on his new shoes a fire the dishes.
- Benjamin made up a story a fairy tale an excuse.
- Susanna threw out some air some rotten food an old shirt.
- Antonio put off a doctor's appointment a meeting a trip.
- Max figured out a puzzle a math problem a riddle.
- Kyong handed in some candy a report some late homework.
- The secretary wrote down a message a pencil a phone number.
- The mail carrier put down a box the mail truck a sack of mail.
- I took off my coat my bicycle my wedding ring.
- Mustafa turned off the light the computer the car engine.

◇练习3 不可分的动词短语 (B 组)

用下表中正确的小品词完成下列句子。小品词可重复会用。

from	into	on	over
in	off	out of	

- A: Why are your pants so dirty?
B: I lost my balance when I got out of the car, and I fell in the mud.
- A: I was so embarrassed in class today.
B: What happened?
A: The teacher called me, and I didn't know the answer.
- A: The bus is coming. When do I pay?
B: Don't pay when you get on. Pay the driver when you go
- A: You look great! I thought you had the flu.
B: I did, but I got it very quickly.
- A: Why haven't we gotten a reply to our letter to the telephone company?
B: I don't know. I'll look it.
- A: Guess who I ran today?
B: Who?
A: Melanie Nelson, from high school. She's married now and has seven children.
- A: Mommy, where do butterflies come from?
B: Well, first they are caterpillars. Then, when the caterpillars become large, they turn into butterflies.
- A: Hurry! Get into the car. We've got to be at the train station in ten minutes.
B: OK. I'm ready. Let's go.
- A: I went downtown by mistake today.
B: How on earth did that happen?
A: I got on the wrong bus. It didn't stop until we were in the city.

◇练习4 不可分的动词短语 (B 组)

将 A 栏中的句子和 B 栏中的正确短语搭配完成下列句子。

Example: Annette speaks both French and English because she comes...

→ Annette speaks both French and English because she comes from Quebec.

A 栏

B 栏

- Annette speaks both French and English because she comes...
A. into your request for medical records.
- When Sylvia lost her job, it took her several weeks to get...
✓ B. from Quebec.
- Our office will need several days to look...
C. over the shock.
- When a plane lands, the first-class passengers get...
D. in a taxi and went to the airport.
- While I was walking in the mall, I ran ...
E. on unprepared students.
- When he left the hotel, David got...
F. into several friends from high school.
- Mrs. Riley, our math teacher, often calls...
G. off first.

◇练习5 可分的动词短语 (c 组)

用下表中正确的小品词完成下列句子。小品词可重复使用。

away	down	on	up
back	off	out	

- You still owe me the money I lent you. When are you going to pay me back?
- Turn down the radio! It's too loud! I can't hear myself think.
- Debra put out the fire in the wastebasket with a fire extinguisher.
- After I wash and dry the dishes, I put them away. I put them in the cupboard where they belong.
- Before you buy shoes, you should try them on to see if they fit.
- I can't hear the TV. Could you please turn it off? No, don't shut it off! I wanted you to

make it louder, not turn it off. I want to hear the news.

7. A: That's mine! Give it _____!

B: No, it's not. It's mine!

C: Now children, don't fight.

8. A: I don't hear anyone on the other end of the phone.

B: Just hang _____. It's probably a wrong number.

9. A: I hear that Tom asked you _____ for next Saturday night.

B: Yes, he did. He called me _____ a couple of hours ago and invited me to the symphony concert.

A: The concert's been called _____ because the musicians are on strike. Didn't you hear about it?

B: No, I didn't. I'd better call Tom _____ and ask him what he wants to do instead.

10. I don't mind if you look at these maps, but please put them _____ in the drawer when you're finished.

◇练习6 可分的动词短语 (A、B、C 组)

在必要的地方用所给的小品词完成下列句子。如果不需要，则写 X。

1. out a. Paulo asked out one of his classmates.

b. Paulo asked one of his classmates out

2. on a. The teacher called on Ted for the answer.

b. The teacher called Ted × for the answer.

3. into a. The police are looking _____ the murder, but need help from the public to solve it.

b. The police are looking the murder _____, but need help from the public to solve it.

4. into a. Khalifa ran _____ his cousin at the store.

b. Khalifa ran his cousin _____ at the store.

5. up a. Claire turned _____ the ringer on the phone.

b. Claire turned the ringer on the phone

6. away a. Dr. Benson threw _____ a valuable coin by mistake.

b. Dr. Benson threw a valuable coin _____ by mistake.

7. down a. Yumi's baby cries whenever she puts him

b. Yumi's baby cries whenever she puts _____ him.

8. up a. Would you please wake _____ me in one hour?

b. Would you please wake me _____ in one hour?

9. away a. You can leave the dishes. I'll put them _____ later.

b. You can leave the dishes. I'll put _____ them later.

10. up a. When Joan feels lonely, she calls _____ a friend and talks for a while.

b. When Joan feels lonely, she calls a friend _____ and talks for a while.

11. off a. The hill was so steep that I had to get _____ my bicycle and walk.

b. The hill was so steep that I had to get my bicycle _____ and walk.

12. from a. This fruit is very fresh. It came _____ my garden.

b. This fruit is very fresh. It came my garden _____.

◇练习7 可分的动词短语(D 组)

用下表中正确的小品词完成下列句子，小品词可能重复使用也可能用不到。

around	down	in	out	up
back	from	off	over	

1. When I finish writing on one side of the paper, I turn it over and write on the back.
2. When the teacher finds a mistake in our writing, she points it _____ so we can correct it.
3. When I write words in this practice, I am filling _____ the blanks.
4. When I discover new information, I find something _____.
5. When I need to see information from my computer on paper, I print it _____.
6. When buildings are old and dangerous, we tear them _____.
7. When I turn and go in the opposite direction, I turn _____.
8. When I remove a piece of paper from a spiral notebook, I tear the paper _____ of my notebook.
9. When I write something that I don't want anybody else to see, I tear the paper into tiny pieces. I tear _____ the paper.
10. When I write information on an application form, I fill the form _____.
11. When I make a mistake in something I write, I erase the mistake if I'm using a pencil. If I'm _____ using a pen, I cross the mistake _____ by drawing a line through it.
12. When my teacup is empty, I fill it _____ again if I'm still thirsty.
13. When I check my homework carefully before I give it to the teacher, I look it _____.

◇练习 8 可分和不可分的动词短语(A, B, C, D 组)

用斜体小品词完成句子, 小品词可能重复使用也可能用不到。

1. out, away, back, down, off, on

Carol . . .

- a. put off her vacation because she was sick.
- b. _____ put her boots to go out in the rain.
- c. put the phone _____ when she saw a spider crawling toward her.
- d. _____ put her things _____ in her suitcase after the customs

officer checked them.

- e. put _____ the stovetop fire with a small fire extinguisher.
- f. put _____ all the groceries she bought before she started dinner.

2. out,

in, up

James . . .

- a. handed _____ his financial report before the due date.

b. _____ handed _____ cigars when his son was born.

3. into, off, on, up, over,

out of

Linda . . .

a. got _____ the flu in three days and felt wonderful.

b. _____ got _____ the bus and walked home.

c. got _____ the bus and sat down behind the driver.

d. _____ got _____ a taxi to go to the airport.

e. got _____ the taxi, paid the driver, and left a nice tip.

4. in, down, up, out

a. This book has a few pages missing. The baby tore them _____.

b. Before I throw my credit card receipts away, I tear them _____. I don't

want anyone to read them.

c. The building across the street will be torn _____ to make room for a parking garage.

5. over, into, up

a. The neighbors asked the sheriff to look _____ a crime in their neighborhood.

b. The sheriff looked _____ a suspect's address on the computer.

c. The sheriff took the suspect's I.D., looked it _____, and decided it was fake.

6. off, down, up, back

a. I called Rita _____ several times, but got no answer. I'm a little worried.

b. The meeting was called _____ because the chairperson was sick.

c. Jack called and left a message. I'll call him _____ after dinner.

7. over, up, in, off, back

a. My ears are ringing! Please turn _____ the music.

b. It's cold, and I'm tired. Let's turn _____ and go home.

c. Could I turn _____ the TV? I can't hear the news.

d. Joe, the meat needs to be cooked on the other side. Would you turn it _____,

please?

8. in, out, up

a. _____ I forgot to fill a couple of blanks on the

I hope I passed.

b. _____ Can I take it
home and fill it _____ ?

I don't have much time now.

c. Jack carries a thermos bottle to work. He fills his cup when he gets thirsty.

◇练习9 可分的动问短语 (E 组)

用下表中正确的小品词完成句子, 小品词可能重复使用也可能用不到。

away back off on out over up

1. It's pretty chilly in here. You might want to leave your jacket on.

2. Mrs. Jefferson became a widow at a young age. She had to bring up six children by herself.

3. Give us a few hours. We'll work this problem out and let you know our solution.

4. Those are trick birthday candles. Every time you blow them out, they light again.

5. My roommate gives homeless people his old clothes. He tries to help them out as often as possible.

6. A: Robert has taken Diane out several times. They go to restaurants and movies, but he doesn't seem serious about her.

B: I know. Diane keeps trying to talk over their future, but he isn't interested in doing that.

7. A: It's hard to understand our company's policies. All the senior managers are getting large bonuses while the company is laying off people in every department.

B: I know. I need to think over whether I want to continue with this job.

8. A: What is your store's return policy?

B: You can bring clothes back within two weeks, and you need your receipt.

9. A: Are you going to meet with your supervisor this morning?

B: Yes. I'm going to try to bring up the idea of a raise.

10. A: What time are you coming home?



B: Around midnight.

A: OK. I'll leave some lights _____ .

11. A: We did something that will cheer you _____ .

B: What's that?

A: We cleaned _____ your yard and garden while you were in the hospital.

You'll

see as soon as we get there.

B: Thanks! What a wonderful

surprise.

◇练习 10 可分的动词短语 (E 组)

用下表中的动词短语完成下列句子。

blow out	cheer up	give away	take back	think over
bring up	clean up	/lay off	take out	work out

1. Michael is worried. His company is planning to _____ lay 20% of its workforce off _____, and he doesn't have much seniority.

2. If you decide these shoes won't work for you, you can _____ them within seven days.

3. That was so nice of you to water my plants while I was gone. I'd like to _____ you to dinner to thank you.

4. There are ten candles on this cake, Jenny. Can you _____ them all ?

5. Pauline has many clothes in her closet that she doesn't wear. Why doesn't she _____ them _____ ?

6. I have some news that will _____ you _____ . We're getting two _____ weeks additional vacation!

7. Let's set aside some time this weekend and finally _____ this place _____. This apartment is a mess.

8. The Smiths had a lot of arguments during the first year of their marriage, but I think they've finally _____ their differences _____. They seem pretty happy now.

9. Buying this house is a huge decision. We really need more time to _____ it _____ .

10. You'd better not _____ the subject of politics _____ with Ron. He becomes very upset when someone disagrees with his point of view.

◇练习 11 不及物的动词短语(F 组)

用下表中正确的小品词完成下列句子，小品词可能重复使用也可能用不到。

back	in	off	out	to
down	of	on	over	up

1. The plane shook a little when it took _____ off _____. It made me nervous.
2. Emily's parents are upset because she goes _____ with friends every night and doesn't seem to have enough time for her studies.
3. Ken grew _____ in a small town and isn't used to the fast pace of the city.
4. I'm afraid we can't hear you in the back of the room. Could you please speak _____ ?
5. The computer teacher was so confusing. I didn't learn a thing! I think I'll just start with a new teacher next term.
6. I'm exhausted. All week long I've been getting _____ between 4:00 and 5:00 A.M. for work.
7. A: Professor Wilson, do you have a minute?
B: Sure. Come _____ and sit _____.
8. A: I don't feel like cooking tonight.
B: Me neither. Let's eat _____.
9. A: Sorry I'm late. The bus broke _____ on the highway, and we had to wait for another.
B: No problem. The meeting just started.
10. A: Mrs. Taylor is in the hospital again.
B: What happened?
A: She fell _____ and broke her hip.
11. A: The children are all dressed _____. They look so nice.
B: Yes. They're having their school pictures taken today.
12. A: I'm really excited about Victoria and Nathan's wedding next month. They're such a great couple.
B: I'm afraid I have bad news. They broke _____ two days ago.
13. A: Ever since I gave _____ smoking, I want to eat all the time.
B: Try chewing gum. It helped me when I quit.
14. A: Look who just showed _____.

- B: Rover, what are you doing here? Dogs were not invited to this party!
15. A: Our new house will be finished April 1.
B: We can help you move _____ your old apartment.
A: That would be wonderful.
16. A: Where's Julia?
B: At the doctor's. She broke _____ in a rash last night, and she doesn't know what it is.
17. A: Don't stop now. Finish the story for us. Please!
B: Okay, children. I'll go _____ if you promise to listen quietly.
18. A: Buddy, if you get all ready for bed, you can stay _____ and watch your favorite cartoon.
B: O.K., Mom.
19. A: How was your dental appointment?
B: I tried to sit _____ and relax. Even though it didn't hurt, I was nervous the whole time.
20. A: I feel very dizzy. I think I stood _____ too fast.
B: Keep your head down and rest for a minute.
21. A: Someone keeps calling and hanging _____.
B: Call the phone company. They have a way for you to find out who it is.

◇练习 12 不及物的动词短语 (F 组)

用下表中正确的小品词完成下列句子, 小品词可以重复使用。

of	out	up
----	-----	----

1. Lazy Leo ...
- a. broke _____ up with his girlfriend because she didn't want to wash his clothes.
 - b. stayed _____ all night and didn't come home until morning.
 - c. showed _____ late for class without his homework.
 - d. goes _____ with friends to parties on school nights.
 - e. eats _____ at restaurants because he doesn't like to cook.
 - f. moved _____ his apartment without telling the manager.
2. Serious Sally ...
- a. goes to bed very early. She never stays _____ past 9:00.
 - b. gets _____ at 5:00 every morning.
 - c. speaks _____ in class when no one will answer.
 - d. dresses _____ for school.
 - e. never gives _____ when she gets frustrated.

f. grew _____ as an only child.

◇练习 13 三个词构成的动词短语(G 组)

用两个小品词完成下列句子。

1. When I cross a busy street, I'm careful. I look _____ out _____ for _____ cars and trucks.
2. Some friends visited me last night. I hadn't expected them. They just dropped _____
_____ me.
3. When I put my name on a list for a class, I sign _____ it.
4. If I like people and enjoy their company, that means that I get _____
_____ them.
5. My cousin never does anything useful. He just/00/5 _____ his friends all day, wasting time.
6. When somebody uses the last spoonful of sugar in the kitchen, we don't have any more sugar. That means we have run _____ sugar and need to go to the market.
7. I'm glad when I finish my homework. When I get _____ my homework, I can go out and play tennis or do whatever else I feel like doing.
8. In some places, it's important to be careful about pickpockets. There are places where tourists have to watch _____ pickpockets.
9. If you return from a trip, that means you get _____ a trip.
10. Sometimes students have to quit school because they need to get a job, fail their courses, or lose interest in their education. There are various reasons why students drop _____ school.
11. Maria was born and raised in Brazil. In other words, she grew _____ Brazil.

◇练习 14 三个词构成的动词短语(G 组)

用下表中词语的正确形式完成下列句子。

assignment	√gymnastics	class	paint	snakes
cord	Hawaii		rocks	their neighbors

1. Martin signed up for a _____ gymnastics class _____. It starts next week.
2. The Hansens get along well with _____. They even take vacations together.
3. I can't finish the living room walls because I've run out of _____.

4. The highway sign said to watch out for _____. They roll down the hills and sometimes hit cars.

5. As soon as I get through with this _____, we can go to lunch. I have just one more problem to figure out.

6. Don't fool around with that _____. You might get an electric shock.

7. You look very rested and relaxed. When did you get back from _____?

8. Look out for _____ on the path. They're not poisonous, but they might startle you.

◇练习 15 三个词构成的动词短语(H 组)

用两个小品词完成下列句子。

1. Before we consider buying a home in this area, we'd like to find _____ out _____ more about the schools.

2. The mountain climbers set _____ the summit at dawn and reached it by lunchtime.

3. A: Marty is 43 tomorrow, and she's decided to go _____ school.

B: Good for her! It's never too late.

4. A: What do teenagers like to do around here for fun?

B: Some like to hang _____ friends at the mall, but I wouldn't recommend it. The management doesn't approve.

5. A: Please keep Susie _____ the dog.

B: Is she afraid?

A: No, that's the problem. She'll try to kiss him.

6. A: I'm going grocery shopping. Do you want to come _____ me?

B: No, thanks. I've got too much to do. But wait a minute. I cut some coupons _____ the paper for you. Let me get them.

7. A: Let's invite the Tangs to come _____ our beach house on Saturday.

B: Good idea. I'll call them now.

8. A: We're going out for pizza at Little Italy. Do you want to come along?

B: Sure. I wasn't going to do anything except sit _____ my cat tonight!

9. A: Let's go _____ Brian's tonight.

B: Shall we call first or surprise him?

10. A: Why don't we get _____ Eriko next week?

B: Great! We can talk to her about our new plans for the company.

◇练习 16 三个词构成的动词短语(H 组)

从下表找出与下划线词语意思相同的词语完成下列句子。

along with	back to	out	out for	over	to
around	about	out of	out of	together with	

1. I'd like to get information about the company before I apply for a job there.

I'd like to find _____ out about _____ the company before I apply for a job there.

2. The two brothers left for the lake before sunrise. They wanted to be the first ones there.

The two brothers set _____ the lake before sunrise. They wanted to be the first ones to arrive.

3. After Maria had her first child, she took a year off before she returned to work.

After Maria had her first child, she took a year off before she went _____ work.

4. Jimmy really needs to find a job. He spends his days sitting at home doing nothing. Jimmy really needs to find a job. He spends his days sitting _____ at home.

5. Mark won't be home for dinner. He plans to join his co-workers for a party.

Mark won't be home for dinner. He plans to get _____ his co-workers for a party.

*

6. Who wants to accompany me to the doctor's?

Who will go _____ me to my doctor's appointment?

7. The dog was growling, so the dog catcher approached him very carefully.

The dog was growling, so the dog catcher went _____ him very carefully.

8. _____ Here's the article I told you about. I removed it from this morning's paper.

I cut it _____ this morning's paper.

◇练习 17 复习：动词短语（附录 1）

选出正确的小品词。

1. _____ Professor Brown always calls _____ the students who sit in the back of the class to answer.
(A) on B. off C. out D. back
2. _____ Tommy takes other children's toys and doesn't want to give them _____.
A. away B. back C. in D. to
3. _____ Laurie needs to wake her roommate _____ every morning because she sleeps through her alarm.
A. in B. on C. up D. over
4. _____ Bobby, let's take a few minutes and pick the toys in your room. They're all over the floor.
A. over B. on C. up D. away
5. _____ Not enough people signed up _____ the gardening class, so it had to be canceled.
A. for B. in C. into D. with
6. _____ This cold has lasted too long. I feel like I'll never get _____ it.
A. with B. over C. away D. back
7. _____ Aren't you going to try _____ these shoes before you buy them?
A. in B. on C. up D. of
8. _____ Keep away _____ the stove! It's still hot.
A. off B. from C. out D. of
9. We'll feel more confident about the success of our new business after we pay _____ our loan.
A. back B. up C. in D. together
10. Look how nice Jenny's bedroom looks! She spent all morning cleaning it _____.
A. over B. back C. up D. away
11. Steven had problems early in his career, but he seems to have worked them _____.
A. up B. over C. off D. out
12. Watch out _____ the cat. She might scratch you.
A. for B. in C. on D. of
13. The fire department recommends keeping a fire extinguisher in your house to put _____ fires.
A. off B. out C. back D. down
14. It took Tim only 20 minutes to figure _____ the entire crossword puzzle.
A. on B. in C. up D. out
15. Although Mrs. Warren had been very wealthy, the size of her estate was quite small when she died. She had given _____ most of her money to charities.
A. away B. in C. into D. from
16. I cut your picture out _____ the newspaper today. Did you know you were going to be in it?
A. in B. off C. of D. from
17. Even though Kimberly's been home from the hospital for a week, she doesn't want anyone to come _____ to her house. She's still quite weak.

- A. over B. about C. into D. from
18. This hike is pretty exhausting. I don't think I can go ___ any farther. I need to rest.
A. out B. in C. to D. on
19. There's a gas station. I'll wash the windows while you fill ___ the tank.
A. on B. in C. out D. up
20. A fight broke ___ among students after school. Fortunately, no one was injured.
A. out B. down C. in D. off
21. Sometimes when I recite a poem, I forget a line. So I go back to the beginning and start
A. over B. to C. with D. back
22. The school administrators have started new programs to prevent students from dropping out high school.
A. in B. off C. of D. for
23. Mr. Robinson is happy to lend his adult children money as long as they pay it
A. up B. back C. down D. for
24. My computer printer isn't working. I can't print ___ any of my work.
A. out B. in C. over D. back

附录 2 介词搭配

◇练习 1 介词搭配(A 组)

用介词完成下列句子:

- My eight-year-old son Mark is afraid of thunder and lightning.
- My mother really likes my friend Ahmed because he is always polite to her.
- Fifty miles is equal to eighty kilometers.
- A: How do I get to your house?
B: Are you familiar with the red barn on Coles Road? My house is just past that and on the left.
A: Oh, sure. I know where it is.
- It's so hot! I'm thirsty for a big glass of ice water.
- My boss was nice to me after I made that mistake, but I could tell she wasn't pleased.
- Mr. Watts is often angry about some silly little thing that isn't important.
- A: Harry, try some of this pasta. It's delicious.
B: No, thanks. My plate is already full of food.
- Four council members were absent from the meeting last night.
- A: Why are you friendly with Mr. Parsons? He's always so mean to everybody.
B: He's always been very kind to me, so I have no reason to treat him otherwise.
- My sister is very angry with me. She won't even speak to me.
- Is everybody ready for dinner? Let's eat before the food gets cold.
- Ben's wife got a promotion at work. He is really happy about her.

◇练习 2 介词搭配(A 组)

将 A 栏和 B 栏中的短语搭配成句子, 每个短语只能用一次。

A 栏

- Our dog is afraid of B
- The class is curious about
- Mr. White is angry with
- Several nurses have been absent from
- After gardening all day, Helen was thirsty for
- The workers are angry with
- The baseball coach was happy about
- The kitchen cupboard is full of
- I'm not ready for
- It's important to be kind to

B 栏

- about his team's win.
- ✓ B. of cats.
- for a glass of lemonade.
- for the start of school.
- from work due to illness.
- about the snake in the cage.
- to everyone.
- of canned foods.
- about their low pay.
- at his dog for chewing his slippers.

◇练习 3 介词搭配(B 组)

用介词完成下列句子。

1. What are you laughing at?
2. I can't stop staring at Tom's necktie. The colors are wild!
3. A: I don't believe in flying saucers. Do you?
B: I don't know. I think anything is possible.
4. Ted is going to help me with my homework tonight.
5. Do you mind if I apply for your job after you quit?
6. Kyong is excited about going back home to see her family. She leaves for Korea next Monday.
7. I admire Carmen for her courage and honesty in admitting that mistake.
8. A: Where did you get that new car?
B: I borrowed it from my neighbor.
9. A: What are you two arguing about?
B: Modern art.
10. A: Where will you go to school next year?
B: Well, I applied for admission at five different universities, but I'm worried that none of them will accept me.
11. I hate to argue with my older sister. I hardly ever win.
12. I'll introduce you to my cousins when they come to my wedding next week.
13. Ivan discussed his calculus problems with his college advisor.

◇练习4 介词搭配(B组)

选出正确的介词。

1. You're shivering. Would you like to borrow a jacket from me?
(A) from B. for C. with
2. I'm applying for a new management position in my company.
A. to B. in C. for
3. It's unfortunate that the Bakers are always arguing about something.
A. with B. about C. at
4. Russ believes in his ability to succeed under difficult conditions.
A. in B. on C. at
5. Poor Mr. Miller. No one laughed at his story even though it was supposed to be funny.
A. over B. at C. from
6. It's rather amazing. Gail and Briah plan to get married soon, but they were just introduced to each other a month ago.
A. to B. with C. at
7. Please wake me up at 5:00 A.M. tomorrow. I need to leave for work early.
A. from B. to C. for
8. People say they admire me for my truthfulness, but sometimes I wonder if I may be too honest.
A. about B. with C. for
9. It's very difficult to discuss serious matters with Mark. He always tries to make jokes.
A. with B. about C. at
10. I'm trying not to stare at that man, but his toupee keeps falling off.
A. at B. with C. to

◇练习5 介词搭配(C组)

用介词完成下列句子。

1. A: Why are you friendly with/to George? I thought you didn't like him.
B: I'm not crazy about his attitude, but I'm his supervisor, so I have to encourage him to do better work.
2. A: Do you think it's bad that I drink so much coffee every day?
B: I believe too much of almost anything is bad for you.
3. I don't know why they fired me. It certainly isn't clear to me.
4. A: Dad, I got ninety-five percent on my algebra exam
B: I'm proud of you. I knew you could do it.

5. A: You seem to be interested ___ aerobic exercise and jogging.
B: I think regular physical exercise is good ___ everyone.
6. That sweater is very similar ___ mine. Did you buy it at the mall?
7. A: You were up awfully late last night.
B: I couldn't sleep. I was hungry ___ something sweet, but I couldn't find anything in the kitchen.
8. I have no doubt that I'm doing the right thing. I'm sure ___ it.
9. George Gershwin, an American composer, is most famous ___ his Rhapsody in Blue, an orchestral piece that combines jazz with classical music.
10. A: Why is Gary avoiding you? Is he angry about something?
B: I don't know. I'm not aware ___ anything I did that would upset him.
11. A: Who is responsible ___ this dog? We don't allow dogs in this office!
B: He belongs to the boss's wife.
A: Oh.
12. My car is a lot like yours, but different ___ Margaret's.
13. Don't be nervous ___ your job interview. Just be yourself.
14. Teachers need to be patient ___ their students.
15. Ken carelessly dropped the football before he could score, so his team lost. He was very sad that.

◇练习6 介词搭配(A、C组)

用介词完成下列句子。

- Dr. Nelson, a heart specialist, is...
a. proud ___ her work.
b. famous ___ her medical expertise.
c. sure ___ her skills.
d. familiar ___ the latest techniques.
e. patient ___ her patients.
f. aware ___ the stresses of her job.
g. interested ___ her patients' lives.
h. nice ___ her patients' families.
- Her patient, Mrs. Green, is...
a. sad ___ her illness.
b. nervous ___ an upcoming surgery.
c. aware ___ her chances for survival.
d. full ___ hope.
e. not afraid ___ dying.
f. curious ___ alternative medicines.
g. ready ___ unexpected side-effects.
h. hungry ___ a home-cooked meal.

◇练习7 介词搭配(D组)

用介词完成下列句子。

- How much did you pay for that beautiful table?
- A: Did you talk ___ the manager ___ returning that dress?
B: No. She didn't arrive ___ the store while I was there. I waited ___ her for a half an hour and then left.
- I listened ___ you very carefully, but I didn't understand anything you said.
- When I graduated ___ college, my mother and father told everyone we knew that I had graduated.
- A: We don't have all day! How long is it going to take for someone to wait ___ us?
I'm hungry.
B: We just got here. Be patient. Do you have to complain ___ everything?
- When did you arrive ___ Mexico City?
- A: This sauce is delicious!
B: Well, it consists ___ tomatoes, garlic, olive oil, and lemon juice all blended together.
- There were ten people at the meeting and ten different opinions. No one agreed

- _____ anyone else _____ the best way to solve the club's financial problems.
9. I have to complain _____ the manager. Both the food and the service are terrible.
10. We've invited only family members _____ our wedding. I hope our friends aren't offended.
11. The soccer coaches disagree _____ one another _____ the best way to get their team mentally prepared for a game .

◇练习8 介词搭配 (B、D 组)

用括号中的动词和正确的介词完成下列句子。

- Margo got to the airport early so she wouldn't miss her flight.
(arrive) Margo arrived at the airport early so she wouldn't miss her flight.
- The store manager had time to help a few customers.
(wait) The store manager had time to _____ a few customers.
- Sigrid asked me to go to the symphony with her.
(invite) Sigrid _____ me _____ the symphony.
- Water is made of hydrogen and oxygen.
(consist) Water _____ hydrogen and oxygen.
- Sara stood at the bus stop for 20 minutes before the bus came.
(wait) Sara _____ the bus for 20 minutes.
- The restaurant owner discussed the management changes with her staff.
(talk) The restaurant owner _____ the management changes with her staff.
- Joseph is going to Athens for graduate work in archeology.
(leave) Joseph _____ Athens for graduate work in archeology.
- Why is that man continuing to look at me?
(stare) Why _____ that man _____ me?
- Barb assisted her friend with her finances.
(help) Barb _____ her friend _____ her finances.
- I checked ten books out of the library. I'll return them next week.
(borrow) I _____ ten books _____ the library.

◇练习9 介词搭配(E 组)

用介词完成下列句子。

- Molly is always looking for her keys. She seems so disorganized.
- Something's the matter _____ Dan. He's crying.
- Do whatever you want. It doesn't matter _____ me.
- Look _____ those clouds. It's going to rain.
- Are you looking forward _____ your trip to Mexico?
- A: Does this watch belong _____ you?
B: Yes. Where did you find it? I searched _____ it everywhere.
- I woke up frightened after I dreamed _____ falling off the roof of a building.
- Tomorrow I'm going to ask my father _____ a ride to school.
- Tomorrow I'm going to ask my father _____ his work. I don't know much his new job.
- Please empty that bowl of fruit and separate the fresh apples _____ the old apples.
- Mr. Sanchez looks a lot _____ a famous movie actor I've seen.
- My brother Ben warned me _____ taking a shortcut through the back streets. I got _____ lost and was late for a job interview.

◇练习10 介词搭配(E 组)

将 A 栏和 B 栏中的短语搭配成句子，每个短语只能用一次：

A 栏

- The sheriff is searching _____ G
- The baby keeps looking _____
- Once again, Rita is looking _____
- In this picture, Paula looks _____
- The Browns are looking forward _____
- Before you do the wash, you need to separate the darks _____
- Sometimes Joey is afraid to sleep. He often dreams _____

B 栏

- about monsters and dragons.
- to their 20th wedding anniversary.
- for her glasses. She always misplaces them.
- about housing prices in this area?
- about high winds on the bridge.
- with this car. It's making strange noises.
- ✓ G. for the escaped prisoner.
- from the whites.
- at the TV screen. The picture is fuzzy.

8. Something's the matter ____

J. like her maternal grandmother. The
resemblance is very strong. drivers

9. The sign on the highway warned

10. Do you know much ____

◇练习 11 介词搭配(F 组)

用介词完成下列句子。

1. Please don't argue. I insist on lending you the money for your vacation.
2. That thin coat you're wearing won't protect you. ____ the bitter, cold wind.
3. A: What's the matter? Don't you approve ____ my behavior?
B: No, I don't. I think you're rude.
4. A: Can I depend ____ you to pick up my mother at the airport tomorrow?
B: Of course you can!
5. A: The police arrested a thief in my uncle's store yesterday.
B: What's going to happen ____ him? Will he go to jail?
6. My friend Ken apologized ____ me ____ forgetting to pick me up in his car after the movie last night. I forgave him ____ leaving me outside the theater in the rain, but ____ I'm not going to rely him for transportation in the future.
7. A: Thank you ____ helping me move to my new apartment last weekend.
B: You're welcome.
8. It isn't fair to compare Mr. Wong ____ Ms. Chang. They're both good teachers, but they have different teaching methods.
9. I've had a bad cold for a week and just can't get rid ____ it.
10. Excuse me ____ interrupting you, but I have a call on the other line. Could I get back to you in a second?
11. A: I need to be excused ____ the office meeting tomorrow morning.
B: I was going to announce your promotion at the meeting. Can you change your plans?
A: I'd love to. It's a dental appointment.
12. People don't die ____ embarrassment, but sometimes they wish they could.
13. I'm sorry. The office staff is very busy right now. It will be a half hour before someone can take care ____ your request.

◇练习 12 介词搭配(F 组)

在正确的句子旁写 C, 在不正确的句子旁写 X, 每组的两个句子可能都正确:

1. a. C John needs to be excused from the meeting.
b. C John excused his associate for the accounting error.
2. a. C Do you approve of your government's international policies?
b. X Do you approve on the new seat-belt law?
3. a. ____ I apologized for the car accident.
b. ____ I apologized to Mary's parents.
4. a. ____ Why did you get rid over your truck? It was in great condition.
b. ____ I got rid of several boxes of old magazines.
5. a. ____ Pierre died of a heart attack.
b. ____ Pierre's father also died from heart problems.
6. a. ____ It's not a good idea to compare one student to another.
b. ____ I wish my parents wouldn't compare me with my brother.
7. a. ____ We can rely on Lesley to keep a secret.
b. ____ There are several people whom my elderly parents rely in for assistance.
8. a. ____ You can relax. T took care about your problem.
b. ____ The nurses take wonderful care of their patients at Valley Hospital.

◇练习 13 介词搭配 (G 组)

用介词完成下列句子。

1. Please try to concentrate on my explanation. I can't repeat it.
2. I spoke ____ my brother ____ your problem, and he said that there was nothing he could do to help you.
3. All right, children, here is your math problem: add ten ____ twelve, subtract two ____ that

- total; divide ten ____ that answer; and multiply the result ____ five. What is the final answer?*
4. I feel pretty good about my final examination in English. I'm hoping ____ a good grade.
5. A: Did you hear ____ the plans to build a new hotel in the middle of town? It's wonderful!
- B: Yes, I heard, but T disagree ____ you. I think it's terrible! It means the town will be full of tourists all the time.
6. A: Have you heard ____ your friend in Thailand recently?
- B: Yes. She's having a difficult time. She's not accustomed ____ hot weather.
7. A: I must tell you ____ a crazy thing that happened last night. Have you heard?
- B: What? What happened?
- A: A hundred monkeys escaped ____ the zoo.
- B: You've got to be kidding! How did that happen?
8. A: Do you ever wonder ____ the future of our natural environment?
- B: Yes, especially when I read about the deforestation of the rainforests.
9. A: Is Carol hiding ____ me? Is she afraid of me?
- B: No, but since she turned two years old, she loves to play hide-and-seek. She hides everyone now.
10. A: Can I tell you ____ the new preschool later? Someone's at the door.
- B: Sure.



◇练习 14 介词搭配 (G 组)

用括号中的动词和正确的介词完成下列句子。

1. The skiers **wanted** snow for the holiday weekend, but it rained instead. (hope)
The skiers hoped for _____ snow for the holiday weekend.
2. Jenny often **thinks about** people she went to high school with. She's curious about what happened to them.
(wonder) Jenny often _____ people she went to high school with.
3. I **cut** the pie **into** eight equal pieces.
(divide) I _____ the pie _____ eight equal pieces.

4. Could you **put** another egg **in** the mixture? It's a little dry.

(add) Could you _____ another egg _____ the mixture? It's a little dry.

5. An artist **focuses on** the way light strikes his subject.

(concentrate) An artist _____ the way light strikes his subject.

6. The prisoners **got away from** their guards and ran into the woods.

(escape) The prisoners _____ their guards and ran into the woods.

7. **I am used to** humid weather in the summer.

(accustom) I _____ humid weather in the summer.

8. Ben **got the news about** his father's death from his secretary.

(hear) Ben _____ the news _____ his father's death from his secretary.

◇练习 15 复习：介词搭配(附录 2)

选出句中正确的介词，两个介词可能都正确。

1. The taxi driver apologized (to) for Ann for the accident.

2. My mother died (from, of) cancer.

3. Jack was excused from, for school for several days so he could travel with his father.

4. Mary always compares her country with, to this country.

5. Susie dreamed of, about winning the lottery.

6. The mountain climbers were warned of, about the avalanche danger.

7. Maria needed ten dollars immediately. She asked her sister about, for some money.

8. Beth looks like, for her sister. They could almost be twins.

9. Dennis tried talking to, about Roman, but the noise in the restaurant was so loud that neither he nor Roman could hear each other.

10. This dish tastes like it has meat in it, but it consists only in, of vegetables.

11. Mary and Joe argue about, with everything. They always disagree with, about each other.

12. Are you sure of, about your data?

13. Our dentist is very patient to, with children.

14. Professor Case always seems angry at, with his students, but maybe he's upset about something else.

15. We discussed our house plans with, about several architects.
16. The apartment owner spoke to, with several tenants about a possible rent increase.
17. We heard about ,from the plane crash on the radio.
18. If you multiply any number from, by zero, the answer is always zero.
19. Shhh! I'm concentrating in, on my homework.

◇练习 16 复习：介词搭配(附录 2)

选出正确的介词。

1. What time do you need to be ready _____ work?
A. at B. about C. on (6) for
2. One pound is equal _____ 2.2 kilos.
A. for B. to C. in D. on
3. Too many vitamins may be bad _____ your health.
A. in B. about C. for D. with
4. That box looks very heavy. Can I help you _____ it?
A. with B. in C. about D. on
5. Our cat got rid _____ all the mice in our basement.
A. about B. of C. in D. off
6. Everyone admires Mr. Kim _____ his generosity with his time and money.
A. for B. from C. with D. about
7. I need to hide this chocolate _____ the children or they will eat it in one day.
A. with B. from C. to D. at
8. Billy, stop that! It's not polite to stare _____ people.
A. to B. at C. in D. on
9. Angela has applied _____ several jobs in the airline industry, but she hasn't gotten an interview yet.
A. to B. with C. of D. for
10. This car can't belong _____ Mike. It's too nice!
A. about B. with C. to D. at
11. Monica loves vegetables, but she's not crazy _____ fruit.
A. over B. of C. at D. about

12. Jack paid ____ my dinner.

- A. with B. for C. on D. in

13. I tried to tell Jessica ____ my trip, but she didn't seem interested. I wonder if she was jealous.

- A. to B. about C. with D. off

14. We're really happy ____ Professor James. He just received an award for excellence in teaching.

- A. for B. to C. over D. in

15. People say I shouldn't care what other students think, but their opinions matter _____ me.

- A. to B. for C. with D. on

16. Annie eats vegetables only if they are separated _____ the other foods on her plate.

- A. between B. from C. with D. to

17. Kristi forgave her twin sister _____ taking her cell phone without asking.

- A. about B. from C. for D. with

18. Doctors say that even ten minutes of exercise a day is good _____ you.

- A. at B. for C. with D. about

19. I'm sorry. Your explanation still isn't clear _____ me.

- A. about B. with C. to D. in

20. My sister complained ____ the manager.

- A. to B. with C. at D. for

21. She complained ____ the slow service in the restaurant.

- A. for B. about C. over D. by

22. What happened ____ your hand? It's swollen.

- A. on B. to C. in D. about

23. The problem with your answer is that you multiplied six ____ eight instead of subtracting it.

- A. by B. from C. to D. over

24. Paul is so smart. He graduated _____ the university in just three years.

- A. of B. at C. from D. to

练习答案

To the student: To make it easy to correct your answers, remove this answer key along the perforations and make a separate answer key booklet for yourself.

◇练习 1, p. 1.

A: Hi. My name is Kunio.

B: Hi. My name is Maria. I 'm glad to meet you.

KUNIO: I am glad to meet you, too. Where are you from ?

MARIA: I am from Mexico. Where are you from ?

KUNIO: I am from Japan.

MARIA: Where are you living now?

KUNIO: On Fifth Avenue in an apartment. And you?

MARIA: I am living in a dorm.

KUNIO: What are you studying?

MARIA: Business. After I study English, I am going to attend the School of Business Administration. How about you? What is your major?

KUNIO: Engineering.

MARIA: What do you like to do in your free time?

KUNIO: I read a lot. How about you?

MARIA: I like to get on the Internet.

KUNIO: Really? What do you do when you're online?

MARIA: I visit many different Web sites. It is a good way to practice my English.

KUNIO: That's interesting. I like to get on the Internet, too.

MARIA: I have to write your full name on the board when I introduce you to the class. How do you spell your name?

KUNIO: My first name is Kunio. K-U-N-I-O. My family name is Akiwa.

MARIA: Kunio Akiwa. Is that right?

KUNIO: Yes, it is. And what is your name again?

MARIA: My first name is Maria. M-A-R-I-A. My last name is Lopez.

KUNIO: Thanks. It's been nice talking to you.

MARIA: I enjoyed it, too.

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| 1. am sitting | 6. sit ... am sitting |
| 2. am reading | 7. read ... am reading |
| 3. am looking | 8. look ... am looking |
| 4. am writing | 9. write ... am writing |
| 5. am doing | 10. do ...am doing |

◇练习 3, p.2.

I.

1. speak
2. speak
3. speaks
4. speak
5. speaks

III.

11. Do you speak
12. Do they speak
13. Does he speak
14. Do we speak
15. Does she speak

II.

6. do not (don't) speak
7. do not (don't) speak
8. does not (doesn't) speak
9. do not (don't) speak
10. does not (doesn't) speak

I.

1. am speaking
2. are speaking
3. is speaking
4. are speaking
5. is speaking

III.

11. Are you speaking
12. Is he speaking
13. Are they speaking
14. Are we speaking
15. Is she speaking

II.

6. am not speaking
7. are not speaking
8. is not speaking
9. are not speaking
10. is not speaking

◇练习 s, p.3.

- | | |
|------------|----------|
| 1. Is he | 6. Is he |
| 2. Does he | 7. Is he |

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 3. Does he | 8. Does he |
| 4. Is he | 9. Does he |
| 5. Does he | 10. Is he |

◇练习 6, p.4.

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. Is she | 6. Does she |
| 2. Does she | 7. Is she |
| 3. Is she | 8. Is she |
| 4. Is she | 9. Does she |
| 5. Does she | 10. Is she |

◇练习 7, p.4.

- | | |
|-----------|----------------------|
| 1. does | 7. do |
| 2. Do | 8. Φ ... Φ |
| 3. Φ | 9. does |
| 4. Does | 10. Φ |
| 5. Φ | 11. Do |
| 6. Φ | |

◇练习 8, p.5.

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1. is | 7. Φ | 13. am |
| 2. are | 8. is | 14. are |
| 3. is | 9. Are | 15. Φ |
| 4. Is | 10. Do | 16. am |
| 5. does | 11. Φ | 17. Do |
| 6. Φ | 12. are | |

◇练习 9, p.5.

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. Φ | 5. Are | 9. Φ |
| 2. Do | 6. are | 10. is |
| 3. Does | 7. Φ | 11. Do |
| 4. Is | 8. are | |

◇练习 10, p.6.

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------------------|
| 1. is | 7. Φ | 13. is |
| 2. are | 8. do | 14. Φ ... Φ |
| 3. Φ | 9. Φ | 15. is |
| 4. Does | 10. does | 16. Φ ... are |

- | | | |
|-------|----------|----------|
| 5. do | 11. does | 17. Do |
| 6. Φ | 12. Φ | 18. Does |

◇练习 11, p. 7.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. usually ... Φ | 7. sometimes ... Φ |
| 2. Φ ... usually | 8. never ... Φ |
| 3. always ... Φ | 9. Φ ... never |
| 4. Φ ... always | 10. Φ ... usually ... Φ |
| 5. usually ... Φ | 11. Φ ... always ... Φ |
| 6. Φ ... always | 12. Φ ... always |
-
- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a. usually doesn't come | 2. a. usually isn't |
| b. doesn't ever come | b. is rarely |
| c. seldom comes | c. isn't always |
| d. sometimes comes | d. frequently isn't |
| e. always comes | e. is never |
| f. occasionally comes | f. isn't ever |
| g. never comes | g. is seldom |
| h. hardly ever comes | |

◇练习 13, p.8.

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. always wakes | 5. seldom surfs |
| 2. sometimes skips | 6. usually talks |
| 3. frequently visits | 7. rarely does |
| 4. is usually | 8. is never |

◇练习 14, p.8.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. often OR usually | 7. seldom OR rarely |
| 2. seldom OR rarely | 8. seldom OR rarely |
| 3. always | 9. never |
| 4. often OR usually | 10. always |
| 5. sometimes | 11. often OR usually |
| 6. usually | 12. seldom |

◇练习 15, p.9.

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. always chooses | 7. often OR usually gets |
| 2. seldom OR rarely go | 8. sometimes gets |
| 3. sometimes ride | 9. seldom OR rarely finishes |
| 4. seldom OR rarely | 10. never play exercises |

11. usually arrives

5. never eat

12. always take

6. is always

◇练习 16, p.10.

1. likes

11. Φ

2. watches

12. Does ...Φ

3. doesn't...Φ

13. doesn't

4. Φ

14. carries

5. Φ... Φ

15. plays

6. Does ... Φ

16. lives

7. likes

17. Φ

8. washes

18. visits

9. goes

19. catches

10. gets

20. Φ

◇练习 17, p. 11.

Sam leaves his apartment at 8:00 every morning. He walks to the bus stop and catches the 8:10 bus. It takes him downtown. Then he transfers to another bus, and it takes him to his part-time job. He arrives at work at 8:50. He stays until 1:00, and then he leaves for school. He attends classes until 5:00. He usually studies in the library and tries to finish his homework. Then he goes home around 8:00. He has a long day.

◇练习 18, p. 11.

/s/

/z/

/əz/

cooks

stays

promises

invites

seems

watches

hates

travels

misses

picks

draws

introduces

◇练习 19, p. 12.

1. /z/

6. /z/

11. / ə z/

2. /s/

7. / ə z/

12. /z/

3. / ə z/

8. /s/

13. /s/

4. /z/

9. /z/

14. /z/

5. /z/

10. / ə z/

15. /s/

◇练习 20, p. 12.

单数第三人称	进行时
1. buys	is buying
2. comes	is coming
3. opens	is opening
4. begins	is beginning
5. stops	is stopping
6. dies	is dying
7. rains	is raining
8. dreams	is dreaming
9. eats	is eating
10. enjoys	is enjoying
11. writes	is writing
12. tries	is trying
13. stays	is staying
14. hopes	is hoping
15. studies	is studying
16. lies	is lying
17. flies	is flying
18. sits	is sitting

◇练习 21, p.12.

- | | | |
|------|------|-------|
| 1. a | 5. a | 9. b |
| 2. a | 6. a | 10. b |
| 3. a | 7. b | 11. b |
| 4. b | 8. a | 12. a |

◇练习 22, p.13.

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. is snowing | 8. is looking ... sees |
| 2. takes | 9. sings |
| 3. drive | 10. bite |
| 4. am watching | 11. writes |
| 5. prefer | 12. understand |
| 6. need | 13. belongs |
| 7. are playing | 14. is shining ... is raining |

◇练习 23, p.14.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. usually doesn't take | 9. is hugging |
| 2. needs | 10. are playing |

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| 3. is enjoying | 11. is waving |
| 4. are | 12. is walking |
| 5. are eating | 13. (is) entertaining |
| 6. are drinking | 14. is smiling |
| 7. (are) reading | 15. usually takes |
| 8. is working | 16. is |

◇练习 24, p.15.

1. My friend doesn't speak English well.
2. I don't believe you.
3. My sister's dog doesn't bark.
4. Our teacher always starts class on time.
5. Look! The cat is getting up on the counter.
6. Does Marie have enough money?
7. We don't like this rainy weather.
8. Mrs. Gray is worrying about her daughter. OR Mrs. Gray worries about her daughter.
9. My brother doesn't have enough free time.
10. Does Jim drive to school every day?
11. He always hurries in the morning. He doesn't want to be late.
12. Anna usually has dinner at eight.

◇练习 25, p.15.

1. A: Are
B: I am OR I'm not
2. A: Do
B: they do OR they don't
3. A: Do
B: I do OR I don't
4. A: Does
B: she does OR she doesn't
5. A: Are
B: they are OR they aren't
6. A: Do
B: they do OR they don't
7. A: Is
B: he is OR he isn't

8. A: Are

B: I am OR I'm not

9. A: Is

B: it is OR it isn't

10. A: Do

B: we do OR we don't

◇练习 26, p.16.

1. A: are you doing

B: am watching ... want

A: enjoy ... go ... is ... run

B: are making

2. A: Do you read

B: do ... read ... subscribe ... always look

3. am I studying ... do I want ... need

4. A: am leaving, ... Do you want

B: am waiting

5. B: Is the baby sleeping

A: is taking

B: don't want

6. goes ... likes ... is preparing

7. is ... is blowing ... are falling

8. eats ... don't eat ... do you eat

9. A: Do you shop

B: don't ... usually shop

A: are you shopping

B: am trying

10. lose ... rest ... grow ... keep ... stay ... don't grow ... don't have ... is ... grow

第二章 过去时

练习 1, P.18.

1. walked ... yesterday

2. talked ... last

3. opened ... yesterday

4. went ... last

5. met ... last

6. Yesterday ... made ... took

7. paid ... last
8. Yesterday ... fell
9. left ... last

◇练习 2, p. 19.

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. started | 11. fell | 21. took |
| 2. went | 12. heard | 22. paid |
| 3. saw | 13. sang | 23. left |
| 4. stood | 14. explored | 24. wore |
| 5. arrived | 15. asked | 25. opened |
| 6. won | 16. brought | 26. decided |
| 7. had | 17. broke | 27. planned |
| 8. made | 18. ate | 28. wrote |
| 9. finished | 19. watched | 29. taught |
| 10. felt | 20. built | 30. held |

◇练习 3, p.19.

1. A: Did you answer
B: I did. I answered OR I didn't. I didn't answer
2. A: Did he see
B: he did. He saw OR he didn't. He didn't see
3. A: Did they watch
B: they did. They watched OR they didn't. They didn't watch
4. A: Did you understand
B: I did. I understood OR I didn't. I didn't understand
5. A: Were you
B: I was. I was OR I wasn't. I wasn't

◇练习 4, p.20.

1. didn't fly ... walked/took the bus
2. aren't ... are sour
3. didn't walk ... walked on the moon
4. wasn't a baby ... was (number of years old)
5. didn't come ... came
6. doesn't come ... comes from coffee beans
7. didn't sleep ... slept inside
8. isn't ... is cold
9. didn't disappear ... disappeared millions of years

练习 5, P.21.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Did he study | 5. Were they hungry |
| 2. Was he sick | 6. Did you go |
| 3. Was she sad | 7. Did she understand |
| 4. Did they eat | 8. Did he forget |

练习 6, P.21.

- | | |
|---------|--------|
| 1. Did | 5. Was |
| 2. Were | 6. Did |
| 3. Did | 7. Was |
| 4. Did | 8. Did |

◇练习 7, p.22.

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 1. shook | 5. held | 9. thought |
| 2. stayed | 6. fought | 10. called |
| 3. swam | 7. taught | 11. rode |
| 4. jumped | 8. froze | 12. sold |

练习 9, P.23.

- | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. /t/ | 8. /t/ | 15. /t/ |
| 2. /d/ | 9. /d/ | 16. /d/ |
| 3. /ad/ | 10. /ad/ | 17. /t/ |
| 4. /d/ | 11. /d/ | 18. /ad/ |
| 5. /ad/ | 12. /t/ | 19. /d/ |
| 6. /ad/ | 13. /t/ | 20. /t/ |
| 7. /d/ | 14. /3d/ | |

◇练习 10, p.23.

- | | |
|------------|------|
| 1. walked | /t/ |
| 2. patted | /ad/ |
| 3. worried | /d/ |
| 4. stayed | /d/ |
| 5. visited | /ad/ |
| 6. died | /d/ |
| 7. traded | /ad/ |
| 8. planned | /d/ |
| 9. opened | /d/ |

- 10. hurried /d/
- 11. rented /ad/
- 12. tried /d/
- 13. enjoyed /d/
- 14. stopped /t/
- 15. needed /ad/

◇练习 12 p.24.

是否

双写辅音字母 -ING		-ED
no	exciting	excited
no	existing	existed
no	shouting	shouted
yes	patting	patted
no	visiting	visited
yes	admitting	admitted
no	praying	prayed
no	prying	pried
no	tying	tied

◇练习 13, p.25.

双写辅音字母 -E	直接加-ING
hitting	coming learning
cutting	taking listening
hopping	hoping raining
beginning	smiling staying
winning	writing studying

◇练习 14, p.25.

-ING	-ED
1. riding	(ridden)
2. starting	started
3. coming	(came)
4. happening	happened
5. trying	tried
6. buying	(bought)
7. hoping	hoped

8. keeping	(kept)
9. tipping	tipped
10. failing	failed
11. filling	filled
12. feeling	(felt)
13. dining	dined
14. meaning	(meant)
15. winning	(won)
16. learning	learned
17. listening	listened
18. beginning	(began)

◇练习 15, p.26.

-ing 一般式

1. waiting	wait
2. petting	pet
3. biting	bite
4. sitting	sit
5. writing	write
6. fighting	fight
7. waiting	wait
8. getting	get
9. starting	start
10. permitting	permit
11. lifting	lift
12. eating	eat

-ing 一般式

13. tasting	taste
14. cutting	cut
15. meeting	meet
16. visiting	visit

◇练习 16, p.27.

I.	IV.
bought	broke
brought	wrote
taught	froze

caught rode
fought sold
thought stole
found

V.

II. hit
swam hurt
drank read
sang shut
rang cost

put

III. quit

blew

drew

flew

grew

knew

threw

VI.

paid

said

◇练习 17, p.28.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| 1. drank/had | 11. ran |
| 2. ate | 12. led |
| 3. began ... shut | 13. paid |
| 4. rang | 14. froze |
| 5. came | 15. did |
| 6. built | 16. rose |
| 7. fell ... hurt | 17. thought |
| 8. stole/took | 18. wrote |
| 9. shut | 19. kept |
| 20. built | |
| 10. drove | |

◇练习 18, p.29.

- | | |
|----------|--------------------|
| 1. spoke | 11. gave ... spoke |
| 2. dug | 12. grew |
| 3. chose | 13. forgot |
| 4. lost | 14. bought/read |

- | | |
|------------|--------------------|
| 5. quit | 15. shook |
| 6. slept | 16. stole |
| 7. found | 17. felt |
| 8. cut | 18. drew |
| 9. met | 19. heard |
| 10. taught | 20. fell ... broke |

◇练习 19, p.30.

疑问句

否定句

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. Did I ride | I didn't ride |
| 2. Did she sit | She didn't sit |
| 3. Were we | We weren't |
| 4. Did they try | They didn't try |
| 5. Was he | He wasn't |
| 6. Did they cut | They didn't cut |
| 7. Did she throw | She didn't throw |
| 8. Did we do | We didn't do |

◇练习 20, p.31.

1. What did you do last night?
2. What is your friend's name?
3. Is he nice?
4. How was your evening?
5. Where did you go?
6. Did you enjoy it?
7. Was the music loud?
8. What time did you get home?
9. What did you wear?
10. What is he like?
11. What does he look like?
12. Do you want to go out with him again?

◇练习 21, p.32.

- | everyday | now | yesterday |
|----------|-------------|-----------|
| 1. is | is | was |
| 2. think | am thinking | thought |
| 3. play | are playing | played |
| 4. drink | am drinking | drank |

5. teaches	is teaching	taught
6. swims	is swimming	swam
7. sleep	are sleeping	slept
8. reads	is reading	read
9. try	are trying	tried
10. eat	are eating	ate

◇练习 22, p.32.

1. A: Did you hear
B: didn't ... didn't hear ... was
2. A: Do you hear
B: don't ... don't hear
3. A: Did you build
B: didn't ... built
4. A: Is a fish
B: it is
A: Are they
B: they are ... don't know
5. A: want ... Do you want
B: have ... bought ... don't need
6. offer ... is ... offered ... didn't accept
7. took ... found ... didn't know ... isn't ... didn't want ... went ... made ... heated ... seemed ... am not
8. likes ... worry ... is ... trust ... graduated ... went ... didn't travel ... rented ... rode ... was ... worried ... were ... saw ... knew

◇练习 23, p.34.

1. were hiding
2. were singing
3. was watching
4. were talking
5. were reading ... were sitting ... (were) looking

◇练习 24, p.34.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. was playing ... broke | 6. picked up ... was hiking |
| 2. scored ... was playing | 7. tripped ... fell ... was dancing |
| 3. hurt ... was playing | |
| 4. was hiking ... found | 8. was dancing ... met |

5. saw ... was hiking

9. was dancing ... got

◇练习 25, p.35.

1. began ... were walking

2. was washing ... dropped ... broke

3. saw ... was eating ... (was) talking ... joined

4. was walking ... fell ... hit

5. was singing ... didn't hear

6. was walking ... heard ... was

7. A: Did your lights go out

B: was ... was taking ... found ... ate ... tried ... went ... slept

8. went ... saw ... had ... were walking ... began ... dried ... were passing ... lowered ... started ... stretched ... tried ... didn't let ... was standing ... pointed ... said

◇练习 26, p.36.

1. I gave Alan his allowance after he finished his chores. OR After Alan finished his chores, I gave him his allowance.

2. The doorbell rang while I was climbing the stairs. OR While I was climbing the stairs, the doorbell rang.

3. The firefighters checked the ashes one last time before they went home. OR Before they went home, the firefighters checked the ashes one last time.

4. When the Novaks stopped by our table at the restaurant, they showed us their new baby. OR The Novaks showed us their new baby when they stopped by our table at the restaurant.

5. We started to dance as soon as the music began. OR As soon as the music began, we started to dance.

6. We stayed in our seats until the game ended. OR Until the game ended, we stayed in our seats.

7. While my father was listening to a baseball game on the radio, he was watching a basketball game on television. OR My father was watching a basketball game on television while he was listening to a baseball game on the radio.

◇练习 27, p.37.

1. was

17. comes

33. is

2. slept

18. sat

34. drew

3. came

19. spoke

35. played

4. packed

20. ate

36. won

5. took

21. took

37. won

6. spent	22. was sleeping	38. taught
7. got	23. bit	39. were playing
8. found	24. woke	40. fell
9. fed	25. heard	41. found
10. threw	26. looked	42. joined
11. swam	27. saw	43. were
12. caught	28. flew	44. were
13. hit	29. did	45. hurt
14. stole	30. took	46. was
15. were feeding	31. got	47. left
16. met	32. read	48. was

◇练习 28, p.39.

1. used to hate school
2. used to be a secretary
3. used to have a rat
4. used to go bowling
5. used to have fresh eggs
6. used to crawl under his bed ... put his hands over his ears
7. used to go
8. didn't use/used to wear
9. used to hate ... didn't use/used to have
10. did you use/used to do

◇练习 29, p.40.

1. They didn't stay at the park very long last Saturday
2. They are walked to school yesterday.
3. I was understood all the teacher's questions yesterday.
4. We didn't know what to do when the fire alarm rang yesterday.
5. I was really enjoyed the baseball game last week.
6. Mr. Rice didn't die in the accident.
7. I used to live with my parents, but now I have my own apartment.
8. My friends were went on vacation together last month.
9. I wasn't afraid of anything when I was a child.
10. The teacher was changed his mind yesterday.
11. Sally loved Jim, but he didn't love her.
12. Carmen didn't use/used to eat fish, but now she does.

◇练习 30, p.41.

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|------------|
| 1. was preparing | 11. excused | 21. yelled |
| 2. rang | 12. reached | 22. shooed |
| 3. put | 13. was trying | 23. sat |
| 4. rushed | 14. ran | 24. stayed |
| 5. opened | 15. was trying | 25. began |
| 6. found | 16. were swimming | 26. felt |
| 7. was holding | 17. said | 27. rang |
| 8. needed | 18. hung | 28. rang |
| 9. was dealing | 19. thanked | |
| 10. rang | 20. shut | |

◇练习 1, p.43.

1. a. arrives
b. arrived
c. is going to arrive OR will arrive
2. a. eats
b. ate
c. is going to eat OR will eat
3. a. doesn't arrive
b. didn't arrive
c. isn't going to arrive OR will not/won't arrive
4. a. Do ... eat
b. Did ... eat
c. Are ... going to eat OR Will ... eat
5. a. don't eat
b. didn't eat
c. 'm/am not going to eat OR will not/won't eat

◇练习 2, p.44.

- | | |
|------------------|----------|
| be going to | will |
| am going to | will |
| are going to | will |
| is going to | will |
| are going to | will |
| are going to | will |
| are not going to | will not |

is not going to will not
am not going to will not

◇练习 3, p. 44.

1. I'm going to eat
2. he isn't going to be
3. they're going to take
4. she's going to walk
5. it isn't going to rain
6. we're going to be
7. you aren't going to hitchhike
8. I'm not going to get
9. he isn't going to wear

◇练习 4, p. 44.

The Smiths will celebrate their 50th wedding anniversary on December 1 of this year. Their children are planning a party for them at a local hotel. Their family and friends will join them for the celebration.

Mr. and Mrs. Smith have three children and five grandchildren. The Smiths know that two of their children will be at the party, but the third child, their youngest daughter, is far away in Africa, where she is doing medical research. They believe she will not come home for the party.

The Smiths don't know it, but their youngest daughter will be at the party. She is planning to surprise them. It will be a wonderful surprise for them! They will be very happy to see her. The whole family will enjoy being together for this special occasion.

◇练习 5, p. 45.

1. Will Nick start
Is Nick going to start
2. Will Mr. Jones give
Is Mr. Jones going to give
3. Will Jacob quit
Is Jacob going to quit
4. Will Mr. and Mrs. Kono adopt
Are Mr. and Mrs. Kono going to adopt
5. Will the Johnsons move
Are the Johnsons going to move
6. Will Dr. Johnson retire
Is Dr. Johnson going to retire

◇练习 6, p. 46.

1. A: Will you help
B: I will OR I won't
2. A: Will Paul lend
B: he will OR he won't
3. A: Will Jane graduate
B: she will OR she won't
4. A: Will her parents be
B: they will OR they won't
5. A: Will I benefit
B: you will OR you won't

◇练习 7, p. 46.

1. probably won't
2. will probably
3. will probably
4. probably won't
5. will probably
6. probably won't

7. will probably
8. will probably

◇练习 8, p. 47.

I.

1. I'll probably go
2. she probably won't come
3. he will probably go
4. he probably won't hand
5. they will probably have

II.

6. I'm probably going to watch
7. I'm probably not going to be
8. it's probably going to be
9. they probably aren't going to come
10. she probably isn't going to ride

◇练习 9, p.47.

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 1. 90% | 5. 50% |
| 2. 50% | 6. 90% |
| 3. 100% | 7. 100% |
| 4. 90% | 8. 50% |

◇练习 10, p. 48.

1. are probably going to have
2. are probably not going to invite
3. may get married... Maybe... will get married
4. may rent
5. will probably decide
6. may not be... may be
7. will go
8. probably won't go

◇练习 11, p. 49.

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. 'll answer it | 5. 'll turn... off |
| 2. 'll hold | 6. 'll leave |
| 3. 'll take | 7. 'll get |
| 4. 'll move | 8. 'll read |

◇练习 12, p. 49.

1. 'm going to
2. 'll
3. 'm going to
4. 'll
5. 'm going to
6. 'll
7. 'm going to ... 'll

◇练习 13, p. 50.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| 1. 'll | 7. 'm going to |
| 2. 'm going to | 8. 'll |
| 3. 'm going to | 9. 's going to |
| 4. 'm going to | 10. 'll put |
| 5. A: are...goingto | 11. 'mgoingto |
| B: 'm going to | 12. 'll |
| 6. 'll | |

◇练习 14, p. 52.

时间从句:

1. After I did my homework last night
2. after I do my homework tonight
3. Before Bob left for work this morning
4. Before Bob leaves for work this morning
5. after I get home this evening

时间从句:

6. after I got home last night
7. as soon as the teacher arrives
8. As soon as the teacher arrived
9. When the rain stops
10. when the rain stopped

◇练习 15, P.52.

1. After I finish... I'm going to go
2. I'm not going to go . . . until I finish
3. Before Ann watches... she will (she'll) finish
4. Jim is going to read,, after he gets
5. When I call. , . I'll ask
6. Mrs. Fox will stay,, until she finishes
7. As soon as I get... I'm going to take
8. While I am... I'm going to go

◇练习 16, P. 53.

1. If it rains tomorrow,
2. If it's hot tomorrow,
3. if he has enough time
4. If I don't get a check tomorrow,
5. if the weather is nice tomorrow
6. If Gina doesn't study for her test,
7. if I have enough money
8. If I don't study tonight,

◇练习 17, p. 54.

1. When I see you Sunday afternoon, I'll give you my answer OR
I'll give you my answer when I see you Sunday afternoon.
2. Before my friends come over, I'm going to clean up my apartment. OR
I'm going to clean up my apartment before my friends come over.
3. When the storm is over, I'm going to do some errands. OR
I'm going to do some errands when the storm is over,
4. If you don't learn how to use a computer, you will have trouble finding a job, OR
You will have trouble finding a job if you don't learn how to use a computer.
5. As soon as Joe finishes his report he'll meet us at the coffee shop. OR
Joe will meet us at the coffee shop as soon as he finishes his report.
6. After Sue washes and dries the dishes, she will put them away. OR
Sue will put the dishes away after she washes and dries them.
7. If they don't leave at seven, they won't get to the theater on time. OR
They won't get to the theater on time if they don't leave at seven.

◇练习 18, P.54.

II,

(1) Tomorrow morning will be an ordinary morning. I'll get up at 6:30. I 'U wash my face and brush my teeth, Then I 'll probably put on my jeans and a sweater. I'll go to the kitchen and start the electric coffee maker.

(2) Then I'll walk down my driveway to get the morning newspaper. If I see a deer in my garden, I'll watch it for a while and then make some noise to chase it away before it destroys my flowers.

(3) As soon as I get back to the kitchen, I'll pour myself a cup of coffee and open the morning paper. While I'm reading the paper, my teenage daughter will come downstairs. We'll talk about her plans for the day. I'll help her with her breakfast and make a lunch for her to take to school. After we say goodbye, I'll eat some fruit and cereal and finish reading the paper.

(4) Then I 'll go to my office. My office is in my home. My office has a desk, a computer, a radio, a fax, a copy machine, and a lot of bookshelves. I 'll work all morning. While I'm working, the phone will ring many times. I 'll talk to many people. At 11:30, I'll go to the kitchen and make a sandwich for lunch. As I said, it will be an ordinary morning.

◇练习 19, p. 56.

1. I'm going to stay... I'm staying
2. They're going to travel... They're traveling
3. We're going to get... We're getting
4. He's going to start... He's starting
5. She's going to go... She's going
6. My neighbors are going to build... My neighbors are building

◇练习 20, p. 56.

1. is traveling
2. are arriving
3. 'm/am meeting
4. 'm/am getting
5. is... taking
6. 'm/am studying
7. 'm/am leaving
8. is attending... 'm/am seeing
9. is speaking
10. are coming... 'm/am planning... 'm/am preparing
11. 'm/am calling

◇练习 21, p. 58.

1. A: does... begin/start
B: begins/starts
2. opens
3. arrives/gets in
4. begins
5. A: does... close
B: closes
6. open... starts/begins... arrive... ends/finishes
7. A: does... depart/leave
B: leaves
A: does ... arrive/land

◇练习 22, p. 59.

1. is about to rain
2. is about to leave
3. is about to write
4. is about to ring
5. is... about to break

◇练习 23, p. 59.

1. study
2. set
3. doing
4. go
5. fell
6. is writing... waiting
7. takes...buys
8. go... tell
9. 'm/am tak/ng... forgetting
10. will discover. . . (will) apologize

◇练习 24, p. 60.

1. My friends will -to- join us after work.

2. Maybe the rain will stop / is going to stop soon.
3. On Friday, our school is closing / will close / is going
4. My husband and I will intend to be at your graduation.
5. Our company is going to sell computer equipment to schools.
6. Give grandpa a hug. lie's about to leave.
7. Mr. Scott is going to retire and move to a warmer climate.
8. If your soccer team wins the championship tomorrow, we'll have a big celebration for you.
9. Maybe I won't be able to meet you for coffee. OR
I may not be able to meet you for coffee. OR
maybe won't be able to meet you for coffee.
10. I bought this cloth because I am going to make some curtains for my bedroom.
11. I am (I'm) moving / will move / am going to move to London when I will finish my education here.
12. Are you going to go to the meeting?
13. I opened the door and walked to the front of the room~
14. When will you be gonig to move into your new apartment? OR
When are you going to move into your new apartment? OR
When are you moving into your new apartment?

◇练习 25, p.61.

1. go . . . am going to finish / will finish... write
2. was making... spilled... caught... started... ran ... thought
3. plays... cuts... is not doing... doesn't study... go... will flunk / is going to flunk
4. cries... stomps... gets... got... picked... threw... didn't hit... felt... apologized... kissed
5. is beginning... begins... don't like... think... are going to take / will take... is . . . are going to drive / will drive . . . enjoy
6. is going to meet / will meet... arrives
7. see... am going to tell / will tell
8. am...see
9. am... will stay
10. are going to go / will go... is
11. is watching... is... is going to mow / will mow
12. was...left
13. get...run
14. don't need
15. is planning / plans... Are you going to come / Are you coming
16. A: do you usually get
B: take
17. was combing... broke... finished... rushed
18. get... 'm/am going to read / I will read... watch...'m/am not going to do / won't do
19. saw...ran...caught...knocked...went...sat...waited... got... understood... put... took
20. A: has... has
B: does she have
B: Do you have
A: 'm/am not going to get... don't have

◇练习, p.64.

1. A:Have you ever eaten
B: have... have eaten OR haven't... have never eaten
2. A: Have you ever talked
B: have... have talked OR haven't... have never talked
3. A: Has Erica ever rented
B: has... has rented OR hasn't... has never rented
4. A: Have you ever seen
B: have... have seen OR haven't... have never seen
5. A: Has Joe ever caught
B: has... has caught OR hasn't... has never caught

6. A: Have you ever had
B: have... have had OR haven't... have never had

◇练习 2, p. 65.

1. have wanted
2. have been
3. has been
4. have flown
5. have not picked up
6. has changed
7. has already corrected... hasn't returned
8. hasn't talked
9. have needed... have looked
10. A: Have you had
B: have gotten

◇练习 3, p. 66.

I.

simple form	simple past	past participle
hurt	hurt	hurt
put	put	put
quit	quit	quit
upset	upset	upset
cut	cut	cut
shut	shut	shut
let	let	let
set	set	set

II.

simple form	simple past	past participle
ring	rang	rung
drink	drank	drunk
swim	swam	swum
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk

III.

simple form	simple past	past participle
win	won	won
feed	fed	fed
weep	wept	wept
stand	stood	stood
keep	kept	kept
sit	sat	sat
stick	stuck	stuck
meet	met	met
have	had	had
find	found	found
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
fight	fought	fought
teach	taught	taught
pay	paid	paid
bring	brought	brought
think	thought	thought

◇练习 4, p. 67.

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. have used | 7. has given |
| 2. has risen | 8. haven't saved |
| 3. have never played | 9. Have you ever slept |
| 4. have won | 10. have never worn |
| 5. hasn't spoken | 11. has improved |
| 6. hasn't eaten | 12. have looked |

◇练习 5, p. 68.

- | | | |
|------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 6. F | 11. F |
| 2. F | 7. F | 12. F |
| 3. F | 8. F | 13. F |
| 4. F | 9. C | 14. C |
| 5. C | 10. C | |

◇练习 6, p. 68.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. began...have begun | 16. led...has led |
| 2. bent...have bent | 17. lost...has lost |
| 3. broadcast... has broadcast | 18. met...have met |
| 4. caught... have caught | 19. rode... have ridden |
| 5. came...have come | 20. rang... has rung |
| 6. cut...have cut | 21. saw...have seen |
| 7. dug... have dug | 22. stole... has stolen |
| 8. drew... has drawn | 23. stuck... have stuck |
| 9. fed... have fed | 24. swept... have swept |
| 10. fought... have fought | 25. took... have taken |
| 11. forgot... have forgotten | 26. upset... have upset |
| 12. hid... have hidden | 27. withdrew... have withdrawn |
| 13. hit... has hit | 28. wrote... have written |
| 14. held... has held | |
| 15. kept... have kept | |

◇练习 7, p. 70.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. went... have gone | 7. has played |
| 2. lived | 8. has not/hasn't slept |
| 3. has lived | 9. made |
| 4. moved... worked | 10. have enjoyed |
| 5. roomed... returned | 11. collected |
| 6. was... died | |

◇练习 8, p. 71.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. a. have gone
b. went | 11. a. have you ever found
b. found |
| 2. a. gave
b. Has she ever given | 12. a. drove
b. have never driven |
| 3. a. have fallen
b. fell | 13. a. sang
b. have sung |
| 4. a. Have you ever broken
b. broke | 14. a. have never run
b. ran |
| 5. a. have never shaken
b. shook | 15. a. told
b. has told |
| 6. a. heard
b. have heard | 16. a. stood
b. have stood |
| 7. a. flew
b. has flown | 17. a. spent
b. have already spent |
| 8. a. has worn
b. wore | 18. a. have made
b. made |
| 9. a. Have you ever built
b. built | 19. a. has risen
b. rose |

10. a. has taught
b. taught

20. a. felt
b. have felt

◇练习 9, p. 73.

- | | | |
|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. since | 6. since | 11. for |
| 2. for | 7. since | 12. for |
| 3. since | 8. for | 13. since |
| 4. for | 9. since | 14. for |
| 5. for | 10. since | |

◇练习 10, p. 74.

1. I have been in this class for a month.
2. I have known my teacher since September.
3. Sam has wanted a dog for two years.
4. Sara has needed a new car since last year / for a year.
5. Our professor has been sick for a week / since last week.
6. They have lived in Canada since December.
7. I have known Mrs. Brown since 1999.
8. Torn has worked at a fast-food restaurant for three weeks.

◇练习 11, p. 74.

Checked phrases:

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. two weeks ago | 2. since Friday |
| yesterday | since last week |
| last year | for several weeks |
| several months ago | |
| the day before yesterday | |
| in March | |

◇练习 12, p. 75.

1. have known... was
2. has had... came
3. have not experienced... came
4. began... has given
5. has been . . . was
6. has not been... graduated
7. started... have completed
8. began... has not had
9. have become... changed
10. has risen... bought

◇练习 13, p. 75.

1. A: has Eric been studying
B: 's been studying... for two hours
2. A: has Kathy been working at the computer
B: 's been working... two o'clock
3. A: has it been raining
B: 's been raining... two days
4. A: has Liz been reading
B: 's been reading... 30 minutes/half an hour
5. A: has Boris been studying English
B: 's been studying English... 2001
6. A: has Nicole been working at the Silk Road Clothing Store
B: 's been working... three months
7. A: has Ms. Rice been teaching at this school
B: 's been teaching... 2001
8. A: has Mr. Fisher been driving a Chevy
B: 's been driving a Chevy... twelve years
9. A: has Mrs. Taylor been waiting to see her doctor

- B: 's been waiting... one and a half hours
 10. A: have Ted and Erica been playing tennis
 B: have been playing tennis . . . two o'clock

◇练习 14, p. 76.

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. B | 4. B | 7. B |
| 2. B | 5. A | 8. A |
| 3. A | 6. A | |

◇练习 15, p. 77.

- | | | |
|------|------|-------|
| 1. B | 5. C | 9. B |
| 2. D | 6. A | 10. C |
| 3. A | 7. C | |
| 4. D | 8. D | |

◇练习 16, p. 78.

- | | |
|------------|------------------|
| 1. yet | 11. A: yet |
| 2. yet | B: still |
| 3. still | 12. yet... still |
| 4. yet | 13. already |
| 5. still | 14. still |
| 6. still | 15. anymore |
| 7. yet | 16. still |
| 8. still | 17. already |
| 9. anymore | 18. yet... still |
| 10. still | |

◇练习 17, p. 79.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. need | 13. don't have |
| 2. is | 14. haven't had |
| 3. Have you ever worked | 15. quit |
| 4. have worked | 16. Are you looking |
| 5. had | 17. 'm/am going |
| 6. did you work | 18. is looking |
| 7. have worked | 19. 'll/will do |
| 8. have never had | 20. have never looked |
| 9. did you like | 21. 'll/will be (also possible: is) |
| 10. didn't like | 22. don't know |
| 11. was | 23. 'll/will find |
| 12. are you working | 24. go |

◇练习 18, p. 80.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. have already eaten | 5. had already finished |
| 2. had already eaten | 6. had already started |
| 3. have already finished | 7. has already started |
| 4. had already finished | 8. had already left |

◇练习 19, p. 81.

1. was raining
2. had stopped
3. was studying
4. had finished
5. was washing
6. had already washed... (had) put

◇练习 20, p. 82.

- (1) had always watched
- (2) had always read
- (3) had never let... had always listened

- (4) had always left
- (5) 'd/had never put
- (6) had never shared
 - 1. had always watched
 - 2. had always read
 - 3. had never let
 - 4. had always left
 - 5. had never put
 - 6. had never shared

◇练习 21, p. 83.

- 1. A: Did you enjoy
B: hadn't gone
- 2. A: Did you see
B: was... hadn't seen
- 3. A: haven't seen
B: is... haven't seen
- 4. A: Did you get
B: got . . . had already begun
- 5. had already gone
- 6. have painted
- 7. A: was watching
B: did you do
A: ran
- 8. A: Did you go
B: got... had already made
A: was
B: had... were eating... stopped... invited

◇练习 22, p. 84.

- 1. Where have you been? I've been waiting for you for an hour.
- 2. Anna has been a soccer fan for a long time.
- 3. Since I was a child, I have liked to solve puzzles.
- 4. Have you ever wanted to travel around the world?
- 5. The family has been at the hospital since they heard about the accident.
- 6. My sister is only 30 years old, but her hair has begun to turn gray.
- 7. Jake has worked as a volunteer at the children's hospital several times.
- 8. Steve has worn his black suit only once since he has bought it.
- 9. My cousin has been studying for medical school exams since last month.
- 10. The students have been hearing rumors about their teacher's engagement for a week.
- 11. I don't know the results of my medical tests yet. I'll find out soon.
- 12. Jean has been trying to get online to go Internet shopping for an hour.
- 13. By the time Michelle unlocked the door and got into her apartment, the phone had already stopped ringing.

第五章 疑问句

◇练习 1, P.85.

- 1. (your name)
- 2. what is your name
- 3. Is that your first name?
- 4. What's your last name?
- 5. How do you spell it?
- 6. Where are you from?
- 7. What is your hometown?
- 8. When did you come here?
- 9. Why did you come here?
- 10. What are you studying? (OR What is your major?)

11. How long are you going to stay here?
12. Where are you living?
13. Is it far from school?
14. How far is it?
15. How do you get to school?
16. Do you like it?

◇练习 2, p.86.

助动词	主语	主要动词	句子的其余部分
1. Do	you	like	coffee?
2. Does	Tom	like	coffee?
3. Is	Ann	watching	TV?
4. Are	you	having	lunch with Rob?
5. Did	Sara	walk	to school?
6. Was	Ann	taking	a nap?
7. Will	Ted	come	to the meeting?
8. Can	Rita	ride	a bicycle?
9. Is	Ann	a good artist?	
10. Were	you	at the wedding?	

◇练习 3, p. 87.

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A: Do | 6. A: Do |
| B: I don't | B: they do |
| 2. A: Is | 7. A: Is |
| B: it isn't | B: it isn't |
| 3. A: Do | 8. A: Does |
| B: they do | B: it doesn't |
| 4. A: Are | 9. A: Are |
| B: I am | B: I am |
| 5. A: Are | 10. A: Does |
| B: they aren't | B: it does |

◇练习 4, p. 88.

1. Yes, I do. OR No, I don't.
2. Yes, she does. OR No she doesn't.
3. Yes, I am. OR No, I'm not.
4. Yes, I will. OR No, I won't.
5. Yes, I can. OR No, I can't.
6. Yes, I do. OR No, I don't.
7. Yes, we are. OR No, we aren't.
8. Yes, they can. OR No, they can't.
9. Yes, they should. OR No, they shouldn't.
10. Yes, I did. OR No, I didn't.
11. Yes, I do. OR No, I don't.
12. Yes, it will. OR No, it won't.
13. Yes, it does. OR No, it doesn't.
14. Yes, they were. OR No, they weren't.
15. Yes, he/she should. OR No, he/she shouldn't.
16. Yes, it is. OR No, it isn't.
17. Yes, it was. OR No, it wasn't.

◇练习 5, p. 89.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. A: Does Jane eat | 6. A: Is Tim Wilson |
| B: she does. | B: he is. |
| 2. A: Do | 7. A: Will Karen finish |
| B: they don't. | B: she will. |
| 3. A: Did Ann and Jim come | 8. A: Can birds swim |
| B: they didn't. | B: they can. |

4. A: Are you writing
B: I am.
5. A: Were you
B: I wasn't.

9. A: Have you looked
B: I haven't.

◇练习 6, p. 89.

疑问句	助动词	主语	主要动词	句子的其余部分
1. φ	Did	you	hear	the news yesterday?
2. When	did	you	hear	the news?
3. φ	Is	Eric	reading	today's paper?
4. What	is	Eric	reading?	φ
5. φ	Did	you	find	your wallet?
6. Where	did	you	find	your wallet?
7. Why	does	Mr. Li	walk	to work?
8. φ	Does	Mr. Li	walk	to work?
9. φ	Will	Ms. Cook	return	to her office?
10. When	will	Ms. Cook	return	to her office?
11. φ	Is	the orange juice		in the refrigerator?
12. Where	is	the orange juice?		φ

◇练习 7, p.90.

- What time/When do the fireworks start
- Why are you waiting
- When does Rachel start
- What time/When do you leave
- Why didn't you get
- Where can I find
- When are you leaving
- When do you expect
- Where will the spaceship go
- Where did you study... Why did you study... Why didn't you go

◇练习 8, p. 91.

- When/What time did you get up
- Where did you eat lunch
- When/What time did you eat
- Why do you eat lunch
- Where do your aunt and uncle live
- When are you going to visit
- When/What time will you get home
- Where is George going to study
- Why does George study
- Where can I catch
- When/What time do you have to leave
- Where were you living
- Why are the students writing
- What time should I call
- Why is Yoko

◇练习 9, p.92.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. were you | 7. didn't you do |
| 2. can't you come | 8. isn't Anita coming |
| 3. did Tom go | 9. are you and Joe going |
| 4. won't Ann be | 10. didn't you eat |
| 5. do you need | 11. did Jack take |
| 6. are you going to buy | 12. don't you like |

◇练习 10, p. 93.

1. Who knows Tom?
2. Who(m) does Tom know?
3. Who will help us?
4. Who(m) will you ask?
5. Who(m) is Eric talking to on the phone? OR (formal: To whom is Eric talking on the phone?)
6. Who is knocking on the door?
7. What surprised them?
8. What did Jack say?
9. What did Sue talk about?
10. Who(m) did Ann talk about? OR (formal: About whom did Ann talk?)

◇练习 11, p. 94.

1. Who taught
2. What did Robert see
3. Who got
4. What are you making
5. Who does that calculator belong
6. What do you have
7. What did the cat kill
8. What killed the cat
9. What makes
10. Who wrote a note
11. Who(m) did you get a letter

◇练习 12, p. 95.

1. A: What does "explore" mean?
B: "to go to a new place and find out about it."
2. A: What does "underneath" mean?
B: "under."
3. A: What does "blink" mean?
B: "to open and close your eyes quickly."
4. A: What does "delicious" mean?
B: "it tastes very, very, good."

◇练习 13, p. 95.

1. What is Alex doing?
2. What should I do
3. What do astronauts do?
4. What are you going to do
5. What do you do
6. What can I do
7. What did Sara do
8. What should I do?
9. What is Emily going to do
10. What did you do
11. What would you like to do (also possible: Where would you like to go)
12. What are you trying to do?
13. What does Kevin need to do?
14. What does Nick do?
15. What did he do?... What did you do?... what did he do?

◇练习 14, p. 96.

1. What kind of music
2. What kind of clothes/clothing
3. What kind of food
4. What kind of books
5. What kind of car
6. What kind of government

7. What kind of job
8. What kind of person/man/woman
9. What kind of products/things

◇练习 15, p. 97.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1. Which | 6. Which |
| 2. What | 7. What |
| 3. Which | 8. What |
| 4. What | 9. Which |
| 5. Which | |

◇练习 16, p. 98.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1. Who | 5. Who |
| 2. Whose | 6. Who |
| 3. Whose | 7. Whose |
| 4. Who | 8. Whose |

◇练习 17, p. 99.

1. Whose house is that?
2. Who's living in that house?
3. Whose umbrella did you borrow?
4. Whose book did you use?
5. Whose book is on the table?
6. Who is on the phone?
7. Who's that?
8. Whose is that?

◇练习 18, p. 99.

1. A: hot
B: hot
2. soon
3. expensive
4. A: busy
B: busy
5. A: serious
B: serious
6. safe
7. B: fresh
A: fresh... fresh
8. A: well
B: well

◇练习 19, p. 100.

- | | | |
|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. far | 7. long | 13. long |
| 2. long | 8. far | 14. often |
| 3. often | 9. long | 15. far |
| 4. far | 10. often | 16. long |
| 5. far | 11. long | 17. often |
| 6. often | 12. far | |

◇练习 20, p. 101.

1. What is Jack doing
2. Who is he playing
3. What is Anna doing
4. What is she throwing
5. What are Anna and Jack holding
6. What is
7. Where are they
8. How long have they been playing

9. Who is winning
10. Who won

◇练习 21, p. 102.

1. When will the clean clothes be
2. Where did you go
3. Which dictionary did you buy
4. How long did it take you
5. How can I reach
6. What kind of bread do you like
7. Why didn't you answer
8. Who are you going
9. Who repaired
10. How is the weather

◇练习 22, p. 103.

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. a. don't | c. is |
| b. doesn't | d. weren't |
| c. don't | e. was |
| d. doesn't | 4. a. hasn't |
| e. isn't | b. haven't |
| f. aren't | c. have |
| g. does | d. hasn't |
| h. is | e. has |
| 2. a. didn't | 5. a. can't |
| b. did | b. will |
| c. were | c. shouldn't |
| d. wasn't | d. wouldn't |
| 3. a. aren't | e. do |
| b. is | f. didn't |

◇练习 23, p. 104.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. A: haven't you?
B: Yes, I have. | 9. A: doesn't he?
B: Yes, he does. |
| 2. A: has he?
B: No, he hasn't. | 10. A: didn't you?
B: Yes, I did. |
| 3. A: didn't you?
B: Yes, I did. | 11. A: is it?
B: No, it isn't. |
| 4. A: don't you?
B: Yes, I do. | 12. A: does he?
B: No, he doesn't. |
| 5. A: haven't they?
B: Yes, they have. | 13. A: do I?
B: No, you don't. |
| 6. A: hasn't she?
B: Yes, she has. | 14. A: is it?
B: No, it isn't. |
| 7. A: is it?
B: No, it isn't. | 15. A: weren't they?
B: Yes, they were. |
| 8. A: don't we?
B: Yes, we do. | 16. A: will she?
B: No, she won't. |

◇练习 24, p. 105.

1. Who saw the car accident?
2. Why didn't you say "good-bye" when you left?
3. How about asking Julie and Tim to come for dinner Friday night?
4. What time does class begin today?
5. Why does he have no shoes on his feet? (also possible: Why doesn't he have any shoes on his feet?)
6. Where can you get a drink of water in this building?
7. What kind of music do you like best?

8. How long does it take to get to the beach from here?
9. She is working late tonight, isn't she?
10. Whose glasses are those?
11. How much tall is your father?
12. Who did you talk to about registration for next term?
13. How about we going to see the baby elephant at the zoo tomorrow?
14. How far is it from here to the nearest gas station?

◇练习 25, p. 106.

1. When are you going to buy
2. How are you going to pay
3. How long did you have
4. How often do you ride
5. How do you get
6. Are you going to ride
7. Why didn't you ride
8. Does your bike have
9. What kind of bike do you have
10. When did Jason get
11. Who broke
12. What did Billy break
13. Whose new bike is broken
14. How did Billy break
15. Which bicycle is
16. Where do you keep
17. Who does that bike belong to
18. Whose bike did you borrow
19. Where is Rita
20. What is she doing
21. How far did Rita ride
22. How do you spell

第六章 名词和代词

◇练习 1, p. 108.

1. Airplanes . . wings
2. Children...swings
3. animals... zoos
4. Trees...branches... leaves
5. ducks...geese...pond...park
6. babies...teeth
7. potatoes... beans... peas... tomatoes
8. Opinions...facts
9. country...customs
10. Governments...taxes

◇练习 2, p.108.

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 1. /z/ | 7. /əz/ |
| 2. /s/ | 8. /z/ |
| 3. /s/ | 9. /s/ |
| 4. /əz/ | 10. /əz/ |
| 5. /z/ | 11. /z/ |
| 6. /z/ | 12. /s/ |

◇练习 3, p. 108.

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 1. /z/ | 7. /z/ |
| 2. /s/ | 8. /s/ |
| 3. /əz/ | 9. /əz/ |
| 4. /s/ | 10. /s/ |

5. /z/ 11. /əz/
6. /z/ 12. /əz/

◇练习 4, p. 109.

1. /z/... /z/.../z/
2. /əz/.../əz/
3. /z/.../z/.../z/
4. /əz/.../z/
5. /z/... /əz/
6. /z/.. /əz/.../s/
7. /əz/.../əz/
8. /z/.../z/.../z/

◇练 5, p.109.

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. mouse | 12. beliefs | 23. sheep |
| 2. pockets | 13. potatoes | 24. loaf |
| 3. tooth | 14. radios | 25. glasses |
| 4. tomato | 15. offspring | 26. problems |
| 5. fish | 16. child | 27. families |
| 6. woman | 17. seasons | 28. wives |
| 7. branches | 18. customs | 29. shelves |
| 8. friends | 19. businesses | 30. roofs |
| 9. duties | 20. century | 31. foot |
| 10. highways | 21. occurrences | 32. women |
| 11. thieves | 22. phenomenon | |

◇练习 6, p. 110.

1. cows, sheep, horses, mice, geese
2. potatoes, tomatoes, peas, beans
3. apples, grapes, strawberries, bananas, cherries, pears
4. poppies, daffodils, roses, daisies, lilies
5. babies, sons, daughters, husbands, wives, children

◇练习 7, p. 111.

- S V O
1. Children play games.
S V
2. Fish swim.
S V O
3. The baby doesn't like her new toys.
S V O
4. Computers process information quickly.
S V O
5. Dictionaries give definitions.
S V O
6. Teachers correct tests.
S V O
7. The cat found found a mouse.
S V
8. The sun shines brightly.
S V
9. Water evaporates.
V S V O
10. Do snakes lay eggs?
S V O
11. The child petted the dog.
V S V
12. Did the phone ring?

◇练习 8, p. 111.

1. The man opened the door with his key.
PREP O of PREP
2. The little girl put her shoes on the wrong feet.
PREP O of PREP
3. The student added and subtracted with a calculator.
PREP O of PREP
4. My father fixes breakfast for my mother every morning.
PREP O of PREP
5. Librarians work in libraries.
PREP O of PREP PREP O of PREP
6. The bird flew into the window of the building.
PREP O of PREP
7. I do all my homework on a computer.
PREP O of PREP PREP
8. The artist drew scenes of the beach in his notebook.
O of PREP
9. The children played in the backyard until dinner.
PREP O of PREP PREP O of PREP
10. It rained for two weeks.
REP O of PREP
11. The painter splashed paint on the floor of his studio.
PREP O of PREP PREP O of PREP
12. A man with dark glasses stood near the door.

◇练习 9, p. 112.

1. Bridges cross rivers.
S V O
2. A terrible earthquake occurred in Turkey.
S V PP
3. Airplanes fly above the clouds.
S V O
4. Trucks carry large loads.
S V PP
5. Rivers flow toward the sea.
S V O PP
6. Salespeople treat customers with courtesy.
S V O
7. Bacteria can cause diseases.
S V PP
8. Clouds are floating across the sky.
S PP V O
9. The audience in the theater applauded the performers at the end of the show.
PP PP
10. Helmets protect bicyclists from serious injuries.
S V O PP

◇练习 10, p. 112.

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|
| 1. in | 5. at | 9. at | 13. in |
| 2. in | 6. at | 10. at | 14. in |
| 3. on | 7. in | 11. in | 15. on |
| 4. on | 8. on | 12. on | |

◇练习 11, p. 113.

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. 3 | 4. 2 | 7. 2 |
| 1 | 1 | 3 |
| 2 | 3 | 1 |
| 2. 1 | 5. 1 | 8. 3 |
| 2 | 3 | 1 |
| 3 | 2 | 2 |
| 3. 2 | 6. 3 | 9. 2 |
| 3 | 1 | 1 |
| 1 | 2 | 3 |

◇练习 12, p. 114.

- | | | |
|--------|-------|--------|
| 1. are | 5. is | 9. are |
| 2. are | 6. is | 10. is |
| 3. are | 7. is | |
| 4. is | 8. is | |

◇练习 13, p. 114.

- | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. make | 5. are | 9. needs |
| 2. need | 6. comes | 10. go |
| 3. Do | 7. is | 11. work |
| 4. are | 8. are | 12. are |

◇练习 14, p. 114.

- | | | |
|--------------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1. old | 9. hard | 17. cheap/inexpensive |
| 2. old | 10. narrow | 18. light |
| 3. cold/cool | 11. clean | 19. light |
| 4. slow | 12. empty | 20. public |
| 5. happy | 13. safe | 21. right |
| 6. bad | 14. noisy | 22. right |
| 7. wet | 15. deep | 23. strong |
| 8. easy | 16. sour | 24. long |

◇练习 15, p. 115.

- | | | |
|--------------|---|------------|
| 1. loud | → | voice |
| 2. sweet | → | Sugar |
| 3. easy | → | test |
| 4. free | → | Air |
| 5. delicious | → | food |
| Mexican | → | restaurant |
| 6. important | → | facts |
| wide | → | variety |
| 7. sick | → | child |
| 8. sick | → | child |
| warm | → | bed |
| hot | → | tea |
| 9. camping | → | equipment |
| old, rusty | → | equipment |
| 10. hungry | → | bear |
| garbage | → | cans |
| 11. elderly | → | father |

nursing → care
 12. fresh → coffee
 warm → cookies

◇练习 16, p. 116.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. newspaper articles | 11. brick walls |
| 2. page numbers | 12. egg cartons |
| 3. paper money | 13. mountain views |
| 4. apartment buildings | 14. pocket knives |
| 5. computer disks | 15. traffic lights |
| 6. birthday presents | 16. picnic tables |
| 7. rose gardens | 17. apple pies |
| 8. key chains | 18. bicycle helmets |
| 9. city governments | 19. log cabins |
| 10. duck ponds | 20. steel bridges |

◇练习 17, p. 117.

- mountains
- Cats... mice
- Mosquitoes/Mosquitos... insects
- eyelashes
- Geese... ducks
- programs
- Forests... fires... fires... animals
- knives... weapons
- manners
- tickets
- lives... ways... years... lamps... candles...houses... chickens... fires
- kinds... flowers
- reporters... jobs
- universities
- students
- animals... horses... zebras [NOTE: deer is already plural]
- students... experiments... classes
- Houseflies... pests... germs
- articles... experiences
- devices... batteries... flashlights...calculators...radios... recorders... kinds... toys...batteries

◇练习 18,p.118

- The teacher helped me with the lesson.
 S O of V
- I carry a dictionary with me at all times.
 S O of PREP
- Mr. Fong has a computer. He uses it for many things. It helps him in many ways.
 O of PREP S O of V S O of V
- Jessica went to Hawaii with Ann and me. We like her, and she likes us. We had a good time
 O of PREP
 With her.
 S O of V O of V
- Mike had dirty socks. He washed them in the kitchen sink and hung them to dry in front of the
 S
 window. They dried quickly.
 S O of PREP O of
 PREP
- Joseph and I are close friends. No bad feelings will ever come between him and me.

He and
S

I share a strong bond of friendship.

◇练习 19,p.118

pronoun → noun/noun phrase

1.She → Janet

it → a green apple

2.her → Betsy

3.They → Nick and Rob

4.They → phone messages

5.him → Louie

He → Louie

her → Alice

She → Alice

6.She → Jane

it → letter

them → Mr. and Mrs. Moore

They → Mr. and Mrs. Moore

her → Jane

◇练习 20,p.119.

1.me 10.them

2.He 11.me...him

3.him 12.she

4.he 13.I...him and me

5.her 14.them...They...her

6.She ...it...She

7.me...He...us 15.me...him

8.her...They 16.me...him

9.I...They...us... 17.me...he...him...

it...We...them us...We...We...

him...he

◇练习 21,p.120.

1.Friend's 9.person's

2.friends' 10.people's

3.son's 11.teacher's

4.sons' 12.teachers'

5.baby's 13.man's

6.babies' 14.men's

7.child's 15.earth's

8.children's

◇练习 22,p.120.

1. Dan's

11.women's...men's

2.(no change)

12.Jupiter's surface

3.Jack's

13.Mercury's atmosphere

4.(no change)

14.Mars' / Mars's surface...

5.roommate's

Earth's surface

6.roommates'

15.Earth's twin...

7.(no change)

Venus'/Venus's surface

8.Betty's...sister's

16.planets'...Jupiter's son

9.sisters'

...Venus' / Venus's son

10.woman's

◇练习 23,p.122.

- 1.your...yours
- 2.her...hers
- 3.his...his
- 4.your...yours
- 5.their...our...theirs...ours

◇练习 24,p.122.

- | | |
|--------|---------------------|
| 1.her | 6.mine...my...yours |
| 2.hers | 7.their...theirs |
| 3.Our | 8.mine...yours |
| 4.Ours | 9.ours |
| 5.your | |

◇练习 25,p.1 23.

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| 1. myself | 11.ourselves |
| 2. himself | 12.themselves |
| 3.ourselves | 13.herself / himself |
| 4. yourself | 14.ourselves |
| 5. yourselves | 15.themselves |
| 6. herself | 16.herself |
| 7. themselves | 17.himself |
| 8. himself | 18.themselves |
| 9. herself | 19. yourself/yourselves |
| 10. myself | |

◇练习 26,p.124.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. cut myself | 6.help yourselves |
| 2. be proud of yourself | 7.takes care of himself |
| 3. talks to himself | 8.enjoyed themselves |
| 4. taught myself | 9.worked for himself |
| 5. blamed herself | 10.introduce themselves |

◇练习 27,p.125.

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. me...him | 7.yourself...your |
| 2. yourselves | 8.our...our |
| 3. itself | 9.ours |
| 4. its...its | 10.themselves |
| 5. hers | 11.itself |
| 6. him | 12.himself |

◇练习 28,p.125.

1. his...He...himself...he...him
2. Her...She
3. Our...We
4. her
5. my...I
6. hers
7. Mine
8. They...themselves...them...theirs...Their...their
9. hers...his
10. himself...him...he...his...He...him
- 11.her...she...herself (also possible: it)...she...her
12. your...ours

◇练习 29,p.126.

- 1.one...another...another...the other
- 2.one...another...the other
3. one...another...another...another...the other
- 4.one...the other

5.one...another...another...another...another..
the other

◇练习 30,p.127.

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. another | c.another |
| 2. The other | d.another |
| 3. The other | e.another |
| 4. Another | 8.another |
| 5. The other | 9.The other |
| 6. a.Another | 10.The other |
| b.the other | 11.another |
| 7. a.another | |
| b.another | |

◇练习 31,p.128.

- | | |
|--------------|--------------------|
| 1.The others | 10.The others |
| 2.The others | 11.The other |
| 3.Others | 12.The other |
| 4. others | 13.others...other |
| 5. other | 14.another...other |
| 6.Others | 15.another...Other |
| 7.Other | 16.The others |
| 8.Others | 17.The other |
| 9.Other | |

◇练习 32,p.129.

- | | | |
|-----|-----|------|
| 1.A | 4.B | 7.D |
| 2.C | 5.B | 8. B |
| 3.D | 6.A | |

◇练习 33,p.130.

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1.are | 6.us |
| 2.potatoes | 7.its |
| 3.by myself | 8.our...yours |
| 4.on...at | 9.himself |
| 5.four-week | 10.the others |

◇练习 34,p.130.

- 1.Look at those beautiful mountains!
2. The children played a game at the park on Saturday afternoon.
3. There are two horses,several sheep,and a cow in the farmer's field.
4. The owner of the store is busy at the moment.
5. The teacher met her students at the park after sch001.
6. Everyone wants peace in the world.
7. I grew up in a very large city.
8. This apple tastes sour. Here's some more,so let's try another(OR another one).
9. Some trees lose their leaves in the winter.
10. I am going to wear my brown shirt is to the party.
11. I hurt myself at work last week.
12. Our neighbors invited my friend and me to visit them.
13. My husband's boss works for twelve hours every day.
14. The students couldn't find their books.
15. I always read magazine articles while I'm in the waiting room at my dentist's office.

第七章 情态动词

◇练习 1,p.132.

- (1) has to=must
- (3) can't=is not able to

- may=might
 (5) couldn't=was not able to
 (7) got to=must
 (10) have to=must
 (12) 'd(had)better=should
 (13) ought to=should
 has to=must
 (17) might=may
 (21) ought to=should

◇练习 2,p.133.

- | | |
|-----------|------------------|
| 1. ϕ | 8. to |
| 2. to | 9. ϕ |
| 3. ϕ | 10. to... ϕ |
| 4. ϕ | 11. to... ϕ |
| 5. ϕ | 12. ϕ |
| 6. to | 13. ϕ |
| 7. ϕ | |

◇练习 3, p.134.

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. zebra | 7. horse |
| 2. cat | 8. donkey |
| 3. Elephants | 9. squirrel |
| 4. Monkeys | 10. ants |
| 5. camels | 11. baby |
| 6. cow | 12. women |

◇练习 4,p.134.

1. may / might...may not / might not
2. can't
3. can...may / might...may not / might not
4. may / might
5. can't
6. may / might...may / might
7. can't

◇练习 5,p.135.

1. I might take a nap.
2. Maybe she is sick.
3. Maybe there will be time later.
4. Our team may win.
5. You might be right.
6. We may hear soon.
7. It may rain.
8. It might snow.
9. Maybe she will come tomorrow.
10. Maybe she is at home right now.

◇练习 6,P.135.

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. possibility | 6. permission |
| 2. possibility | 7. possibility |
| 3. permission | 8. permission |
| 4. possibility | 9. possibility |
| 5. possibility | 10. permission |

◇练习 7,P.136.

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 4. a | 7. b |
| 2. b | 5. B | 8. a |

3.a 6.a

◇练习 8,P.137.

- | | |
|---------|------------|
| 1.Can | 6.A: Could |
| 2 may | B: May |
| 3.Would | 7.A: Can |
| 4 could | B: Will |
| 5.Can | 8.Could |

◇练习 9,P.137.

- 1.Could / Can/Would
- 2.Could / May / Can
- 3.Would / Could/Will
- 4.Can / May / Could
- 5.Will / Can / Could

◇练习 10,P.138.

- 1.shouldn't drive a long distance
- 2.should quit
- 3.shouldn't exceed the speed limit
- 4.shouldn't give too much homework
- 5.shouldn't miss any classes
- 6.shouldn't be cruel to animals
- 7.should always be on time for an appointment
- 8.shouldn't throw trash out of your car window

◇练习 11,P.138.

- 1.soak it in cold water...wash it in hot water
- 2.take it back to the store...try to fix it herself
- 3.get a job
- 4.call the landlord and complain
- 5.find a new girlfriend
- 6.send it back to the kitchen...eat it

◇练习 12,P.139.

- | | |
|-----|------|
| 1.A | 6.C |
| 2.C | 7.A |
| 3.B | 8.C |
| 4.A | 9.B |
| 5.B | 10.C |

◇练习 13, P.140.

- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 1.C | 5.B |
| 2.A | 6.A |
| 3.D | 7.D |
| 4.C | 8.C |

◇练习 14,P.140.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1.have to / must | 5.has to |
| 2.had to | 6.had to |
| 3.have to / must | 7.have to / must |
| 4.had to | 8.had to |

◇练习 15,P.141.

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1.had to | 4.had to |
| 2.had to | 5.have to |
| 3.have to | 6.had to |

◇练习 16,P.141.

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------|
| 1.had to study | 4.had to see |
| 2.had to turn off | 5.had to be |
| 3.Did you have to work | 6.had to close |

◇练习 17,P.141.

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1.must not | 9.must not |
| 2.don't have to | 10.don't have to |
| 3.don't have to | 11.don't have to |
| 4.don't have to | 12.must not |
| 5.must not | 13.must not |
| 6.don't have to | 14.must not |
| 7.must not | 15.don't have to |
| 8.must not | |

◇练习 18, P.143.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1.must / have to | 5.doesn't have to |
| 2.doesn't have to | 6.must / has to |
| 3.don't have to | 7.must not |
| 4.must / has to | |

◇练习 19,P.143.

- People have to/must...
eat and drink in order to live
Day taxes
stop when they see a police car's lights behind them
People must not...
fall asleep while driving
drive without a license
take other people's belongings
People don't have to...
cook every meal themselves
say "sir" or "madam" to others
stay in their homes in the evening

◇练习 20,P.144.

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. 2 | 6. 2 |
| 2. 1 | 7. 2 |
| 3. 1 | 8. 2 |
| 4. 2 | 9. 1 |
| 5. 1 | |

◇练习 21,P.144.

- | | |
|---------------|---------------------------|
| 1.Wait | 6.Don't cross |
| 2.Don't wait | 7.Don't stand...Do |
| 3.Read | 8.Call |
| 4.Don't put | 9.Take...Go...Walk...give |
| 5.Come...have | 10.Capitalize...Put...use |

◇练习 22,P.145.

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. 1 | 2. 2 | 3. 2 | 4. 4 |
| 4 | 1 | 1 | 2 |
| 3 | 4 | 1 | |
| 2 | 3 | 3 | |

◇练习 23,p.145.

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1.A: go...fly | 4.A: get / take |
| B: see | B: take...save |

- 2.A: get 5.A: stop...fill up
 B: take / ask B: get / pick up
 3. A: go 6.go...call...ask / see
 B: play

◇练习 24,p.146.

- 1.prefer 7.would rather
 2.like 8.would rather
 3.would rather 9.B: prefer
 4.prefer A: like
 5. would rather 10.prefer
 6.A: prefer
 B: likes...would rather

◇练习 25,p. 147.

- 1.Kim prefers salad to dessert.
 2.In general,Nicole likes coffee better than tea.
 3.Bill would rather teach history than work as a business executive.
 4.When considering a pet,Sam likes dogs better than cats.
 5.On a long trip,Susie prefers to drive than(to)ride in the back seat.
 6.I would rather study in a noisy room than study in a completely quiet room.
 7.Alex would rather play soccer than baseball.

◇练习 26,p.148.

- 1.C 6.C 11.B
 2.A 7.B 12.B
 3.C 8.C 13.A
 4.A 9.B 14.C
 5.B 10.C 15.A

◇练习 27,p.149.

1. Before I left on my trip last month,I had to get a passport.
 2. Could you to bring us more coffee,please?
 3. Ben can drive,but he prefers to take the bus.
 4. My roommate may be at home this evening.
 5. A few of our classmates can't to come to the school picnic.
 6. Could / Would / Will / Can you take our picture,please?
 7. Jane's eyes are red,and she is yawning. She must be sleepy.
 8. Jim would rather have Fridays off in the summer than have / take a long vacation.
 9. I must read several lengthy books for my literature class.
 10. Take your warm clothes with you It may / might snow. OR Maybe it will snow.
 11. When the baby went to the doctor last week,she had to have several shots.
 12. It's very cool in here. Please you turn up the heat. OR Would / Could / Will Can you please turn up the heat?
 13.You had better to call us before you come over. We're often away during the day.
 14.The children would rather to see the circus than a baseball game.
 15. It's such a gorgeous day. Why don't we go to a park or the beach?

◇练习 28,p.150.

- (1) may...is...can...can
 (2) should...can...should...should not...is...Will
 (3) do not have to...do not have to...can
 (4) have to...cannot...must...do...is...can...should
 (5) ought to...prepare
 (6) are...might...may...Maybe...could...is...are...should
 (7) should...will...can change...should...should...should
 (8) is...should

第八章 概念之间的连接

◇练习 1,p.152

- Noun + noun + noun
1. The farmer has a cow, a goat, and a black horse.
adj. + adj.
2. Danny is a bright and happy child.
Verb + verb
3. I picked up the telephone and dialed Steve's number.
verb + verb
4. The cook washed the vegetables and put them in boiling water.
adj. + adj.
5. My feet were cold and wet.
adj. + adj. + adj.
6. Anita is responsible, considerate, and trustworthy.
Noun + noun + noun
7. The three largest land animals are the elephant, the rhinoceros, and the hippopotamus.
verb + verb
8. A hippopotamus rests in water during the day and feeds on land at night.

◇练习 2,p.153.

1. (no commas)
2. I opened the door, walked into the room, and sat down at my desk.
3. (no commas)
4. Their flag is green, black, and yellow.
5. (no commas)
6. Tom made a sandwich, poured a glass of juice, and sat down to eat his lunch.
7. Ms. Parker is intelligent, friendly, and kind.
8. (no commas)
9. Did you bring copies of the annual report for Sue, Dan, Joe, and Mary?
10. (no commas)
11. Can you watch television, listen to the radio, and read the newspaper at the same time?
12. (no commas)
13. Doctors save lives, relieve suffering, and cure diseases.
14. The restaurant served a five-course dinner: soup, fish, entree, salad, and dessert.
15. (no commas)
16. An invitation should include your name, address, the date, the time, the purpose of the party, and any special activities such as swimming or dancing.

◇练习 3, p.153.

- S V S V
1. Birds fly, and fish swim.
S V S V
2. Birds fly. Fish swim.
S V S V
3. Dogs bark. Lions roar.
S V S V
4. Dogs bark, and lions roar.
S V S V
5. A week has seven days. A year has 365 days.
S V S V
6. A week has seven days, and a year has 365 days.
S V S V
7. Ahmed raised his hand, and the teacher pointed at him.
S V S V
8. Ahmed raised his hand. The teacher pointed at him.

◇练习 4,p.154.

- 1.I 6.C
- 2.C 7.C
- 3.C 8.C
- 4.I 9.I
- 5.I

◇练习 5, p.154.

- 1.I talked to Amy for a long time,but she didn't listen.
- 2. (no change.)
- 3. (no change)
- 4. (no change)
- 5. Please call Jane,Ted,or Anna.
- 6.Please call Jane,Ted,and Anna.
- 7.I waved at my friend,but she didn't see me.
- 8.I waved at my friend,and she waved back.
- 9. (no change)
- 10. (no change)
- 11.My test was short and easy,but Ali's test was hard.

◇练习 6,p.155.

- 1.C 5.B
- 2.B 6.C
- 3.A 7.A
- 4.C 8.C

◇练习 7,p.155.

- 1. (no change)
- 2.I washed the dishes,and my son dried them.
- 3.I called their house,but no one answered the Phone.
- 4. (no change)
- 5.I bought some apples,peaches,and bananas.
- 6. I was hungry,so I ate an apple.
- 7. (no change)
- 8. (no change)
- 9. My daughter is affectionate,shy,independent,and
- 10.It started to rain,so we went inside and watched television.

◇练习 8,p.156.

- 1. ...Every air traffic controller worldwide uses English,so It is Important for Gina to become fluent in the language.
- 2.Gina has decided to take some intensive English courses at a private language institute,but she isn't sure which one to attend. There are many schools available. and they offer many different kinds of classes.
- 3.Gina has also heard of air traffic control schools that include English as part of their coursework,but she needs to have a fairly high level of English to attend.
- 4.Gina needs to decide soon,or the classes will be full....

◇练习 9,p.156.

- 1.There are over 100,000 kinds of flies. They live throughout the world.
- 2. I like to get mail from my friends and family. Mail is important to me.
- 3. We are all connected by our humanity. We need to help each other. We can all live in peace.
- 4. There was a bad flood in Hong Kong. The streets became raging streams. Luckily no one died in the flood.
- 5. People have used needles since prehistoric times. The first buttons appeared almost two thousand years ago. Zippers are a relatively recent invention. The zipper was invented in 1890.

◇练习 10,p.157.

- 1.James has a cold. He needs to rest and drink plenty of fluids, so he should go to bed and

drink water. Fruit juices, or soda pop. He needs to sleep a lot, so he shouldn't drink fluids with caffeine, such as tea or coffee.

2. My friend and I were tired, so we went home early. We wanted to stay until the end of the game, but it got too late for us. Both of us had to get up early in the morning and go to our jobs.

3. The normal pulse for an adult is between 60 and 80 beats per minute, but exercise, nervousness, excitement, and a fever will all make a pulse beat faster. The normal pulse for a child is around 80 to 90.

4. Many famous explorers throughout history set out on their hazardous journeys in search of gold, silver, jewels or other treasures, but some explorers wanted only to discover information about their world.

5. Edward Fox was a park ranger for thirty-five years. During that time, he was hit by lightning eight times. The lightning never killed him, but it severely burned his skin and damaged his hearing.

6. The Indian Ocean is bordered on four sides by the continents of Africa, Asia, Australia, and Antarctica. Some of the important ports are Aden, Bombay, Calcutta, and Rangoon.

7. The Indian Ocean has many fish and shellfish, but it has less commercial fishing than the Atlantic or the Pacific. The climate of the Indian ocean is tropical. so fish spoil quickly out of the water. It is difficult and expensive for commercial fishing boats to keep fish fresh.

◇练习 11, P.157.

- | | | |
|------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. did | 10. are | 19. does |
| 2. does | 11. will | 20. don't |
| 3. didn't | 12. am | 21. can't |
| 4. do | 13. won't | 22. don't |
| 5. does | 14. will | 23. is |
| 6. doesn't | 15. can | 24. does |
| 7. wasn't | 16. has | 25. did |
| 8. is | 17. did | 26. is |
| 9. isn't | 18. would | 27. isn't |

◇练习 12, P.158.

1. does Tom...does too
2. does Brian...Brian doesn't
3. was I...I was
4. is Oregon...Oregon is
5. did Jean...Jean did
6. did Jason...Jason didn't
7. can Rick...Rick can't
8. Does Laura...Laura does
9. does Alice...Alice doesn't
10. are porpoises...porpoises are
11. have I...I haven't
12. does my brother...my brother does
13. will Erin...Erin won't

◇练习 13, p.160.

- I.
- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. can't either | 7. couldn't either |
| 2. does too | 8. did too |
| 3. doesn't either | 9. can't either |
| 4. is too | 10. does too |
| 5. wasn't either | 11. would too |
| 6. didn't either | |
- II.
- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 12. so is | 18. neither is |
| 13. neither do | 19. so does |
| 14. neither did | 20. so is |

- | | |
|------------|-----------------|
| 15. so are | 21.neither have |
| 16. so do | 22.so did |
| 17. so is | 23.Neither did |

◇练习 14,p.161.

1. Mr. Tanaka was late for work ^S ^V because [he] [missed] the bus.
2. I closed the door ^S ^V because the [room] [was] cold.
3. ^S ^V Because [I] [lost] my umbrella, I got wet on the way home.
4. Joe didn't bring his book to class ^S ^V because [he] [couldn't find] it.
5. The teacher couldn't hear the question ^S ^V because the [class] [was] so noisy.
6. ^S ^V Because the [ice cream] [was beginning] to melt, I put It back in the freezer.

◇练习 15,p.161.

1. I opened the window because the room was hot. We felt more comfortable then.
2. Because his coffee was cold, Jack didn't finish it. He left it on the table and walked away.
3. Because the weather was bad. we canceled our trip into the city. We stayed home and watched TV.
4. Debbie is a cheerleader. She woke up in the morning with a sore throat because she had cheered loudly at the basketball game.
5. Francisco is an intelligent and ambitious young man. Because he hopes to get a good job late in life, he is working hard to get a good education now.

◇练习 16,p.161.

1. lose weight-Eric went on a diet because he wanted to lose weight.
2. didn't have money-The family couldn't buy food because they didn't have money
3. have several children-our neighbors are very busy because they have several children.
4. be tired-Because I am tired, I am going to bed.
5. exercise every day-Because Susan exercises every day, she is in great shape.
6. have a high fever-Because Jennifer has a high fever, she is going to the doctor.

◇练习 17,p.162.

1. a. He was hungry. so he ate a sandwich.
b. Because he was hungry, he ate a sandwich.
c. He ate a sandwich because he was hungry.
2. a. Because my sister was tired, she went to bed.
b. My sister went to bed because she was tired.
c. My sister was tired, so she went to bed.
3. a. Because human beings have opposable thumbs, they can easily pick things up and hold them.
b. Human beings have opposable thumbs, so they can easily pick things up and hold them.
c. Human beings can easily pick things up and hold them because they have opposable thumbs.
4. a. School children can usually identify Italy easily on a world map because it is shaped like a boot.
b. Because Italy has the distinctive shape of a boot, school children can usually identify it easily.
c. Italy has the distinctive shape of a boot, so school children can usually identify it easily on a map.

◇练习 18,p.163.

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. like | 5. didn't change |
| 2. don't like | 6. didn't pass |

3. is 7. ate
4. stayed 8. were

◇练习 19, p.164.

- 1.B 5.A 9.A
2.A 6.A 10.A
3.A 7.B 11.B
4.B 8.B 12.A

◇练习 20, p.165.

1. because 7. Even though
2. even though 8. even though
3. even though 9. because
4. Even though 10. even though
5. Because 11. because... Even though...
6. Because because

◇练习 21, p.166.

- 1.C 6.C 11.C
2.C 7.B 12.A
3.B 8.A 13.C
4.B 9.A
5.C 10.B

◇练习 22, p.168.

1. I don't drink coffee. and my roommate doesn't either.
2. The flight was overbooked, so I had to fly on another airline. OR The flight was overbooked. I had to fly on another airline.
3. Many people use computers for e-mail, the Internet, and word processing.
4. The room was stuffy and hot, but I didn't close the window.
5. The baby woke up crying because her diaper was wet.
6. Even though my father works two jobs, he always has time to play soccer or baseball on weekends with his family.
7. I saw a bad accident, and my sister did too.
8. Oscar always pays his bills on time, but his brother doesn't.
9. Even though my mother is afraid of heights, I took her up to the observation deck at the top of the building.
10. Janey doesn't like to get up early, and Joe doesn't either. OR Janey doesn't like to get up early, and neither does Joe.
11. Although it was raining quite hard, but we decided to go for a bike ride. OR although It was raining quite hard, but we decided to go for a bike ride.
12. My mother and my father They immigrated to this country 30 years ago.
13. Because Maya is very intelligent, her parents want to put her in an advanced program at school.

第九章 比较

◇练习 1, p.169.

1. (just) as busy as Jason (is)
2. (nearly) as busy as Jason (is)
3. (nearly) as tired as Susan (was)
4. (nearly) as tired as Susan (was)
5. (just) as large as / as big as Po's (is)
6. (nearly) as big as Anna's (is)

◇练习 2, p.169.

1. aren't as noisy as
2. is as lazy as
3. aren't as strong as

4. is as tall as
- 5 isn't as comfortable as
6. isn't as big as
7. was as nervous as
8. isn't as flesh and clean as
9. am not as ambitious as
10. aren't as interesting as

◇练习 3,p.170.

I.

1. not nearly as
- 2.almost as / not quite as
- 3 not nearly as
4. lust as

II.

5. just as
6. not nearly as
- 7.almost as / not quite as
- 8.not nearly as

III.

- 9.just as
- 10.not nearly as
- 11.almost as / not quite as

IV.

- 12.just as
- 13.almost as
- 14.just as
15. not nearly as
- 16.almost as / not quite as

◇练习 4,p.172.

- | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 1.E | 4.G | 7.F |
| 2.C | 5.B | 8.A |
| 3.D | 6.H | |

◇练习 5,p.172.

I.

- 1 .as snow
2. as ice
3. as a picture
4. as a bat
5. as a bone
6. as a pillow
7. as a wink
8. as a mouse
9. as a bird
- 10.as pie

II.

- 11.cold as ice
- 12.quick as a wink
- 13.blind as a bat
- 14.white as snow
- 15.quiet as a mouse
- 16.pretty as a picture
- 17.easy as pie
- 18.free as a bird
- 19.soft as a pillow
- 20.dry as a bone

◇练习 6,P.174.

1. stronger...the strongest
2. more important...the most important
3. softer...the softest
4. lazier...the laziest
5. more wonderful...the most wonderful
6. calmer...the calmest
7. tamer...the tamest
8. dimmer...the dimmest
9. more convenient...the most convenient
- 10.more clever / cleverer...the most clever / the cleverest
11. better...the best
12. worse...the worst
13. farther...the farthest
- 14.slower...the slowest
- 15.more slowly...the most slowly

◇练习 7,p.174.

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. colder than | 8.worse than |
| 2. older than | 9.faster than |

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 3. more expensive than | 10. more important |
| 4. larger | 11. quicker than |
| 5. hotter than | 12. heavier |
| 6. slower than | 13. safer than |
| 7. creamier than | 14. more difficult than |

◇练习 8, p.175.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. colder | 6. more softly |
| 2. more generous | 7. softer |
| 3. more slowly | 8. more careful |
| 4. more comfortable | 9. prettier |
| 5. friendlier / more friendly | 10. lazier |

◇练习 9, p.176.

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. the worst | 5. the worst |
| 2. worse | 6. worse |
| 3. the best | 7. the worst |
| 4. better | 8. better |

◇练习 10, p.176.

- | | |
|---------|------|
| 1. A, B | 4. B |
| 2. B | 5. B |
| 3. A, B | 6. B |

◇练习 11, p.177.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. more slowly (ADV) | 6. more polite (ADJ) |
| 2. slower (ADJ) | 7. more careful (ADJ) |
| 3. more serious (ADJ) | 8. more carefully (ADV) |
| 4. more seriously (ADV) | 9. more clearly (ADV) |
| 5. more politely (ADV) | 10. clearer (ADJ) |

◇练习 12, p.177.

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1. I did | 6. he will |
| 2. she is | 7. he does |
| 3. I do | 8. he has |
| 4. she did | 9. she did |
| 5. I was | 10. he can |

◇练习 13, p.178.

- | formal | informal |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. I am | me |
| 2. he is | him |
| 3. I am | me |
| 4. she is | her |
| 5. I am | me |
| 6. I am | me |

◇练习 14, p.179.

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1. A | 6. A |
| 2. B, C, D | 7. B, C, D |
| 3. A | 8. A |
| 4. B, C, D | 9. B, C, D |
| 5. B, C, D | |

◇练习 15, p.179.

1. (no change possible using less)
2. I visit my brother less often than I visit my sister.
3. (no change possible using less)
4. Sam is less generous than his brother.

5. I'm less eager to go to the circus than the children are.
6. A notebook is less expensive than a textbook.
7. (no change possible using less)
8. Some people think that life in a city is less peaceful than life in a small town.
9. (no change possible using less)
10. I travel to Europe on business less frequently than I used to.

◇练习 16,p.180.

1. Sam enjoys football more than his best friend does.
2. OK
3. The coach helped Anna more than Nancy did. OR The coach helped Anna more than she / he helped Nancy.
5. Sara likes tennis more than her husband does.
5. OK
6. OK
7. Charles knows Judy better than Kevin does. OR Charles knows Judy better than he knows Kevin.

◇练习 17,p.180.

1. more newspapers(NOUN)
2. more homework(NOUN)
3. more snow(NOUN)
4. more friends(NOUN)
5. more pleasant / pleasanter(ADJ)
6. more easily(ADV)
7. more books(NOUN)
8. more carefully(ADV)
9. louder(ADJ)

◇练习 18, p.181.

1. better and better
2. bigger and bigger
3. colder and colder
4. louder and louder
5. angrier and angrier / more and more angry
6. longer and longer
7. more and more expensive
8. more and more tired
9. friendlier and friendlier / more and more friendly
10. faster and faster

◇练习 19,p.181.

1. The more...the stronger
2. The softer...the easier
3. the older...the wiser
4. The simpler...the more relaxed
5. The longer...the more tired
6. The harder...the more

◇练习 20,p.182.

1. more he talked, the more bored I became
2. older you are, the more you understand
3. more I thought about it, the more confused I became
4. more polluted the air, the greater the chances of developing respiratory diseases
5. faster he talked, the more confused I became
6. more the fans clapped and cheered, the more shots the basketball team made

◇练习 21,p.183.

- 1.the most familiar
- 2.the longest necks
- 3.the largest ears
- 4.the largest eyes
- 5.the most intelligent...the most intelligent

◇练习 22,p.183.

- I.
 - 1.the most difficult...ever
 - 2.the friendliest...of
 - 3.the most embarrassing...in
 - 4.the wisest...ever
 - 5.the best...in
 - 6.the most artistic of
 - 7.the hottest...in
 - 8.the warmest...of
 - 9.the brightest...ever
 - 10.the highest...in
 - 11.the most knowledgeable...of
 - 12.the most important...in
- II.
 - 13.the least ambitious of
 - 14.the least expensive...ever
 - 15.the least populated...in
 - 16.the least amount...ever

◇练习 23.p.184.

- I.
 1. A pencil...a telephone
 2. A diamond ring...a paper clip
 3. A cup of coffee...a can of coffee beans
 4. Radios and CD players...big screen TVs
 5. A compact car...a house
 6. Footballs,soccer balls, and basketballs...ping-pong balls
- II.
 7. Angel Falls...than Niagara Falls
 8. Giessbach Falls...as Cuquenán Falls
 9. Angel Falls...of all
 - 10.Niagara Falls...as Angel Falls
 - 11.Giessbach Falls...as Cuquenán Falls
- III.
 - 12.Air...than iron
 - 13.Iron...than wood
 - 14.iron...of all
 - 15.Air...as water
 - 16.air...of all
 - 17.Water...as air
 - 18.Water and iron...than wood

◇练习 24,p.186.

- | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 1.a | 4.a | 7.a |
| 2.b | 5.a | 8.b |
| 3.b | 6.b | |

◇练习 25,p.186.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. the funniest...funnier | 5.happier...the happiest |
| 2. sadder...the saddest | 6.more entertaining... |
| 3. the best...better book | the most entertaining |

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 4. more exhausting... | 7. harder...the hardest |
| the most exhausting | 8. hotter...the hottest |

◇练习 26,p.187.

1. more intelligent than...the smartest...in
2. the most popular...in
3. Smaller than
4. More potatoes...than
5. the closest...faster than
6. the largest...in...the smallest...of
7. more important than...less important than
8. more information
9. kinder...more generous
10. More honest...than
11. the worst
12. the safest
13. faster...than
14. bigger than
15. more extensive...than

◇练习 27,p.188.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. safer...than | 9. the worst...in |
| 2. the largest...in | 10. Harder than |
| 3. more strength than | 11. lowest |
| 4. better | 12. the most complex |
| 5. shortest | ...in |
| 6. thinner...juicier | 13. the funniest of |
| 7. more comfortable...than | 14. More people...than |
| 8. the most difficult of | 15. less expensive...than |

◇练习 28,p.189.

- | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. alike | 5. like | 9. like |
| 2. like | 6. like | 10. alike |
| 3. alike | 7. alike | |
| 4. alike | 8. like | |

◇练习 29,p.190.

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 1. from | 7. to |
| 2. to | 8. as |
| 3. as | 9. to |
| 4. from | 10. from |
| 5. as | 11. as |
| 6. to | 12. from |

◇练习 30,p.190.

I.

1. A is like D.
2. A and D are alike.
3. C is similar to A and D.
4. B is different from A, C, and D.

II.

5. similar to
6. the same as
7. different
8. the same as
9. different from

◇练习 31,p.191.

1. like

- 2.like
- 3.alike
- 4.A: alike
B: alike / the same...the same...the same
- 5.like
- 6.A: like
B: similar to
- 7.alike...alike...different
- 8.the same...the same...different

◇练习 32,P.192.

1. My brother is older than me.
2. A sea is more deeper than a lake.
3. A donkey isn't as big as a horse.
4. Ellen is the happiest person I've ever met.
5. When I feel embarrassed, my face gets redder and
6. One of the largest animals in the world is the
7. The traffic on the highway is worse from than it was a few mouths ago.
8. Jack is the same age as Jerry
9. Peas are similar to beans, but they have several differences.
10. Last winter was pretty mild. This winter is cold and rainy. It's much rainier than last winter.
11. Mrs. Peters, the substitute teacher, is friendlier than
12. Although alligators and crocodiles are similar alligators are not as big as crocodiles.
OR alligators are smaller
than crocodiles.
13. Mohammed and Tarek come from different countries, but they became friends easily because they speak the same language, Arabic.
14. Mothers of young children are busier than mothers of teenagers.
15. We'd like to go sailing, but the wind is not as strong today as it was yesterday.
16. We asked for a non-smoking room, but the air and furniture in our hotel room smelled like cigarette smoke.

第十章 被动语态

◇练习 1,P. 193.

- | verb | active/passive |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. grow | active |
| 2. is grown | passive |
| 3. wrote | active |
| 4. was written | passive |
| 5. explained | active |
| 6. was explained | passive |
| 7. are designed | passive |
| 8. design | active |

◇练习 2,p.193.

- 1.is delivered
- 2.has been eaten
- 3.was written
- 4.is going to be fixed
- 5.will be taught
6. is going to be brought
- 8.will be treated
9. have been planted
10. are caught

◇练习 3,p.194.

- | | | |
|------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. brought | 10. left | 19. spent |
| 2. built | 11. lost | 20. taken |
| 3. bought | 12. made | 21. taught |
| 4. eaten | 13. found | 22. gone |
| 5. planned | 14. played | 23. visited |
| 6. given | 15. read | 24. worn |
| 7. grown | 16. saved | 25. written |
| 8. hit | 17. sent | 26. done |
| 9. hurt | 18. spoken | |

◇练习 4, P.194.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. was eaten | 7. will be played |
| 2. is spoken | 8. can be taught |
| 3. are written | 9. are going to be taken |
| 4. was hurt | 10. have been grown |
| 5. is going to be visited | 11. is worn |
| 6. has been read | 12. will be built |

◇练习 5, P.195.

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. a | 4. b |
| 2. a | 5. b |
| 3. b | 6. a |

◇练习 6, P.196.

I

1. are collected
2. are written
3. is grown
4. are eaten
5. am paid
6. is understood

III.

11. have been visited
12. has been spoken
13. have been read
14. has been worn

VI

15. will be discovered
16. will be visited
17. will be saved

II

7. were collected
8. was built
9. was written
10. were destroyed

V

18. is going to be hurt
19. are going to be offered
20. is going to be elected

◇练习 7, P.197.

1. The government collects taxes.
2. Big fish eat small fish.
3. Everyone understands the meaning of a smile.
4. Leo Tolstoy wrote War and Peace.
5. The dog chased the cat.
6. XYZ Inc. is going to buy ABC Corporation Egypt.
7. Millions of tourists have visited the pyramids in Egypt.
8. Scientists in the twenty-first century will discover new

◇练习 8, P.197.

1. Mr. Rice signed the letter.
2. Did Mr. Foster sign the letter?
3. Ms. Owens sent the fax.
4. Did Mr. Chu send the other fax?
5. Will Mr. Berg meet Adam at the airport?
6. Has Mrs. Jordan invited you to the reception?

7. Mr. Lee has invited me to the reception.
8. Is the teacher going to collect the homework?

◇练习 9, p. 198.

动词	宾语
1. TRANSITIVE	a letter
2. INTRANSITIVE	(none)
3. INTRANSITIVE	(none)
4. INTRANSITIVE	(none)
5. TRANSITIVE	the ball
6. INTRANSITIVE	(none)
7. INTRANSITIVE	(none)
8. TRANSITIVE	my car
9. TRANSITIVE	the book
10. INTRANSITIVE	(none)

◇练习 10, p. 198.

动词	宾语
1. me	I was awakened by a noise.
2. (no change)	
3. the mistake	The mistake was discovered by Alice.
4. (no change)	
5. (no change)	
6. the chair	The chair was fixed by Anita.
7. (no change)	
8. (no change)	
9. (no change)	
10. (no change)	
11. a quiz	A quiz was announced by the teacher.
12. (no change)	
13. (no change)	
14. (no change)	

◇练习 11, p. 199.

Passive (checked) sentences: 2, 4, 6, 9

◇练习 12, p. 199.

passive verb	action performed by
1. are used	unknown
2. was opened	Shelley
3. will be translated	unknown
4. was stolen	unknown
5. were taken	a professional photographer
6. is going to be built	unknown
7. has been rented	a young family
8. has been rented	unknown

◇练习 13, p. 200.

Unnecessary by-phrases: 1, 3, 6, 8

◇练习 14, p. 200.

1. The soccer game has been canceled.
2. The meeting has been canceled by the president.
3. Beer and wine are served at that restaurant.
4. I was confused in class yesterday.
5. I was confused by the teacher's directions.
6. The dishes haven't been washed yet.
7. They should be washed soon.
8. Was this sweater washed in hot water?

9. Wool sweaters should not be washed in hot water.
10. I was invited to the party by Luis.
11. Have you been invited to the party?

◇练习 15, p. 201.

1. Sometimes keys are hidden under cars.
2. Cats hide under cars.
3. Students are taught by teachers.
4. Students study a lot.
5. Cereal is often eaten at breakfast.
6. Cats eat cat food.
7. Mice are eaten by cats.
8. Songs are sung to children by their mothers.
9. Children sing songs in school.
10. Thai food is cooked in Thai restaurants.
11. Chefs cook in restaurants.

◇练习 16, p. 201.

1. are considering..., is being considered
2. are watching..., are being watched
3. are painting..., is being painted
4. is fixing..., is being fixed
5. was fixing..., was being fixed
6. are meeting..., is being met
7. were moving..., was being moved
8. were singing..., was being sung
9. are discovering..., are still being discovered

◇练习 17, p. 202.

1. is being played
2. was being cleaned
3. is being built
4. is being read
5. were being watched
6. was being flown

◇练习 18, p. 203.

1. b
2. b
3. b
4. a
5. b

◇练习 19, p. 203.

- I/C corrections
1. I It was happened many years ago.
 2. C (none)
 3. I I went to school yesterday.
 4. I Two firefighters were injured while they were ighting the fire.
 5. I Sara was accidentally broke the window.
 6. I Kara ate a snack when she got home from school.
 7. C (none)
 8. I —I am agree with you.
 9. I The little boy fell down while he was running in the park.
 10. I The swimmer ~~was~~ died from a shark attack.
 11. C (none)
 12. I —I was slept for nine hours last night.

◇练习 20, p. 204.

1. Class might be canceled.
2. Medicine can be prescribed by a doctor.
3. This report must be signed by Mr. Hook.
4. A new post office may be built on First Street.
5. Stamps have to be placed in the upper right-hand corner of an envelope.
6. That fence ought to be painted.
7. The assignment must be done by all of the students.

◇练习 21, p. 204.

1. shouldn't be put off
2. must be written
3. can be taught
4. could be killed
5. ought to be divided
6. must be sold
7. will not be known
8. has to be torn down..., can be built

◇练习 22, p. 205.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. has to be returned | 6. can be put away |
| 2. should be returned | 7. may be thrown away |
| 3. must be sent | 8. might be picked up |
| 4. could be sent | 9. will be cleaned up |
| 5. should be sent | |

◇练习 23, p. 205.

- | active/passive | verb |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. ACTIVE | have used |
| 2. PASSIVE | have been used |
| 3. PASSIVE | are used |
| 4. ACTIVE | show |
| 5. PASSIVE | is shown |
| 6. PASSIVE | were made |
| 7. PASSIVE | were worn |
| 8. ACTIVE | became |
| 9. ACTIVE | wear |
| 10. PASSIVE | are sold |
| 11. PASSIVE | are made and sold |
| 12. PASSIVE | is being sold |
| 13. PASSIVE | can be bought |
| 14. ACTIVE | Do own |
| 15. PASSIVE | was made |

◇练习 24, p. 206.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. is being repaired | 9. must be used... |
| 2. was being repaired | can produce |
| 3. repaired | 10. are manufactured |
| 4. is made | 11. can be used...can be |
| 5. should not carry | recycled..., should |
| 6. ought to be kept | not be thrown away |
| 7. are sent | 12. must be protected |
| 8. has already been hired | 13. can be found |

◇练习 25, p. 207.

1. are loved . . . brings . . . are often used . . . can be found
2. exist..., are found..., have
3. are carried..., carries..., were introduced
4. are appreciated..., is made..., is gathered..., are eaten

5. are made..., do not come..., are made
6. may be planted..., grown..., survive

◇练习 26,p. 207.

I.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1. to | 6. of |
| 2. about | 7. with |
| 3. from | 8. in |
| 4. of | 9. about |
| 5. with | 10. with |

II.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 11. in | 18. of |
| 12. with | 19. in |
| 13. of | 20. with |
| 14. to | 21. for |
| 15. to | |
| 16. with | |
| 17. from | |

III.

◇练习 27,p. 208.

- The little girl is excited about her coming birthday party.
- Mr. and Mrs. Rose are devoted to each other.
-I am lost.
- The students are bored with their chemistry project.
- are composed of recycled products.
- He is hurt.
- How well are you prepared for the driver's license test?
- Mary has been engaged to Paul for five years.

◇练习 28,p. 209.

- | | |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. interesting | 6. fascinating |
| 2. interested | 7. bored . . . confused |
| 3. exciting | 8. boring..., confusing |
| 4. excited | 9. interesting |
| 5. fascinated | 10. fascinating..., surprising |

◇练习 29,p. 209.

- | | |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| 1. boring | 9. boring |
| 2. interested | 10. fascinating |
| 3. confused | 11. fascinated |
| 4. exciting | 12. fascinating |
| 5. confused | 13. embarrassing |
| 6. interesting | 14. shocking...shocked |
| 7. surprising | 15. exciting..., excited |
| 8. bored | |

◇练习 30,p. 211.

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. confusing | 6. interested |
| 2. frustrated | 7. interesting |
| 3. confusing | 8. exhausting..., tired |
| 4. embarrassed | 9. frightening |
| 5. embarrassing | 10. frightened |

◇练习 31,p. 211.

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. c | 4. a |
| 2. a | 5. c |
| 3. b | |

◇练习 32,p. 212.

- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| 1. sick | 7. rich |
| 2. lost | 8. arrested |
| 3. dizzy | 9. dressed |
| 4. bored | 10. wet |
| 5. hungry | 11. invited |
| 6. late | 12. stolen |

◇练习 33, p. 213.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Get | 10. got |
| 2. got | 11. 'm/am getting |
| 3. am getting | 12. got |
| 4. to get | 13. 's/is getting |
| 5. got | 14. get |
| 6. getting..., to get | 15. 'm/am getting |
| 7. 's/is getting | 16. get |
| 8. Get | 17. 'm/am getting |
| 9. got | 18. getting |

◇练习 34, p. 214.

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 1. B,C | 5. B,C |
| 2. A | 6. A |
| 3. B,C | 7. A |
| 4. A | 8. B,C |

◇练习 35, p. 214.

- | | |
|-------------|-------|
| 1. Ø | 5. is |
| 2. is | 6. Ø |
| 3. are...am | 7. Ø |
| 4. Ø | 8. Ø |

◇练习 36, p. 215.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. used to get | 4. used to work |
| 2. is used to working | 5. is used to teaching |
| 3. used to attend | 6. am used to eating |

◇练习 37, p. 215.

1. I was supposed to return this book to the library.
2. We are supposed to read Chapter 9 before class tomorrow.
3. I was supposed to go to a party last night, but I stayed home.
4. We are supposed to do Exercise 10 for homework.
5. is supposed to rain tomorrow.
6. am supposed to take one pill every six hours.
7. I am supposed to dust the furniture and (to) vacuum the carpet.

◇练习 38, p. 216.

1. are supposed to be
2. were supposed to sweep/clean
3. was supposed to send
4. are supposed to give
5. are supposed to clean
6. am... supposed to register
7. was supposed to cook
8. are supposed to take off

◇练习 39, p. 217.

1. The moving boxes were packed by Pierre.
2. My uncle ;:'as died in the war.
3. Miami is located in Florida.
4. (no change,)

5. Mr. Rivera is interested in finding a new career.
6. Did you tell everyone the shocking news?
7. After ten years, I am finally used to this wet and rainy climate.
8. The newspaper is supposed to come every morning before eight.
9. The Millers have been married to each other for 60 years.
10. I ~~am~~ used to drink coffee with cream, but now I drink it black.
11. What was happened at the party last night?
12. Several people almost got killed when the fireworks exploded over them.
13. A new parking garage is being built for our office.
14. I have been living in England for several years, so I am accustomed to driving on the left side of the road.

第十一章 可数/不可数名词与冠词

◇练习 1, p. 218.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. a game | 14. an hour |
| 2. an office | 15. a star |
| 3. a car | 16. an eye |
| 4. a friend | 17. a new car |
| 5. a mountain | 18. an old car |
| 6. a rock | 19. a used car |
| 7. an army | 20. an uncle |
| 8. an egg | 21. a house |
| 9. an island | 22. an honest mistake |
| 10. an ocean | 23. a hospital |
| 11. an umbrella | 24. a hand |
| 12. a university | 25. an ant |
| 13. a horse | 26. a neighbor |

◇练习 2, p. 218.

These do not complete the sentences:

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 3. c | 5. a |
| d | e | c |
| e | 4. d | f |
| h | f | h |
| 2. c | g | 6. d |
| f | h | g |

◇练习 3, p. 219.

- | one | some |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. words | words |
| 2. Ø | vocabulary |
| 3. Ø | slang |
| 4. Ø | homework |
| 5. assignment | assignments |
| 6. Ø | grammar |
| 7. dress | dresses |
| 8. Ø | clothes |
| 9. Ø | clothing |
| 10. parent | parents |
| 11. family | families |
| 12. Ø | knowledge |
| 13. Ø | information |
| 14. fact | facts |
| 15. Ø | luck |
| 16. Ø | garbage |

◇练习 4, p. 220.

1. bread, corn, peas, rice, sandwiches

2. apple trees, grass, lakes, mountains, plants, scenery
3. bracelets, jewels, jewelry, rings
4. equipment, hardware, machines, machinery, tools

◇练习 5, p. 220.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. one chair | 14. many games |
| 2. much furniture | 15. much water |
| 3. many vegetables | 16. one parent |
| 4. much clothing | 17. much sand |
| 5. one vegetable | 18. many professors |
| 6. many clothes | 19. much dust |
| 7. much fruit | 20. much money |
| 8. many facts | 21. much stuff |
| 9. much grammar | 22. one thing |
| 10. one word | 23. many things |
| 11. many idioms | 24. much English |
| 12. much vocabulary | 25. much toast |
| 13. many cars | |

◇练习 6, p. 221.

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. is...snow | 7. pride...children |
| 2. is... weather | 8. people..., intelligence |
| 3. Sunshine is | 9. peace |
| 4. knowledge | 10. hospitality, |
| 5. fun | 11. beef...was |
| 6. factories..., pollution | 12. is , ... fog |

◇练习 7, p. 222.

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. many apples | 13. isn't much news |
| 2. much fruit | 14. many articles are |
| 3. much mail | 15. much fun |
| 4. many letters | 16. many stars are |
| 5. much English | 17. isn't much sunshine |
| 6. much slang | 18. Is . . . much pollution |
| 7. many words are | 19. much luck |
| 8. much coffee | 20. are many kinds |
| 9. many sandwiches | 21. is . . . much violence |
| 10. much sugar | 22. much makeup |
| 11. many courses | 23. many cars |
| 12. much homework | 24. Is . . . much traffic |

◇练习 8, p. 223.

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. many letters are | 11. much homework (/) |
| 2. much mail (/) | 12. many grandchildren |
| 3. many men have | 13. many pages are |
| 4. many families are | 14. many libraries are |
| 5. many sentences are | 15. many glasses |
| 6. much chalk(/)is | 16. much fun (/) |
| 7. much English (/) | 17. much education (/) |
| 8. much..., literature | 18. much soap (/) |
| 9. many..., words | 19. many islands are |
| 10. much gasoline (/) | 20. many people (/) |
| much petrol (/) | 21. many zeroes/zeros are |

◇练习 9, p. 224.

Circled words are in boldface:

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. a flower | 11. a dream |
| 2. some/many flowers | 12. an interesting dream |
| 3. a coin | 13. some/many questions |

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 4. some/much money | 14. some/much soap |
| 5. some/many coins | 15. a bar of soap |
| 6. some/much salt | 16. some/much beauty |
| 7. an error | 17. a cup of tea |
| 8. a mistake | 18. an unsafe place |
| 9. an honest mistake | 19. some/much fruit |
| 10. some/many mistakes | 20. some/many pieces of fruit |

◇练习 10, p. 224.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. a little music (/) | 9. a few questions |
| 2. a few songs | 10. a few people (/) |
| 3. a little help (/) | 11. a few..., minutes |
| 4. a little English (/) | 12. a little light (/) |
| 5. a few..., apples | 13. a little homework (/) |
| 6. a little honey (/) | 14. a little ... grammar (/) |
| 7. a little advice (/) | 15. a few flowers |
| 8. a few suggestions | 16. a little progress (/) |

◇练习 11, p. 225.

- Kim has applied to a university in England.
- gave her some jewelry and a poem he had written.
- The politician wanted specific suggestions for her speech on the economy.
- Some of the homework for my English class was easy, but many of the assignments were unclear.
- Diane has been to Rome several times recently. She always has a wonderful time.
- Many parents need advice about raising children.
- The boys played together in the sand and dirt for hours.
- A person doesn't need much equipment to play baseball: just a ball and a bat.
- Much happiness can come from enjoying the simple things in life.

◇练习 12, p. 225.

- Plants are the oldest living things on earth. (2)
- Scientists divide living things into two groups: plants and animals. Generally speaking, plants stay in one place, but animals move around. (7)
- Flowers, grass, and trees grow every place where people live. Plants also grow in deserts, in oceans, on mountaintops, and in polar regions. (7)
- Plants are useful to people. We eat them. We use them for clothing. We build houses from them. Plants are also important to our health. We get many kinds of beneficial drugs from plants. In addition, plants provide beauty and enjoyment to all our lives. (7)
- Crops are plants that people grow for food. Nature can ruin crops. Bad weather--such as too much rain or too little rain--can destroy fields of corn or wheat. Natural disasters such as floods and storms have caused farmers many problems since people first began to grow their own food. (9)
- Food is a necessity for all living things. All animals and plants need to eat. Most plants take what they need through their roots and their leaves. The majority of insects live solely on plants. Many birds have a diet of worms and insects. Reptiles eat small animals, eggs, and insects. (15)

◇练习 13, p. 226.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. cup | 11. bowl, cup, piece, |
| 2. pounds | pound, kilo |
| 3. bowl, cup | 12. sheets |
| 4. glass, bottle, quart | 13. loaf |
| 5. piece | 14. spoonful |
| 6. gallons | 15. tube |
| 7. bottle, gallon, | 16. bar, piece |
| quart | 17. piece |
| 8. piece | 18. piece |

9. bottle, glass
10. pieces

19. pieces
20. pieces

◇练习 14, p. 227.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------|
| 1. jar | 6. bag, box |
| 2. bottle, box | 7. jar |
| 3. box, bottle | 8. bottle |
| 4. jar, bag, can/tin | 9. box, bag |
| 5. can/tin | 10. can/tin |

◇练习 15, p. 227.

1. many suitcases
2. much suntan oil
3. many pairs of sandals
4. many tubes of toothpaste
5. many kilos of luggage
6. much money

◇练习 16, p. 228.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. a letter | 10. a suggestion |
| 2. some mail | 11. an interesting story |
| 3. some equipment | 12. some interesting news |
| 4. a tool | 13. a poem |
| 5. some food | 14. some poetry |
| 6. an apple | 15. a song |
| 7. some old clothing | 16. some Indian music |
| 8. an old shirt | 17. a new word |
| 9. some advice | 18. some new slang |

◇练习 17, p. 228.

- | singular | plural |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. a bird | I saw some birds~ |
| 2. some corn | Ø (none possible) |
| 3. some tea | Ø (none possible) |
| 4. a flower | I picked some flowers. |
| 5. some water | Ø (none possible) |
| 6. a horse | I fed grass to some horses. |
| 7. some jewelry | Ø (none possible) |
| 8. some honey | Ø (none possible) |
| 9. a new shirt | Tom bought some new shirts. |
| 10. some soap | Ø (none possible) |

◇练习 18, p. 229.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A dog | 13. the telephone |
| 2. the dog | 14. the cat |
| 3. a desk...a bed | 15. A : a cat |
| ... a chest of drawers | B: a dog |
| 4. the desk...the top | 16. a poem |
| drawer | 17. A: the lecture |
| 5. the basement | B: The speaker... |
| 6. a basement | an interesting talk |
| 7. a subject... a verb | 18. A: a cup of coffee |
| 8. the subject..., the verb | B: the cafe..., the |
| 9. a meeting | corner |
| 10. the meeting | 19. a quiet street |
| 11. a long distance... | 20. A: the restaurant |
| a telephone | B: the street |
| 12. The distance...the sun | 21. A: a job |
| ... the earth | B: a restaurant |

◇练习 19,p. 230.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ø Dogs | 5. the milk...the |
| 2. the dogs | refrigerator..., the table |
| 3. Ø Fruit | 6. Ø Milk |
| 4. The fruit | 7. Ø wine |
| 8. the wine | 16. Ø Copper |
| 9. Ø meat | 17. Ø candles... Ø light |
| 10. The meat | ... Ø electricity |
| 11. the potatoes | 18. Ø books... |
| 12. Ø Potatoes | Ø textbooks... |
| Ø vegetables | Ø workbooks . . . |
| 13. Ø Frogs... Ø small | Ø dictionaries... |
| animals... Ø tails ~.. | Ø encyclopedias... |
| Ø Turtles... Ø trails | Ø entertainment... |
| ... Ø hard shells | Ø novels... Ø poetry |
| 14. The frogs . . . The turtles | 19. The books |
| 15. the weather | |

◇练习 20,p. 231.

- some coffee..., some milk... The coffee... The milk
- some soup..., a sandwich... The soup... the sandwich
- some clothes...a suit...a shirt...a tie... The suit . . . The shirt..., the tie
- A: an accident... A man..., a Volkswagen..., a bus
B: the accident
A: The man..., the Volkswagen... the bus
- a man...a woman...an argument...The man... the woman..., the woman..., the man... the argument
- some birds...a tree...a cat...the tree... The birds..., the cat..., the cat..., the birds

◇练习 21,p. 233.

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1. a man | 11. a solution |
| 2. a truck | 12. the solution |
| 3. a covered bridge | 13. the truck |
| 4. The bridge | 14. the bridge |
| 5. a small river | 15. the river |
| 6. the man | 16. a great idea |
| 7. the man | 17. the man |
| 8. the top | 18. the tires |
| 9. the bridge | 19. the river |
| 10. the bridge | |

◇练习 22,p. 234.

- B: An egg
A: the egg
- ~~Ø~~ Eggs
- a scientific fact... ~~Ø~~ steam... ~~Ø~~ water
- ~~Ø~~ Gas
- The gas
- ~~Ø~~ Newspapers... an important source.
~~Ø~~ information
- The sun...a star...the sun... ~~Ø~~ heat .. ~~Ø~~ light
... ~~Ø~~ energy
- Ducks
- ~~Ø~~ Pizza ~~Ø~~ cheese . . . ~~Ø~~ tomatoes . . ~~Ø~~ Pizza
... ~~Ø~~ Italian
- A: the pizza
B: the big piece..., the small one

11. ~~G~~gold . . . an excellent conductor... ~~O~~ electricity
/... a spaceship
12. the kitchen . . . a sandwich
13. A: the plumber. The sink
B: the water supply ... the house., the leak
14. the man . . . the president
15. a president
16. B: a blouse . . . ~~O~~ jewelry
A: the blouse
17. the floor., the corner., the sofa
18. ~~O~~ furniture., a sofa., an easy chair
19. ~~O~~ Ffurniture
20. A vegetarian... ~~O~~ meat
21. the continents., the world
22. an easy exam., the right answers., the questions
. . . the exam
23. a job interview... ~~O~~ nice clothes
24. a mouse... ~~O~~ Rrats . . . ~~O~~ long, skinny tails
25. ~~O~~ wood... ~~O~~ coal... ~~O~~ heat... ~~O~~ gas... ~~O~~ oli...
~~O~~ electricity
26. an interesting experience... A man., a blue suit...
a bouquet... ~~O~~ flowers., the man., the flowers
... the door
27. ~~O~~ Ice cream
28. ~~O~~ steamed rice . . . ~~O~~ fish... ~~O~~ vegetables . . . The rice
. . . The fish... The vegetables
29. an exceptionally talented person
30. A: the letter
B: A strong wind., the floor., the dog., the
scraps., the wastebasket
31. A: the tape player
B: the shelves
A: the batteries
32. ~~O~~ Cchalk... a necessity
33. An efficient transportation system., an essential part

◇练习 23, p. 236.

1. ~~O~~ Pparis
2. The Atlantic ~~O~~cean... the Pacific
3. ~~O~~ Dr. James
4. ~~O~~ Mt. Rainier... the Cascade Mountain Range
5. The Nile . . . ~~O~~ Africa
6. ~~O~~ Toronto . . . ~~O~~ Montreal
7. ~~O~~ Mr. Kilimanjaro... ~~O~~ Kenya
8. ~~O~~ New Zealand
9. The Himalayas . . . ~~O~~ Pakistan... ~~O~~ India . . . ~~O~~ Tibet
... ~~O~~ Nepal
10. ~~O~~ President Davis
11. ~~O~~ Ho Chi Minh City... ~~O~~ Vietnam... ~~O~~ Saigon
12. The Andes Mountains

◇练习 24, p. 237.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. the Dead Sea | 9. North America |
| 2. the Amazon River | 10. the Indian Ocean |
| 3. Shanghai | 11. the Netherlands |
| 4. the Sahara Desert | 12. North America |
| 5. the Thames River | 13. Tibet |
| 6. Europe | 14. The Urals |

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| 7. the Alps | 15. Lagos |
| 8. Lake Tanganyika | 16. the United Arab Emirates |

◇练习 25,p. 238.

1. I'm taking **Biology** 101 this semester.
2. I'm taking history, biology, **English**, and calculus this semester.
3. Some lab classes meet on **Saturday**.
4. Marta lives on a busy street. Marta lives at 2358 **Olive Street**.
5. We went to **Canada** last summer. **We** went to **Montreal** in **July**.
6. My roommate likes **Vietnamese** food, and **I** like **Thai** food.
7. The religion of **Saudi Arabia** is **Islam**.
8. Shelia works for the **Xerox Corporation**. It is a very large corporation.
9. Pedro is from **Latin America**.
10. My uncle lives in **St. Louis**. I'm going to visit Uncle Bill next spring.
11. We went to a park. **We** went to **Waterfall Park**.
12. Are you going to the **University of Oregon** or **Oregon State University**?
13. Alice goes to a university in **Oregon**.
14. The next assignment in literature class is to read **The Adventures of Tom Sawyer**.
15. In France, they call it "**Bastille Day**."

◇练习 26,p. 238.

1. Do you know **Robert Jones**?
2. (no change)
3. I like **Uncle Joe** and **Aunt Sara**.
4. (no change)
5. **Susan W. Miller** is a professor.
6. I am in **Prof. Miller's** class.
7. The weather is cold in **January**.
8. (no change)
9. I have three classes on **Monday**.
10. I would like to visit **Los Angeles**.
11. It s the largest city in **California**.
12. (no change)
13. There are fifty states in the **United States of America**.
14. (no change)
15. Today we can fly across the **Atlantic Ocean** in hours.
16. (no change)
17. Mark lives on **Market Street** near **Washington High School**.
18. (no change)
19. Our family stayed at the **Hilton Hotel** in **Bangkok**.
20. Yoko is **Japanese**, but she can also speak **German**.

◇练习 28,p. 239.

1. The mail carrier brought only one letter today.
2. Mr. Dale gave his class a long history assignment for the weekend.
3. Tariq speaks several languages, including Arabic and Spanish.
4. Dr. Kim gives all her patients a toothbrush (OR toothbrushes) and toothpaste at their dental appointments.
5. I usually have a glass of water with my lunch.
6. A helpful policeman gave us ~~an~~ information about the city.
7. This cookie recipe calls for two cups of nuts.
8. Many vegetables are believed to have cancer-fighting ingredients.
9. Only applicants with the necessary ~~experiences~~ should apply for the computer position~
10. When Vicki likes a movie, she sees it several times.
11. A popular children's story is Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs.
12. Is it possible to stop all ~~violences~~ in the world?

◇练习 1, p. 240.

1. who helped me move the refrigerator
1: I thanked
2: He helped
2. who was wearing a gray suit
1: woman asked
2: She was wearing
3. who aided the rebels
1: The woman put
2: She aided
4. who was wearing a blue coat
1: I saw
2: He was wearing
5. who broke the vase
1: The girl apologized
2: She broke

◇练习 2, p. 241.

1. The woman who answered the phone was polite.
2. The man who sang at the concert has a good voice.
3. We enjoyed the actors who played the leading roles.
4. The girl who fell down the stairs is hurt.
5. I read about the soccer player who was injured in the game yesterday.

◇练习 3, p. 241.

1. The people who live next to me are nice.
S V
They live next to me.
S V
2. The people whom Kate visited yesterday were French.
S V
Kate visited them yesterday.
S V
3. The people whom I saw at the park were having a picnic.
S V
I saw them.
S V
4. The students who go to this school are friendly.
S V
They go to this school.
S V
5. The woman whom you met last week lives in Mexico.
S V
You met her last week.

◇练习 4, p. 242.

1. The woman whom Tack met was polite.
2. I like the woman who manages my uncle's store.
3. The singer whom we heard at the concert was wonderful.
4. The people who came to dinner brought a small gift.
5. What is the name of the woman whom Tom invited to the dance?

◇练习 5, p. 242.

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 1. who | 6. who(m) | 11. who(m) |
| 2. who(m) | 7. who | 12. who(m) |
| 3. who | 8. who | 13. who |
| 4. who(m) | 9. who | 14. who(m) |

5. who 10. who 15. who

◇练习 6, p. 243.

1. O ~~that~~ 6. S
2. S 7. S
3. S 8. O ~~that~~
4. O ~~who~~ 9. S
5. S 10. O ~~that~~

◇练习 7, p. 243.

1. That man ~~that~~ I saw was wearing a black hat.
2. (no change,)
3. The fruit ~~that~~ I bought today...
4. a person ~~that~~ I will never forget.
5. (no change,)
6. The girl that sits in front of Richard has long black hair ~~that~~ she wears
7. (no change,)
8. (no change-)

◇练习 8, 13.244.

1. who/that 4. who/that
2. who(m)/that/ Ø 5. who/that
3. who(m)/that/ Ø 6. who(m)/that/ Ø

◇练习 9, p. 245.

1. C 5. B
2. A 6. A
3. C 7. C
4. C 8. C

◇练习 10, p. 245.

1. who/that designs buildings.
2. who/that doesn't eat meat.
3. which/that forms when water boils.
4. which/that has a hard shell and can live in water or on land.
5. who/that leaves society and lives completely alone.
6. which/that grows in hot climates and produces large bunches of yellow fruit.
7. which/that can be shaped and hardened to form many useful things.
8. which/that, cannot be understood or explained.

◇练习 11, p. 246.

1. O ~~which~~ 6. S
2. S 7. O ~~which~~
3. O ~~that~~ 8. S
4. O ~~which~~ 9. S
5. S 10. O ~~that~~

◇练习 12, p. 246.

1. which/that/ Ø 4. which/that
2. which/that 5. which/that/ Ø
3. which/that/ Ø 6. which/that

◇练习 13, p. 247.

Incorrect (crossed out,) pronouns :

1. them 4. him
2. it 5. her
3. them 6. him

◇练习 14, p. 247.

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. A,C,D | 8. C,D |
| 2. A,D | 9. A,C,D |
| 3. C,D,E | 10. C,D,E |
| 4. A,C,D | 11. A,C,D |
| 5. A,D | 12. A,C,D |
| 6. C,D | 13. C,D |
| 7. C,D,E | |

◇练习 15,p. 248.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. students..., are | 6. student..., is |
| 2. people..., are | 7. people..., live |
| 3. compound..., consists | 8. person..., makes |
| 4. students..., speak | 9. artists..., make |
| 5. people..., know | |

◇练习 16,p. 249.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. that...for
which..., for
Ø... for
for which . . . Ø | 3. that...in
which..., in
Ø... in
in which . . . Ø |
| 2. that...to
which..., to
121... to
to which... Ø | 4. that...with
whom..., with
Ø... with
with whom... Ø |

◇练习 17,p. 250.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. that...to
whom..., to
Ø... to
to whom . . . Ø | 4. whom...for
that..., for
Ø... for
for whom... Ø |
| 2. that...with
which . . . with
Ø... with
with which . . . Ø | 5. that...for
which..., for
Ø... for
for which . . . Ø |
| 3. whom...about
that..., about
Ø... about
about whom... Ø | 6. that...in
which..., in
Ø... in
in which ... Ø |

◇练习 18,p. 250.

Adjective clauses:

1. we listened to at Sara's apartment
2. I accidentally broke Ø
3. we were waiting for
4. I always enjoy talking to about politics
5. I had just written Ø
6. I've been interested in for a long time
7. I talked to at the reception
8. I want to visit Ø next year
9. I was looking at
10. I wanted Ø
11. we were listening to at Jim's yesterday '
12. I'm not familiar with
13. I was carrying Ø
14. I can always rely on for support and help
15. our thurteen-year-old is responsible for
16. I was reading Ø
17. I bought Ø

18. Ø which I enjoy studying the most
19. I waved at
20. for whom Alex was waiting

◇练习 19, p. 251.

1. whose daughter is a pilot
1: I know a man.
2: His daughter is a pilot.
2. whose husband is out of work
1: The woman found a job.
2: Her husband is out of work.
3. whose wallet I found
1: The man gave me a reward.
2: I found his wallet.

◇练习 20, p. 251.

1. The firefighters are very brave. Their department has won many awards.
→ The firefighters whose department has won many awards are very brave.
2. I talked to the boy. His kite was caught in a tree.
→ I talked to the boy whose kite was caught in a tree.
3. The family is staying in a motel. Their house burned down.
→ The family whose house burned down is staying in a motel.
4. I watched a little girl. Her dog was chasing a ball in the park.
→ I watched a little girl whose dog was chasing a ball in the park.
5. The reporter won an award. Her articles explained global warming.
→ The reporter whose articles explained global warming won an award.
6. I know a man. His daughter entered college at the age of fourteen.
→ I know a man whose daughter entered college at the age of fourteen.
7. We observed a language teacher. Her teaching methods included role-playing.
→ We observed a language teacher whose teaching methods included role-playing.
8. The teachers are very popular. Their methods include role-playing.
→ The teachers whose methods include role-playing are very popular.

◇练习 21, p. 252.

True (checked) answers:

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 1. a, c | 5. a |
| 2. c | 6. a, c |
| 3. b, c | 7. b |
| 4. c | |

◇练习 22, p. 253.

1. which/that is used to carry boats with goods and/or passengers
2. whose children were doing poorly in her class
- 3: Ted bought for his wife on their anniversary
4. whose views I share
5. which/that had backbones
6. which/that disrupted the global climate and caused mass extinctions of animal life

◇练习 23, p. 253.

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------|
| 1. who/that | 7. which/that |
| 2. who/that..., whom | 8. whom/that/ Ø |
| 3. who/that..., which/that | 9. whose |
| ... which/that | 10. which/that |
| 4. who/that | 11. who/that |
| 5. which/that/ Ø | 12. whom/that/ Ø |
| 6. whose | |

◇练习 24, p. 254.

1. A movie that **looks** interesting opens tomorrow.
2. My family lived in a house which ~~it~~ was built in 1900.
3. The little boy **who** was lost asked for directions.
4. I don't know people ~~whose~~ **their** lives are carefree.
5. It is important to help people who **have** no money.
6. At the airport, I was waiting for friends **who(m)/that/ Ø** I hadn't seen ~~them~~ for a long time.
7. The woman **who/that lives** next door likes to
8. My teacher has two cats ~~whose~~ **their** names are Ping and Pong.
9. A beautiful garden ~~that~~ separates my house from the street.
10. I asked the children who **were** sitting on the bench to help us.
11. The school that my children attend ~~it~~ is very good academically.
12. I enjoyed the songs which we sang ~~them~~.
13. One of the places that I like to visit **is** Central Park.
14. The movie we saw ~~it~~ last evening was very exciting.
15. I sent the parents **whose son** I hiked with a picture of us on Mt. Fuji.
16. Do you know the man who **works** in that office?
17. A mother **whose** daughter is in my class often brings cookies for the children.
18. The CD player **which/that/Ø** I bought can hold several CDs at once.
19. The bed which I sleep **in** is very comfortable. OR The bed **in** which I sleep is very comfortable.
20. ...problems which I have had ~~them~~ since ! came here.

第十三章 动名词和不定式

◇练习 1, p. 256.

- | | |
|-----------|---------------------|
| 1. moving | 7. reviewing |
| 2. living | 8. running |
| 3. taking | 9. driving |
| 4. buying | 10. retiring |
| 5. giving | 11. getting married |
| 6. doing | 12. working |

◇练习 2, p. 256.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. went dancing | 6. go sightseeing |
| 2. is going to go hiking | 7. go camping |
| 3. went shopping | 8. go sailing |
| 4. go swimming | 9. go skiing |
| 5. goes fishing | 10. went skydiving |

◇练习 3, p. 257.

- | | |
|--------|----------|
| 1. INF | to wait |
| 2. GER | walking |
| 3. INF | to help |
| 4. GER | writing |
| 5. INF | to call |
| 6. GER | quitting |
| 7. INF | to work |
| 8. INF | to grow |

◇练习 4, p. 258.

I.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------|
| 1. to work | 7. to work |
| 2. working | 8. to work |
| 3. to work | 9. working |
| 4. working | 10. to work |
| 5. to work | 11. working |
| 6. to work/working | 12. working |

II.

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 13. to leave | 18. leaving |
|--------------|-------------|

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 14. to leave | 19. to leave |
| 15. leaving | 20. to leave |
| 16. leaving | 21. leaving |
| 17. leaving | 22. to leave |

III.

- | | |
|-------------|-------------------|
| 23. to know | 28. to know |
| 24. to know | 29. to know/known |
| 25. to know | 30. to know |
| 26. knowing | 31. to know |
| 27. to know | 32. to know/known |

◇练习 5, p. 258.

- | | | |
|------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 9. A | 17. B |
| 2. A | 10. A | 18. B |
| 3. B | 11. A | 19. A |
| 4. B | 12. B | 20. B |
| 5. A | 13. B | 21. B |
| 6. B | 14. B | 22. B |
| 7. B | 15. A | 23. B |
| 8. B | 16. B | 24. A |

◇练习 6, p. 261.

- | | | |
|--------|---------|---------|
| 1. B | 6. A,B | 11. A,B |
| 2. A,B | 7. A,B | 12. A,B |
| 3. A,B | 8. B | 13. B |
| 4. B | 9. A | 14. A |
| 5. A,B | 10. A,B | 15. B |

◇练习 7, p. 261.

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. to go | 18. to pass |
| 2. to buy | 19. hoping |
| 3. looking | 20. to concentrate..., to make |
| 4. to go shopping | 21. to go |
| 5. passing | 22. to do/doing |
| 6. to go fishing | 23. to help |
| 7. to cry/crying | 24. to learn |
| 8. to go/going | 25. driving...to fly |
| 9. to go | 26. to postpone |
| 10. to have | 27. to be |
| 11. to meet | 28. teaching |
| 12. changing | 29. to read/reading |
| 13. camping | 30. to go dancing |
| 14. to arrive | 31. building |
| 15. writing | 32. to play/playing..., to be... |
| 16. jogging | to be |
| 17. to call | 33. to take |

◇练习 8, p. 262.

- I.
- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. of flying | 5. of working |
| 2. for hurting | 6. about walking |
| 3. in helping | 7. of/about owning |
| 4. at listening | |
- II.
- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| 8. for closing | 12. on eating |
| 9. for lending | 13. to finishing |
| 10. on becoming | 14. from making |
| 11. for taking | 15. about..., having |

◇练习 9, p. 263.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. for..., for interrupting | 8. in... in saving |
| 2. in... in learning | 9. about..., about falling |
| 3. for..., for helping | ...making |
| 4. on... on walking | 10. about..., about going |
| 5. for...for losing | 11. to...to going |
| 6. like..., like going | 12. of... of staying |
| 7. at... at drawing | |

◇练习 10, p. 264.

I.

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. about asking | 6. to ask |
| 2. to ask | 7. for asking |
| 3. on asking | 8. to ask |
| 4. about asking | 9. to ask/asking |
| 5. about asking | 10. to ask/asking |

II.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 11. to fix | 16. about fixing |
| 12. to fix/fixing | 17. to fix/fixing |
| 13. to fix | 18. to fix |
| 14. to fix | 19. to fix |
| 15. to fix | 20. fixing |

◇练习 11, p. 265.

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. writing | 6. adopting |
| 2. to install | 7. to take |
| 3. to cash | 8. in using |
| 4. staying | 9. to be |
| 5. to go | 10. to lower |

◇练习 12, p. 265.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. going | 11. for watering |
| 2. of driving | 12. for speaking |
| 3. to park/on parking | 13. on washing |
| 4. to watch/watching | 14. from hitting |
| 5. to cook/cooking | 15. to be |
| 6. baking | 16. repairing |
| 7. of going | 17. to get |
| 8. of/about becoming | 18. to have/on having |
| 9. having | 19. to taking |
| 10. running | 20. about seeing |

◇练习 13, p. 267.

1. by holding
2. by reading
3. by reading
4. by watching
5. by running
6. by treating

◇练习 14, p. 268.

1. I arrived on time by taking a taxi instead of a bus.
2. I put out the fire by pouring water on it.
3. Giraffes can reach the leaves at the tops of trees by
4. I fixed the chair by tightening the loose screws.
5. Sylvia was able to buy an expensive stereo system by saving her money for two years.
6. A hippopotamus can cross a river by walking on the bottom of the riverbed.
7. I figured out how to cook the noodles by reading the directions on the package.

8. Pam finished her project on time by working all through the night.
9. You can figure out how old a tree is by counting its rings.

◇练习 15,p. 268.

- | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. with | 7. by | 13. by |
| 2. by | 8. by | 14. with |
| 3. with | 9. with | 15. with |
| 4. by | 10. with | 16. with |
| 5. by | 11. by | |
| 6. with | 12. with | |

◇练习 16,p. 269.

1. a. It is... to learn
b. Learning... is
2. a. Eating...is
b. It is. .to eat
3. a. Driving...is
b. It is... to drive
4. a. It is...to swim
b. Swimming... is
5. a. Is it...to live
b. Is living
6. a. Is it...to complete
b. Is completing

◇练习 17,p. 270.

1. It is difficult for shy people to meet
2. It is interesting for babies to look
3. it is customary for young children to sleep
4. It is necessary for airline pilots to have
5. It is hard for many teenagers to wake up
6. It is important for elderly people to keep
7. It is boring for people to listen
8. It is necessary for students to have
9. It is impossible for scientists to know
10. It is important for parents to teach
11. It is easy for people to be
12. It is dangerous for small children to cross

◇练习 18,p. 271.

- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| I. | II. |
| 1. for | 8. to |
| 2. to | 9. to |
| 3. to | 10. for |
| 4. for | 11. for |
| 5. to | 12. to |
| 6. to | 13. to |
| 7. for | 14. for |
| | 15. to |

◇练习 19, p. 271.

- | | | |
|--------|--------|---------|
| 1. to | 5. for | 9. to |
| 2. for | 6. to | 10. for |
| 3. for | 7. to | 11. for |
| 4. to | 8. for | |

◇练习 20, p. 271.

1. turned on the TV (in order) to watch the news.
2. goes to the laundromat (in order) to wash his clothes.

3. runs (in order) to get to class on time.
4. open the bedroom windows (in order) to let in some fresh air.
5. writes a letter to his parents (in order) to ask them for some money.
6. have the radio on (in order) to listen to a baseball game.
7. go to the library (in order) to study in peace and quiet.

◇练习 21, p. 272.

1. a. enough time to go
b. too busy to go
2. a. tall enough
b. too short
3. a. enough money
b. too poor
4. a. too hot
b. cool enough
5. a. too sick to eat anything
b. well enough to eat anything
6. a. isn't old enough to stay home by herself
b. too young to stay home by herself

◇练习 22, p. 273.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Φ ...enough | 7. too... Φ |
| 2. too... Φ | 8. Φ ...enough |
| 3. enough... Φ | 9. enough... Φ |
| 4. too... Φ | 10. too...121 |
| 5. Φ ...enough | 11. enough... Φ |
| 6. Φ ...enough | 12. Φ ...enough |

◇练习 23, p. 273.

1. being., to be
2. to stay
3. to help
4. to thank
5. going., to stay
6. to learn
7. to cause., to destroy
8. to recognize., to build., to knock
9. Predicting... to predict., reading., to act... running., counting., to be able to predict

◇练习 24, p. 274.

1. studying
2. jotting
3. to be
4. B: flying
A: crashing
5. A: arguing...to disagree...be
B: raising., to yell
A: to get
6. A: to sneak., paying
B: doing
A: trying to sneak., to have . . . to like., liking... to do
7. to build
8. to do...to do...to do...to do
9. A: doing
B: going shopping
A: going., pretending to be . . . buying
B: to do
A: to get...to buy...to have

- B: Pretending to be . . . buying
 10. B: putting..., forgetting to send
 A: to get..., not remembering
 11. interrupting
 12. to taste..., to make

◇练习 25, p. 276.

1. I decided not to buy a new car.
2. The Johnsons are considering selling their antique store.
3. Sam finally finished building his vacation home in the mountains.
4. My wife and I go -t-o- dancing at the community center every Saturday night.
5. Suddenly, it began to rain/raining and the wind started to blow.
6. The baby is afraid to be/of being away from her mother for any length of time.
7. I am excited about starting college this September.
8. You can send your application by fax.
9. My country is very beautiful. OR My country is too beautiful.
10. It is exciting to drive a sports car.
11. My grandparents enjoy -t-o- traveling across the country in a motor home.
12. Elena made this sweater by hand.
13. Swimming -it- is one of the sports we can participate in at school.
14. That was very good, but I'm too full to eat any more.
15. My mother-in-law went to a tourist shop to buy a disposable camera.
16. Instead of getting her degree in four years, Michelle decided to travel abroad first.
17. Swimming with a group of people is more enjoyable than swimming alone.
18. It is interesting to meet/meeting new people.
19. It is hard for me to stay up past 9:00.
20. The professor thanked his students for doing well on the test.

第十四章 名词性从句

◇练习 1, p. 278.

- | | |
|---|-------------|
| 1. I don't know where Jack
bought his boots. | NOUN CLAUSE |
| 2. Where did Jack buy his boots? | QUESTION |
| 3. I don't understand why Ann left. | NOUN CLAUSE |
| 4. Why did Ann leave? | QUESTION |
| 5. I don't know where your book is. | NOUN CLAUSE |
| 6. Where is your book? | QUESTION |
| 7. When did Bob come? | QUESTION |
| 8. I don't know when Bob came. | NOUN CLAUSE |
| 9. What does "calm" mean? | QUESTION |
| 10. Tarik knows what "calm" means. | NOUN CLAUSE |
| 11. I don't know how long the earth
has existed. | NOUN CLAUSE |
| 12. How long has the earth existed? | QUESTION |

◇练习 2, p. 278.

名词性从句

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| | S | V |
| 1. where [Patty] [went] last night | | |
| | S | V |
| 2. where [Joe's parents] [live] | | |
| | S | V |
| 3. where [Joe] [lives] | | |
| | S | V |
| 4. what time [the movie] [begins] | | |
| | S | V |
| 5. where [Brazil] [is] | | |

- S V
6. what [Estefan] [said]
S V
7. when [the packages] [will arrive]
S V
8. how far [it] [is] to the post office
S V
9. [who] [knocked] on the door
S V
10. [what] [happened] at the party last night

◇练习 3, p. 279.

疑问句

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Why did Tim leave? | why Tim left |
| 2. Where did he go? | where he went |
| 3. Where does he live? | where he lives |
| 4. Where is he now? | where he is now |
| 5. What time will he return? | what time he will return |
| 6. How far is it to his house? | how far it is to his house |
| 7. Who lives next door to him? | who lives next door to him |
| 8. What happened to him? | what happened to him |

◇练习 4, p. 279.

疑问句

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. did Marcos leave? | when Marcos left? |
| 2. did he say? | what he said. |
| 3. is the post office? | where the post office is? |
| 4. is it? | what time it is? |
| 5. did David arrive? | when David arrived. |
| 6. is Anna from? | what country Anna is from. |
| 7. was Kathy | why Kathy was |
| 8. lives | who lives |
| 9. did Eric invite | whom Eric invited |
| 10. borrowed | who borrowed |
| 11. are the restrooms located? | where the restrooms are located? |

◇练习 5, p. 281.

- whom Helen talked to?
- who lives in that apartment?
- what he said.
- what kind of car Pat has.
- how old their children are.
- why you said that.
- where I can catch the bus?
- whom Sara talked to.
- how long Ted has been living here?
- what this word means?

◇练习 6, p. 281.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. A: were you
A: you were | 5. A: Mr. Gow's office is...
is Mr. Gow's office |
| 2. A: did Tom go
B: you said
A: Tom went | 6. A: did she come
B: she came
A: was she
B: she was |
| 3. A: is a bumblebee... | |

- a bumblebee is
 4. A: did Oscar borrow
 B: Oscar borrowed

◇练习 7, p. 282.

名词性从句

- S V
 1. who [that man] [is]
 S V
 2. [who] [called]
 S V
 3. who [those people] [are]
 S V
 4. who [that person] [is]
 S V
 5. [who] [lives] next door to me
 S V
 6. who [my teacher] [will be] next semester
 S V
 7. [who] [will teach] us next semester
 S V
 8. what [a lizard] [is]
 S V
 9. [what] [happened] in class yesterday
 S V
 10. whose hat [this] [is]
 S V
 11. [whose hat] [is] on the table

◇练习 8, p. 282.

1. /...is 6. /...is
 2. is.../ 7. is.../
 3. /...is 8. /...is
 4. is.../ 9. /...is
 5. /...is 10. is.../

◇练习 9, p. 283.

1. who she is.
 2. who they are.
 3. whose book that is.
 4. whose glasses those are?
 5. what a wrench is?
 6. who that woman is.
 7. what a clause is?
 8. what is in that drawer.
 9. who is in that room.
 10. what is on TV tonight.
 11. what a carrot is?
 12. who I am.

◇练习 10, p. 283.

1. whose car that is
 2. whose car is in front of Sam's house
 3. who the best students are
 4. what time dinner is
 5. who's next in line
 6. whose purse this is
 7. what the main ideas of the story are
 8. whose shoes those are under the chair
 9. what causes tornadoes

◇练习 11, p. 284.

1. if (whether) Tom is coming
 2. if (whether) Jin has finished medical school yer

3. if (whether) Daniel has any time off soon
4. if (whether) the flight is on time
5. if (whether) there is enough gas in the car
6. if (whether) Yuki is married
7. if (whether) the Petersons are going to move
8. if (whether) Khaled changed jobs

◇练习 12, p. 285.

1. if I'm going to need
2. if chicken is
3. if the new teaching position includes
4. if there will be a movie
5. if Greg has to come
6. if penguins ever get
7. if you can drive
8. if Nasser has already left

◇练习 13, p. 285.

1. if (whether) Karen is
2. where Karen went?
3. how Pat is feeling
4. if (whether) Pat is feeling
5. if (whether) the bus stops
6. where the bus stops.
7. why Elena is absent
8. if (whether) Elena is going to be absent
9. if (whether) I should buy
10. which book I should buy.
11. if (whether) we are going to have
12. if (whether) there is

◇练习 14, p. 286.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1. rains | 5. run |
| 2. gets | 6. takes |
| 3. like | 7. enjoy |
| 4. runs | 8. seems |

◇练习 15, p. 287.

1. I'm sorry that
2. I predict that
3. I'm surprised that
4. Are you certain that
5. Did you notice that
6. John is pleased that
7. Anna was convinced that
8. It's a fact that
9. A: Guido is delighted that
B: I'm surprised that
10. A: How do you know that
I'm still worried that
11. A: Mrs. Lane hopes that
B: I don't think that
A: I wish that
12. A: Do you think that
B: Everyone knows that
A: I'm not sure that that's true.

◇练习 16, p. 288.

1. (that) I will have a peanut butter sandwich.

2. (that) I should study tonight
3. (that) flying in an airplane is safer than riding in a car.
4. (that) I'll get married someday.
5. (that) a huge monster was chasing me.
6. (that) John "Cat Man" Smith stole Mrs. Adams' jewelry.
7. (that) people are pretty much the same everywhere.
8. (that) high school students in the United States don't study as hard as the students in my country do.
9. (that) he always twirls his mustache when he's nervous?
10. (that) all people are equal.
11. (that) more than half of the people in the world go hungry every day?
12. (that) plastic trash kills thousands of marine animals every year?

◇练习 17, p. 289.

1. I feel (don't feel) that smoking in public places should be prohibited.
2. I regret (don't regret) that I'm living in this country.
3. I would like to know (wouldn't like to know) when I will die.
4. I doubt (don't doubt) that there will be peace in the world soon.
5. I remember (can't remember) what I was like as a child.
6. I wonder (don't wonder) why the world exists.
7. I am afraid (am not afraid) that someone may make unwise decisions about my future.
8. I know (don't know) what I want to do with my life.

◇练习 18, p. 290.

1. The Jensens are pleased that their granddaughter graduated from the university. They are pleased that she was offered a good job.
2. Po is lucky that the smoke alarm in his apartment rang. He is lucky that he woke up and discovered that his apartment building was on fire.
3. Ming Soo was surprised that she didn't fail the math exam. She was surprised that she got one of the highest grades in the class.
4. Karen is sorry that she lent her cousin Mark some money. She is sorry that she can't afford to buy her children new shoes.

◇练习 19, p. 290.

1. that Alice has a car
2. that the library is open
3. that Ann speaks Spanish
4. that Alex passed his French course
5. that Mr. Kozari is going to be at the meeting
6. that the photos are ready to be picked up at the photo shop

◇练习 20, p. 291.

1. Alex said, "Do you smell smoke? "
2. Something is burning," he said,
3. He said, "Do you smell smoke? "Something is burning.. "
4. "Do you smell smoke,? " he said. "Something is burning. "
5. Rachel said, " The game starts at seven. "
6. " The game starts at seven,. We should leave here at Six, " she said.
7. She said," The game starts at seven. We should leave here at six. Can you be ready to leave then? "

◇练习 21, p. 291.

1. Mrs. Hill said, "My children used to take the bus to school. "
2. She said, " We moved closer to the school. "
3. "Now my children can walk to school? " Mrs. Hill said.

4. "Do you live near the school?" she asked.
5. "Yes, we live two blocks away?" I replied.
6. "How long have you lived here?" Mrs. Hill wanted to know.
7. I said, "We've lived here for five years. How long have you lived here?"
8. "We've lived here for two years," Mrs. Hill said. "How do you like living here?"
9. "It's a nice community," I said. "It's a good place to raise children."

◇练习 22, p. 292.

"Why weren't you in class yesterday?" Mr. Garcia asked me.

"I had to stay home and take care of my pet bird," I said. "He wasn't feeling well."

"What? Did you miss class because of your pet bird?" Mr. Garcia demanded to know.

I replied, "Yes, sir. That's correct. I couldn't leave him alone. He looked so miserable."

"Now I've heard every excuse in the world," Mr. Garcia said. Then he threw his arms in the air and walked away.

◇练习 23, p. 293.

One day my friend Laura and I were sitting in her apartment. We were having a cup of tea together and talking about the terrible earthquake that had just occurred in Iran. Laura asked me, "Have you ever been in an earthquake?"

"Yes, I have," I replied.

"Was it a big earthquake?" she asked.

"I've been in several earthquakes, and they've all been small ones," I answered. "Have you ever been in an earthquake?"

"There was an earthquake in my village five years ago," Laura said. "I was in my house. Suddenly the ground started shaking. I grabbed my little brother and ran outside. Everything was moving. I was scared to death. And then suddenly it was over."

"I'm glad you and your brother weren't hurt," I said.

"Yes, we were very lucky. Has everyone in the world felt an earthquake sometime in their lives?" Laura wondered "Do earthquakes occur everywhere on the earth?"

"Those are interesting questions," I said, "but I don't know the answers."

◇练习 24, p. 293.

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1. he...his | 5. they...me...they |
| 2. his...them | 6. she...her |
| 3. she...her | 7. they...my |
| 4. him...them | 8. he...us...he...his |

◇练习 25, p. 294.

- | formal | informal |
|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. would meet | will meet |
| 2. was going to be | is going to be |
| 3. had | has |
| 4. needed | needs |
| 5. had flown | has flown |
| 6. were planning | are planning |
| 7. didn't want | doesn't want |
| 8. could babysit | can babysit |

◇练习 26, p. 295.

1. (that) you didn't have
2. (that) you hadn't found
3. (that) the Smiths hadn't canceled
4. (that) it wouldn't rain
5. (that) the Whites hadn't gotten
6. (that) Mei didn't exercise
7. (that) your computer wasn't working
8. (that) All was coming

◇练习 27, p. 296.

1. how old I was
2. if/whether he was going to be
3. if/whether she had
4. if/whether he had changed his
5. how long I had been
6. if/whether she could speak
7. if/whether he would be in his office
8. why she was laughing
9. if/whether I had ever considered

◇练习 28, p. 296.

1. "Have you ever gone skydiving?"
2. "Will you be at the meeting, "
3. "Are you going to quit your job? "
4. "Where is your car? "
5. "What did you do after class yesterday? "
6. "Do you know Italian? "
7. "Can you guess what I have in my pocket,? "
8. "Why aren't you working at your desk? "

◇练习 29, p. 297.

1. where I was from.
2. how I liked it here.
3. how long I would stay.
4. why I had come here.
5. if/whether I had met many people.
6. what I was going to study.
7. if/whether the local people were friendly to me.
8. if/whether I liked the weather here.
9. how I had chosen this school.

◇练习 30, p. 298.

1. he was going to call me
2. (that) he had to talk..., her
3. (that) she could meet me
4. (that) she had written him
5. (that) I needed his
6. she would see him
7. (that) he was going to meet . . . me
8. what he was doing
9. (that) he was sure he had met me

◇练习 31, p. 299.

- | | |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| 1. told | 6. told..., said |
| 2. said | 7. asked...asked...said |
| 3. asked | 8. told . . . told |
| 4. told | 9. told |
| 5. said | 10. asked...said...asked...told |

◇练习 32, p. 299.

1. asked me where I lived.
2. asked me if/whether I lived
3. told him / replied / said that I had
4. told me / said that he was looking
5. told me / said that he didn't like living
6. asked him if / whether he wanted to move m with me.

7. asked me where my apartment was.
8. replied / told him / said that I lived
9. told me / said that he couldn't move
10. told me / said that he would cancel his
11. asked me if/whether that was okay.
12. told him / replied / said that I was looking forward to having him

◇练习 33, p. 300.

Correct (checked) answers:

1. The teacher asked if I was finished.
The teacher asked, "Are you finished?"
2. Aki said he was finished.
Aki said that he was finished.
Aki replied that he was finished.
Aki answered that he was finished.
3. Ann told Tom she needed more time.
Ann said she needed more time.
4. Donna answered that she was ready.
Donna answered, "I am ready."
5. Mr. Wong wanted to know if Ted was coming.
Mr. Wong wondered if Ted was coming.
Mr. Wong wondered, "Is Ted coming?"

◇练习 34, p. 300.

1. (that) he had forgotten
2. where his bicycle was . . . told me/said (that) he had sold
3. (that) we would miss
4. if/whether she could swim
5. if/whether she wanted... (that) she couldn't... had to study
6. (that) she had broken
7. was . . . (that) he wasn't... (that) he had gone
8. if/whether I would be . . . (that) I would be
9. if/whether he had... been... (that) he had been
10. where his cane was . . . (that) I didn't know...
if/whether he needed... (that) he wanted to walk...
(that) I would find it

◇练习 35, p. 302.

The husband asked where the children were. His wife replied/said (that) they had already left for school.

The father said that they had forgotten to take their books with them. The mother wondered how they could be so irresponsible. She asked the father what they were going to do.

The father told her not to worry. He said (that) he would take the books with him and drop them off at the school on his way to work. The mother told him (that) that was okay and said goodbye. She told him to have a good day.

The children asked their mother where their schoolbooks were. They said (that) they had left them on the kitchen table. They said (that) they couldn't go to school without their books.

◇练习 36, p. 303.

1. ...May I ask if how old **you are**?
2. I wonder, "**Did** Rashed pick up something for dinner?"
3. I'm unsure what **Lawrence does** for a living.
4. Fernando said, "**The** best time for me to meet would be Thursday morning."
5. Eriko **asked** me **if** I was coming to the graduation party. I **told** her that I wasn't. OR I said her I wasn't.
6. I hope ~~so~~ that I will do well on my final exams.

7. Antonio asked his mother what she wanted for her birthday.
8. I'm not sure if the price **includes** sales tax.
9. My mother **asked** me, "How many hours did you **spend** on your homework?"
10. Pedro asked **if/whether** that **was** okay. Pedro asked, "**Is** that okay?"
11. Mika told me she was going to stay home today.
12. I'd like to know how ~~do~~ you do that.
13. My parents knew what Sam and I **did**. OR ... **know** what Sam and I do.
14. Beth said she had **been** working hard all week, but now **she** had some time off.
15. It is a fact that life always changes.

附录 1 动词短语

◇练习 1, p. 305.

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. on | 7. A: down |
| 2. up | B: up |
| 3. down...up | 8. out...out |
| 4. off | 9. off...on |
| 5. B: on | 10. A: up |
| A: off | B: off |
| 6. away/out | |

◇练习 2, p. 306.

Correct (circled) completions :

1. her socks
2. the TV, the stove
3. his new shoes
4. a story, a fairy tale, an excuse
5. some rotten food, an old shirt
6. a doctor's appointment, a meeting, a trip
7. a puzzle, a math problem, a riddle
8. a report, some late homework
9. a message, a phone number
10. a box, a sack of mail
11. my coat, my wedding ring
12. the light, the computer, the car engine

◇练习 3, p. 307.

- | | | |
|-----------|---------|---------|
| 1. out of | 4. over | 7. from |
| 2. on | 5. into | 8. in |
| 3. off | 6. into | 9. on |

◇练习 4, p.308.

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. B | 5. F |
| 2. C | 6. D |
| 3. A | 7. E |
| 4. G | |

◇练习 5, p.308.

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1. back | 8. up |
| 2. down/off | 9. A: out |
| 3. out | B: up |
| 4. away | A: off |
| 5. on | B: back |
| 6. up...off | 10. back |
| 7. back | |

◇练习 6, p. 309.

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. out..., out | 7. down... X |
| 2. on...X | 8. X...up |

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 3. into...X | 9. away...X |
| 4. into...X | 10. up...up |
| 5. up...up | 11. off...X |
| 6. away...away | 12. from...X |

◇练习 7, p. 310.

- | | | |
|---------|-----------|----------|
| 1. over | 6. down | 11. out |
| 2. out | 7. around | 12. up |
| 3. in | 8. out | 13. over |
| 4. out | 9. up | |
| 5. out | 10. out | |

◇练习 8, p. 311.

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1. a. off | 5. a. into |
| b. on | b. up |
| c. down | c. over |
| d. back | 6. a. up |
| e. out | b. off |
| f. away | c. back |
| 2. a. in | 7. a. down |
| b. out | b. back |
| 3. a. over | c. up |
| b. off | d. over |
| c. on | 8. a. in |
| d. into | b. out |
| e. out of | c. up |
| 4. a. out | |
| b. up | |
| c. down | |

◇练习 9, p. 312.

- | | | |
|--------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. on | 6. A: out | 0. up |
| 2. up | B: over | i0. on |
| 3. out | 7. A: off | 11. A: up |
| 4. out | B: over | B: up |
| 5. out | 8. back | |

◇练习 10, p. 313.

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. lay...off | 6. cheer...up |
| 2. take...back | 7. clean...up |
| 3. take...out | 8. worked...out |
| 4. blow...out | 9. think...over |
| 5. give...away | 10. bring...up |

◇练习 11, p.314.

- | | | |
|--------------|----------|------------|
| 1. off | 8. out | 15. out of |
| 2. out | 9. down | 16. out |
| 3. up | 10. down | 17. on |
| 4. up | 11. up | 18. up |
| 5. over | 12. up | 19. back |
| 6. up | 13. up | 20. up |
| 7. in...down | 14. up | 21. up |

◇练习 12, p. 316.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1. a. up | 2. a. up |
| b. up | b. up |
| c. up | c. up |
| d. out | d. up |
| e. out | e. up |

f. out of f. up

◇练习 13, p. 316.

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. out for | 7. through with |
| 2. in on | 8. out for |
| 3. up for | 9. back from |
| 4. along with | 10. out of |
| 5. around with | 11. up in |
| 6. out of | |

◇练习 14, p. 317.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------|
| 1. gymnastics class | 5. assignment |
| 2. their neighbors | 6. cord |
| 3. paint | 7. Hawaii |
| 4. rocks | 8. snakes |

◇练习 15, p. 317.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. out..., about | 6. A: along with |
| 2. out for | B: out of |
| 3. back to | 7. over to |
| 4. out with | 8. around with |
| 5. away from | 9. over to |
| | 10. together with |

◇练习 16, p. 318.

- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1. out about | 5. together with |
| 2. out for | 6. along with |
| 3. back to | 7. over to |
| 4. around | 8. out of |

◇练习 17, p. 319.

- | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A | 7. B | 13. B | 19. D |
| 2. B | 8. B | 14. D | 20. A |
| 3. C | 9. A | 15. A | 21. A |
| 4. C | 10. C | 16. C | 22. C |
| 5. A | 11. D | 17. A | 23. B |
| 6. B | 12. A | 18. D | 24. A |

附录2 介词搭配

◇练习 1, p. 321.

- | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. of | 6. to | 11. with |
| 2. to | 7. about | 12. for |
| 3. to | 8. of | 13. for |
| 4. with | 9. from | |
| 5. for | 10. to | |

◇练习 2, p. 322.

- | | | |
|------|------|-------|
| 1. B | 5. C | 9. D |
| 2. F | 6. I | 10. G |
| 3. J | 7. A | |
| 4. E | 8. H | |

◇练习 3, p. 322.

- | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. at | 6. for | 11. with |
| 2. at | 7. for | 12. to |
| 3. in | 8. from | 13. with |
| 4. with | 9. about | |
| 5. for | 10. for | |

◇练习 4, 0.323.

- | | | |
|------|------|-------|
| 1. A | 5. B | 9. A |
| 2. C | 6. A | 10. A |
| 3. B | 7. C | |
| 4. A | 8. C | |

◇练习 5, p. 323.

- | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1. A: with/to | 6. to | 13. about |
| B: about | 7. for | 14. with |
| 2. for | 8. of/about | 15. about |
| 3. to | 9. for | |
| 4. of | 10. of | |
| 5. A: in | 11. for | |
| B: for | 12. from | |

◇练习 6, p. 324.

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 1. a. of | 2. a. about |
| b. for | b. about |
| c. of | c. of |
| d. with | d. of |
| e. with | e. of |
| f. of | f. about |
| g. in | g. for |
| h. to | h. for |

◇练习 p. 325.

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. for | 6. in |
| 2. A: to... about | 7. of |
| B: at...for | 8. with...about |
| 3. to | 9. to |
| 4. from | 10. to |
| 5. A: on | 11. with..., about |
| B: about | |

◇练习 8, p. 326.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. arrived at | 6. talked about |
| 2. wait on | 7. is leaving for |
| 3. invited...to | 8. is...staring at |
| 4. consists of | 9. helped...with |
| 5. waited for | 10. borrowed ... from |

◇练习 9, p. 326.

- | | | |
|---------|------------------|-----------|
| 1. for | 6. A: to | 10. from |
| 2. with | B: for | 11. like |
| 3. to | 7. about/of | 12. about |
| 4. at | 8. for | |
| 5. to | 9. about...about | |

◇练习 10, p. 327.

- | | | |
|------|------|-------|
| 1. G | 5. B | 9. E |
| 2. I | 6. H | 10. D |
| 3. C | 7. A | |
| 4. J | 8. F | |

◇练习 11, p. 327.

- | | | |
|---------|-----------------|-------------|
| 1. on | 6. to... for... | 10. for |
| 2. from | for..., on | 11. from |
| 3. of | 7. for | 12. from/of |
| 4. on | 8. to | 13. of |

5. to 9. of

◇练习 12, p. 328.

- | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. a. C | 4. a. X | 7. a. C |
| b.C | b.C | b. X |
| 2. a. C | 5. a. C | 8. a. X |
| b.X | b.C | b. C |
| 3. a.C | 6. a. C | |
| b.C | b.C | |

◇练习 13, p. 329.

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. on | 7. about...from |
| 2. to...about | 8. about |
| 3. to...from...by-.-by | 9. A: from |
| 4. for | B: from |
| 5. A: about | 10. about |
| B: with | |
| 6. A: from | |
| B: to | |

◇练习 14, p. 330.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. hoped for | 5. concentrates on |
| 2. wonders about | 6. escaped from |
| 3. divided . . . into | 7. am accustomed to |
| 4. add...to | 8. heard...about |

◇练习 15, p. 331.

Correct (circled) prepositions:

- | | | |
|-------------|------------------|-------------|
| 1. to | 8. like | 15. with |
| 2. from/of | 9. to | 16. to/with |
| 3. from | 10. of | 17. about |
| 4. with/to | 11. about., with | 18. by |
| 5. of/about | 12. of/about | 19. on |
| 6. of/about | 13. with | |
| 7. for | 14. at/with | |

◇练习 16, p. 331.

- | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. D | 7. B | 13. B | 19. C |
| 2. B | 8. B | 14. A | 20. A |
| 3. C | 9. D | 15. A | 21. B |
| 4. A | 10. C | 16. B | 22. B |
| 5. B | 11. D | 17. C | 23. A |
| 6. A | 12. B | 18. B | 24. C |